MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 30

The Deeds of the Franks and the History of Jerusalem

Fulcher of Chartres

Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum Historia Hierosolymitana

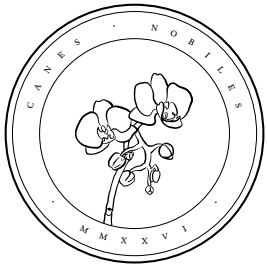
The Deeds of the Franks and the History of Jerusalem

The First Crusade: The Gesta Francorum and Fulcher of Chartres, Book I

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

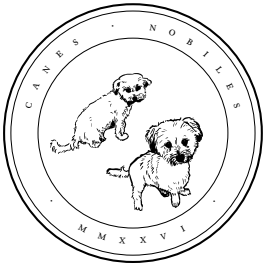


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 30 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Heinrich
Hagenmeyer's editions (Heidelberg, 1890 and 1913)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

GESTA FRANCORUM ET ALIORUM HIEROSOLIMITANORUM

I · The Call and the Taking of the Cross 11
II · Peter the Hermit and the People's Army 13
III · The Princes Come to Constantinople 18
IV · Bohemond Takes the Cross 21
V · The March Through Greek Lands 26
VI · The Oath to Alexius 29
VII · The Road to Nicaea 32
VIII · The Siege of Nicaea 34
IX · The Battle of Dorylaeum 39
X · Through Romania to Heraclea and Tarsus 46
XI · Through Armenia to Antioch 52
XII · The Siege of Antioch Begins 57
XIII · The Castle of Maregart and the Foraging Battle 60
XIV · Defeat in the Camp and Famine 63
XV · The Flight of William the Carpenter 66
XVI · The Desertion of Tatikios 68
XVII · Bohemond's Victory at the Lake 70
XVIII · The Battle at the Bridge and the Mahomerie 75
XIX · Tancred Holds the Monastery Castle 82
XX · Firuz Betrays Antioch 85

GESTA FRANCORUM ET ALIORUM HIEROSOLIMITANORUM

(continued)

XXI · Kerbogha Comes to Antioch 93
XXII · Kerbogha and His Mother 100
XXIII · The Franks Besieged in Antioch 106
XXIV · The Priest's Vision and the Oath 108
XXV · Saint Andrew and the Lance 111
XXVI · Fire and Famine in the City 114
XXVII · Stephen of Blois Turns the Emperor Back 118
XXVIII · The Lance Found, and Envoys to Kerbogha 122
XXIX · The Great Battle of Antioch 126
XXX · Rest at Antioch and the Bishop's Death 133
XXXI · Albara and the Quarrel over Antioch 138
XXXII · The City of Antioch 141
XXXIII · The Siege of Marra 143
XXXIV · Raymond Marches South 148
XXXV · The Siege of Arqa 155
XXXVI · From Tripoli to Ramla 158
XXXVII · The Siege of Jerusalem Begins 160
XXXVIII · The Fall of Jerusalem 165
XXXIX · Godfrey Chosen and the Battle of Ascalon 169

HISTORIA HIEROSOLYMITANA

Prologue 181
I · The Council at Clermont 184
II · Urban's Decree at the Council 187
III · Urban's Call to the Journey 192
IV · Adhemar and the Taking of the Cross 195
V · Urban and the Antipope Guibert 199
VI · The Departure, and the Names of the Princes 203
VII · Through Italy and Rome 208

HISTORIA HIEROSOLYMITANA

(continued)

VIII · The Shipwreck and the March to Constantinople 210
IX · Constantinople and the Road to Nicaea 215
X · The Siege and Surrender of Nicaea 217
XI · The Deadly Battle at Dorylaeum 221
XII · The Turks Flee 226
XIII · Want, and the Many Tongues 228
XIV · Baldwin Wins Edessa 230
XV · The Siege of Antioch 235
XVI · Famine, and the Flight of Stephen 241
XVII · The Betrayal of Antioch 245
XVIII · The Lance Found and Tried 248
XIX · The Franks Besieged in Antioch 250
XX · Visions in the City 252
XXI · The Franks Offer Battle 254
XXII · The Army Goes Out 256
XXIII · Victory and the Turks' Flight 259
XXIV · The Princes' Letter to Urban 263
XXV · Marra, Arqa, and the Road to Jerusalem 271
XXVI · The Site of Jerusalem 278
XXVII · The Siege and Capture of Jerusalem 283
XXVIII · The Spoils 288
XXIX · The Franks Settle in the City 290
XXX · The Prince, the Patriarch, and the Cross 292
XXXI · The Battle of Ascalon 294
XXXII · Some Princes Go Home 300
XXXIII · Bohemond and Baldwin's Pilgrimage 301
XXXIV · The Return of Bohemond and Baldwin 308
XXXV · The Capture of Bohemond 311
XXXVI · The Death of Godfrey 314

Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum

The Deeds of the Franks

As the time draws near when, as the Lord says in the Gospel, his faithful must take up the cross, a great movement stirs the lands of Gaul. Pope Urban crosses the Alps with his bishops and preaches that whoever would save his soul should take the Lord's road humbly, for God will supply what he lacks. Hearing this, the Franks sew crosses on their right shoulders and vow to follow Christ.

Cum iam appropinquasset ille terminus, quem Dominus
when now had-drawn-near that limit which the-Lord
Iesus cotidie suis demonstrat fidelibus, specialiter in euangelio
Jesus daily to-his shows faithful especially in the-gospel
dicens: Si quis vult post me venire, abneget semetipsum
saying if anyone wishes after me to-come let-him-deny himself
et tollat crucem suam et sequatur me, facta est igitur
and let-him-take-up cross his and let-him-follow me made was therefore
motio valida per universas Galliarum regiones: ut si aliquis
a-movement mighty through all of-the-Gauls the-regions that if anyone
Dominum studiose puroque corde et mente sequi desideraret
the-Lord zealously and-with-pure heart and mind to-follow desired
atque post ipsum crucem fideliter baiulare vellet, non
and after him the-cross faithfully to-carry wished not
pigritaretur Sancti Sepulcri viam celerius arripere. Apostolicus
he-should-be-slow of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-way more-swiftly to-take-up the-apostolic-one
namque Romanae sedis Urbanus ultra montanas partes
for of-the-Roman see Urban beyond mountain the-parts
quantocius profectus est cum suis archiepiscopis, episcopis,
with-all-speed set-out has with his archbishops bishops
abbatibus et presbyteris, coepitque subtiliter sermocinari et
abbots and presbyters and-began subtly to-discourse and
praedicare, dicens: Ut si quis animam suam salvam facere
to-preach saying that if anyone soul his safe to-make

vellet, non dubitaret humiliter viam incipere Domini; ac si
wished not he-should-hesitate humbly the-way to-begin of-the-Lord and if
denariorum ei deesset copia, divina ei satis daret
of-pennies to-him should-be-lacking the-supply divine to-him enough would-give
misericordia. Ait namque dominus Apostolicus: Fratres, nos
mercy says for the-lord apostolic-one brothers us
oportet multa pati pro nomine Christi, videlicet miserias,
it-behooves many-things to-suffer for the-name of-Christ namely miseries
paupertates, nuditates, persecutiones, egestates, infirmitates,
poverties nakednesses persecutions wants sicknesses
fames, sites et alia huiusmodi, sicuti Dominus ait suis
hungers thirsts and other-things of-this-kind as the-Lord says to-his
discipulis: «Oportet vos pati multa pro nomine meo»,
disciples it-behooves you to-suffer many-things for name my
et «nolite erubescere loqui ante facies hominum»; «ego vero
and do-not blush to-speak before the-faces of-men I but
dabo vobis os et eloquium», ac deinceps «persequetur
shall-give to-you mouth and eloquence and thereafter shall-follow
vos larga retributio». Cumque iam hic sermo paulatim per
you ample recompense and-when now this speech little-by-little through
universas regiones ac Galliarum patrias coepisset crebrescere,
all regions and of-the-Gauls the-countries had-begun to-spread
Franci audientes talia, protinus in dextra fecere cruces
the-Franks hearing such-things at-once on the-right made crosses
suere scapula, dicentes sese Christi unanimiter sequi
sewed the-shoulder saying themselves of-Christ with-one-mind to-follow
vestigia, quibus de manu erant redempti tartarea.
the-footsteps by-which from the-hand they-had-been redeemed of-hell

II · PETER THE HERMIT AND THE PEOPLE'S ARMY

The Franks go in three parts. Peter the Hermit reaches Constantinople, where his rabble burns palaces and strips church lead, and is sent across the Arm. At Xerigordo the Lombards and Germans are besieged and drink blood and urine until the Germans' lord betrays them; the rest are killed or sold. At Civetot the Turks massacre Walter's people, and the emperor rejoices and buys their arms.

Iam iamque Galliae suis remotae sunt domibus, feceruntque
now and-now the-Gauls from-their removed were homes and-made
denique Galli III partes. Una pars Francorum in Hungariae
finally the-Gauls three parts one part of-the-Franks into of-Hungary
intravit regionem, scilicet Petrus heremita et dux Godefridus
entered the-region namely Peter the-hermit and duke Godfrey
et Balduinus, frater eius, et Balduinus, comes de Monte.
and Baldwin brother his and Baldwin count of Mons
Isti potentissimi milites et alii plures, quos ignoro, venerunt
these most-powerful knights and others many whom I-know-not came
per viam, quam iam dudum Karolus Magnus, mirificus rex
by the-road which long since Charles the-Great wondrous king
Franciae, aptari fecit usque Constantinopolim. Petrus
of-France to-be-made-ready caused up-to Constantinople Peter
vero supradictus primus venit Constantinopolim Kalendis
but aforesaid first came to-Constantinople on-the-Kalends
Augusti, et cum eo maxima gens Alamannorum. Illic invenit
of-August and with him a-very-great people of-the-Alamans there he-found
Lombardos et Longobardos et alios plures congregatos, quibus
Lombards and Longobards and others many gathered to-whom
imperator iusserat dari mercatum, sicuti erat in civitate,
the-emperor had-ordered to-be-given a-market as there-was in the-city
dixitque illis: «Nolite transmeare Brachium, donec veniat
and-said to-them do-not cross the-Arm until come

maxima Christianorum virtus, quoniam vos tanti non estis,
the-greatest of-the-Christians power since you so-great not are
ut cum Turcis proeliari valeatis». Ipsique Christiani
that with the-Turks to-do-battle you-may-be-able and-they-themselves the-Christians
nequiter deducebant se, quia palatia urbis sternebant
wickedly conducted themselves because the-palaces of-the-city they-laid-low
et ardebant, et auferebant plumbum, quo ecclesiae erant
and burned and carried-off the-lead with-which the-churches were
coopertae, et vendebant Graecis, unde imperator iratus est
covered and sold to-the-Greeks whence the-emperor angered was
iussitque eos transmeare Brachium. Postquam transfretaverunt,
and-ordered them to-cross the-Arm after they-had-crossed
non cessabant agere omnia mala, comburentes et devastantes
not they-ceased to-do all evils burning and laying-waste
domos et ecclesias. Tandem pervenerunt Nicomediam, ubi
houses and churches at-length they-came to-Nicomedia where
divisi sunt Lombardi et Longobardi et Alamanni a Francis,
divided were the-Lombards and Longobards and Alamans from the-Franks
quia Franci tumebant superbia. Elegerunt Lombardi et
because the-Franks swelled with-pride chose the-Lombards and
Longobardi seniorem super se, cui nomen Rainaldus;
Longobards a-lord over themselves to-whom the-name Rainald
Alamanni similiter; et intraverunt in Romaniam, et per IIII
the-Alamans likewise and they-entered into Romania and for four
dies ierunt ultra Nicenam urbem inveneruntque quoddam
days they-went beyond the-Nicene city and-they-found a-certain
castrum, cui nomen Exerogorgo, quod erat vacuum gente,
castle to-which the-name Xerigordo which was empty of-people
et apprehenderunt illud, in quo invenerunt satis frumenti et
and they-seized it in which they-found enough of-grain and
vini et carnis et omnium bonorum abundantiam. Audientes
of-wine and of-meat and of-all goods abundance hearing

itaque Turci, quod Christiani essent in castro, venerunt
and-so the-Turks that the-Christians were in the-castle they-came
obsidere illud. Ante portam castri erat puteus et ad pedem
to-besiege it before the-gate of-the-castle was a-well and at the-foot
castri fons vivus, iuxta quem exiit Rainaldus insidiari
of-the-castle a-spring living beside which went-out Rainald to-lie-in-wait-for
Turcos. Venientes vero Turci in die dedicationis S.
the-Turks coming indeed the-Turks on the-day of-the-dedication of-Saint
Michaelis invenerunt Rainaldum et qui cum eo erant,
Michael found Rainald and those-who with him were
occideruntque Turci multos ex eis, alii, qui remanserant
and-killed the-Turks many of them others who had-remained
vivi, fugerunt in castrum, quod confestim Turci obsederunt
alive fled into the-castle which at-once the-Turks besieged
eisque aquam abstulerunt. Fueruntque nostri in tanta
and-from-them the-water took-away and-were our-men in such
afflictione sitis, ut flebotomarent suos equos et asinos,
affliction of-thirst that they-bled their horses and asses
quorum sanguinem bibebant; alii mittebant zonas atque
whose blood they-drank others put belts and
panniculos in piscinam et inde exprimebant aquam in os
little-cloths into a-cistern and thence squeezed water into mouth
suum; alii mingebant in pugillo alterius et bibebant; alii
their others urinated into the-fist of-another and drank others
fodiebant humidam terram et supinabant se,
dug damp earth and laid themselves-on-their-backs
terramque sternebant super pectora sua pro nimia arriditate
and-the-earth spread over breasts their for excessive dryness
sitis. Episcopi vero et presbyteri confortabant nostros et
of-thirst the-bishops but and presbyters comforted our-men and
commonebant, ne deficerent, dicentes: Estote ubique fortes
urged lest they-should-fail saying be everywhere strong

in fide Christi et nolite eos timere, qui vos persequuntur,
in the-faith of-Christ and do-not those fear who you persecute
sicuti Dominus dicit: «Nolite timere eos, qui corpus occidunt,
as the-Lord says do-not fear those who the-body kill
animam vero non possunt occidere». Haec tribulatio fuit
the-soul but not can to-kill this tribulation was
per VIII dies. Denique dominus Alamannorum concordatus
for eight days finally the-lord of-the-Alamans agreed
est cum Turcis, ut traderet socios illis; et, fingens
has with the-Turks that he-would-hand-over his-comrades to-them and pretending
se exire ad bellum, fugit ad illos, et multi cum eo. Illi
himself to-go-out to battle fled to them and many with him those
autem, qui Dominum negare noluerent, capitalem sententiam
moreover who the-Lord to-deny were-unwilling the-capital sentence
susceperunt; alios, quos ceperunt vivos, adinvicem diviserunt
received others whom they-took alive among-themselves they-divided
quasi oves; alios miserunt ad signum et sagittabant eos; alios
like sheep others they-set as a-target and shot-arrows-at them others
vendebant et donabant quasi animalia. Quidam conducebant
they-sold and gave-away like animals some led
suos in domum suam, alios in Corosanum, alios in
their-captives to house their others into Khorasan others into
Antiochiam, alios in Aleph aut ubi ipsi manebant.
Antioch others into Aleppo or where they-themselves dwelt
Isti primo felix acceperunt martyrium pro nomine Domini
these first happy received martyrdom for the-name of-the-Lord
Iesu. Audientes denique Turci, quod Petrus heremita et
Jesus hearing finally the-Turks that Peter the-hermit and
Guualterius Sinehabere fuissent in Cyvito, quae supra Nicenam
Walter Sans-Avoir had-been in Civetot which above the-Nicene
urbem est, venerunt illuc cum magno gaudio, ut occiderent
city is they-came thither with great joy that they-might-kill

illos et eos, qui cum ipsis erant. Cumque venissent
them and those who with them were and-when they-had-come
laetantes, obviaverunt Guualterio cum suis, quos Turci
rejoicing they-met Walter with his-men whom the-Turks
mox occiderunt. Petrus vero heremita paulo ante ierat
soon killed Peter but the-hermit a-little before had-gone
Constantinopolim, eo quod nequibat refrenare illam
to-Constantinople for-the-reason that he-could-not to-rein-in that
diversam gentem, quae nec illum nec verba eius audire
diverse people which neither him nor the-words his to-hear
volebat. Irruentes vero Turci super eos occiderunt multos ex
wished rushing indeed the-Turks upon them killed many of
eis; alios invenerunt dormientes, alios iacentes, alios nudos,
them others they-found sleeping others lying others naked
quos omnes necaverunt; cum quibus quemdam sacerdotem
whom all they-slew with whom a-certain priest
invenerunt missam celebrantem, quem statim super altare
they-found mass celebrating whom at-once upon the-altar
martyrizaverunt. Illi vero, qui evadere potuerunt, Cyvito
they-martyred those but who to-escape could to-Civetot
fugerunt; alii praecipitabant se in mare, alii latebant
fled others threw themselves into the-sea others hid
in silvis et montanis. Turci vero persequentes illos in
in the-woods and mountains the-Turks but pursuing them into
castrum, adunaverunt ligna, ut eos comburerent cum castro.
the-castle gathered wood that them they-might-burn with the-castle
Christiani igitur, qui in castro erant, miserunt ignem in
the-Christians therefore who in the-castle were put fire into
ligna congregata et versus ignis in Turcos quosdam eorum
the-wood gathered and turned the-fire against the-Turks certain of-them
concremavit, sed ab illo incendio Deus nostros tunc liberavit.
burned but from that burning God our-men then freed

Tandem Turci apprehenderunt illos vivos, diviseruntque
at-length the-Turks seized them alive and-divided
illos, sicuti prius fecerant alios, et disperserunt illos
them as before they-had-done the-others and scattered them
per universas regiones has, alios in Corosanum, alios in
through all regions these others into Khorasan others into
Persidem. Hoc totum factum est in mense Octobri. Audiens
Persia this all done was in the-month of-October hearing
imperator, quod Turci sic dissipassent nostros, gavisus est
the-emperor that the-Turks so had-scattered our-men rejoiced has
valde et mandavit pro eis, fecitque eos Brachium transmeare.
greatly and sent for them and-made them the-Arm cross
Postquam ultra fuerunt, comparavit omnia arma eorum.
after beyond they-were he-bought all arms their

III · THE PRINCES COME TO CONSTANTINOPLE

Raymond of Saint Gilles and the bishop of Le Puy go through Slavonia; Bohemond, Robert of Flanders, Robert of Normandy, Hugh the Great, and others take the old road to Rome. Hugh is seized at Durazzo and sent to the emperor. Godfrey reaches Constantinople first. Baldwin ambushes the Turcopoles who are killing the duke's men, and when the emperor's armies attack Godfrey, he drives them back to the city gate. After five days he makes a pact, and the emperor bids him cross the Arm, promising a market there and alms for the poor.

Secunda vero pars intravit in Sclaviniae partes, scilicet
the-second but part entered into of-Slavonia the-parts namely
comes de Sancto Egidio Raimundus et Podiensis episcopus.
the-count of Saint Gilles Raymond and of-Le-Puy the-bishop

Tertia autem pars per antiquam Romae viam venit. In hac parte
the-third moreover part by the-old of-Rome road came in this part
fuerunt Boamundus et Richardus de Principatu, Robertus comes
were Bohemond and Richard of the-Principate Robert count
Flandrensis, Robertus Normannus, Hugo magnus, Eurardus de
of-Flanders Robert the-Norman Hugh the-Great Everard of
Puisatio, Achardus de Monte Merloi, Isuardus de Musone et
Le-Puiset Achard of Mont Merle Isoard of Mouzon and
alii plures. Deinde venerunt ad portum Brandosim aut Barim,
others many then they-came to the-port Brindisi or Bari
sive Otrentum. Hugo denique Magnus et Willelmus Marchisi
or Otranto Hugh finally the-Great and William of-the-Marquis
filius intraverunt mare ad portum Bari et transfretantes
son entered the-sea at the-port of-Bari and crossing
venerunt Durachium. Audiens vero dux illius loci hos
came to-Durazzo hearing indeed the-duke of-that place these
prudentissimos viros illic esse applicatos, mox mala cogitatio
most-prudent men there to-be landed soon an-evil thought
cor eius tetigit, illosque apprehendit ac iussit Constantinopolim
heart his touched and-them seized and ordered to-Constantinople
imperatori caute duci, quo ei fidelitatem facerent.
to-the-emperor warily to-be-led that to-him fealty they-might-do
Dux denique Godefridus primus omnium seniorum
the-duke finally Godfrey first of-all the-lords
Constantinopolim venit cum magno exercitu duobus diebus
to-Constantinople came with a-great army two days
ante Natale Domini nostri et hospitatus est extra urbem,
before the-Birthday of-the-Lord our and lodged has outside the-city
donec iniquus imperator iussit eum hospitari in burgo
until the-wicked emperor ordered him to-be-lodged in the-suburb
urbis. Cumque fuisset hospitatus dux, secure mittebat
of-the-city and-when had lodged the-duke securely sent

armigeros suos per singulos dies, ut paleas et alia
squires his on single days that straw and other-things
equis necessaria asportarent. Et iam cum putarent exire
for-the-horses necessary they-might-carry-off and now when they-thought to-go-out
fiducialiter quo vellent, iniquus imperator Alexius sagaciter
confidently where they-wished the-wicked emperor Alexius shrewdly
faciebat eos excubare, suisque Turcopolis et Pincinatis
caused them to-be-watched and-his Turcopoles and Pechenegs
imperabat eos invadere et occidere. Balduinus itaque, frater
he-commanded them to-attack and to-kill Baldwin and-so brother
ducis, haec audiens, misit se in insidiis, tandemque invenit
of-the-duke this hearing put himself in ambush and-at-length found
eos occidentes gentem suam, eosque invasit forti animo,
them killing people his and-them attacked with-strong spirit
ac, Deo iuvante, superavit eos, et apprehendens LX ex eis,
and God helping overcame them and seizing sixty of them
partem occidit, partem duci, fratri suo, praesentavit. Quod
part he-killed part to-the-duke brother his he-presented which
cum audisset imperator, valde iratus est; videns vero dux
when had-heard the-emperor greatly angered was seeing indeed the-duke
inde iratum imperatorem, exiit cum suis de burgo
thereupon angry the-emperor went-out with his-men from the-suburb
et hospitatus est extra urbem. Sero autem facto, infelix
and lodged has outside the-city evening moreover made the-unhappy
imperator iussit suis exercitibus invadere ducem cum Christi
emperor ordered his armies to-attack the-duke with of-Christ
gente. Quos dux persequens invictus cum Christi militibus,
the-people whom the-duke pursuing unconquered with of-Christ the-knights
VII ex illis occidit, persequendo alios usque ad portam
seven of them killed pursuing the-others all-the-way to the-gate
civitatis. Reversusque dux ad sua tentoria mansit inibi per
of-the-city and-having-returned the-duke to his tents stayed there for

V dies, donec pactum iniit cum imperatore; dixitque illi
five days until a-pact he-entered with the-emperor and-said to-him
imperator, ut transfretaret Brachium Sancti Georgii, promisitque
the-emperor that he-should-cross the-Arm of-Saint George and-promised
eum habere omnem mercatum ibi, sicut est Constantinopoli,
him to-have every market there as there-is at-Constantinople
et pauperibus eleemosynam erogare, unde potuissent vivere.
and to-the-poor alms to-pay-out whence they-could to-live

IV · BOHEMOND TAKES THE CROSS

At the siege of Amalfi Bohemond hears of the countless Franks bearing the cross and crying God wills it. Moved by the Spirit, he cuts his costliest cloak into crosses, and most of the besiegers join him. He crosses with Tancred and many lords, forbids plunder in Christian lands, burns a castle of heretics, and at the Vardar Tancred rescues those the emperor's army attacks.

At bellipotens Boamundus, qui erat in obsidione Malfi
but war-mighty Bohemond who was at the-siege of-Amalfi
Scafardi Pontis, audiens venisse innumerabilem gentem
of-Scafati Bridge hearing to-have-come a-countless people
Christianorum de Francis, ituram ad Domini sepulcrum
of-Christians from the-Franks about-to-go to of-the-Lord the-sepulcher
et paratam ad proelium contra gentem paganorum, coepit
and ready for battle against the-people of-the-pagans began
diligenter inquirere, quae arma pugnandi haec gens deferat
diligently to-inquire what arms of-fighting this people might-bear
et quam ostensionem Christi in via portet vel quod
and what showing of-Christ on the-way it-might-carry or what
signum in certamine sonet. Cui per ordinem haec
signal in combat it-might-sound to-whom in order these-things

dicta sunt: Deferunt arma ad bellum congrua; in dextra
said were they-bear arms for war fitting on the-right
vel inter utrasque scapulas crucem Christi baiulant; sonum
or between both shoulders the-cross of-Christ they-carry the-sound
vero «Deus le volt», «Deus le volt», «Deus le volt»! una
but God it wills God it wills God it wills with-one
voce conclamant. Mox Sancto commotus Spiritu iussit
voice they-shout-together soon by-the-Holy moved Spirit he-ordered
pretiosissimum pallium, quod apud se habebat, incidi,
a-most-precious cloak which with himself he-had to-be-cut
totumque statim in cruces expendit. Coepit tunc ad eum
and-the-whole at-once into crosses spent began then to him
vehementer concurrere maxima pars militum, qui erant in
vehemently to-run-together the-greatest part of-the-knights who were at
obsidione illa, adeo ut Rogerius comes pene solus remanserit,
siege that so-much that Roger the-count almost alone remained
reversusque Siciliam dolebat et maerebat quandoque gentem
and-having-returned to-Sicily grieved and mourned since people
amittere suam. Denique reversus iterum in terram
to-lose his finally having-returned again into land
suam dominus Boamundus diligenter honestavit sese ad
his the-lord Bohemond diligently equipped himself for
incipiendum Sancti sepulcri iter. Tandem transfretavit
beginning of-the-Holy sepulcher the-journey at-length he-crossed
mare cum suo exercitu, et cum eo Tancredus, Marchisi
the-sea with his army and with him Tancred of-the-Marquis
filius, et Richardus princeps ac Rainulfus, frater eius, et
son and Richard the-prince and Rainulf brother his and
Rotbertus de Ansa et Hermannus de Canni, Rotbertus de
Robert of Anzi and Herman of Cannae Robert of
Surda Valle, Rotbertus, filius Tostani, et Hunfredus, filius
Sourde Val Robert son of-Tostain and Humphrey son

Radulfi, et Richardus, filius comitis Rainulfi, et comes
of-Ralph and Richard son of-count Rainulf and the-count
de Russinolo cum fratribus suis, et Boello Carnotensis et
of Rosignuolo with brothers his and Boel of-Chartres and
Alberedus de Cagnano et Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso.
Alberd of Cagnano and Humphrey of Monte Scaglioso
Hi omnes transfretaverunt ad Boamundi famulatum et
these all crossed to of-Bohemond the-service and
applicuerunt Bulgariae partibus, ubi invenerunt nimiam
landed of-Bulgaria in-the-parts where they-found very-great
abundantiam frumenti et vini et alimentorum corporis.
abundance of-grain and of-wine and of-nourishment of-the-body
Deinde descendentes in vallem de Andronopoli exspectaverunt
then descending into the-valley of Andronopolis they-awaited
gentem suam, donec omnes pariter transfretassent. Tunc sapiens
people their until all together should-have-crossed then wise
Boamundus ordinavit concilium cum gente sua, confortans
Bohemond ordered a-council with people his comforting
et monens omnes, dicens: Seniores, cavete omnes vos, quia
and warning all saying lords beware all you because
nos sumus peregrini Dei. Oportet igitur nos esse magis
we are pilgrims of-God it-behooves therefore us to-be more
bonos et humiles quam ante fuimus, et nolite depraedare
good and humble than before we-were and do-not plunder
terram istam, quia Christianorum est, et nemo accipiat
land this because of-Christians it-is and no-one let-take
plus, nisi quod ei sufficiat ad edendum pro benedictione.
more except what to-him may-suffice for eating for a-blessing
Tunc exeuntes inde venerunt per nimiam plenitudinem
then going-out thence they-came through very-great plenty
de villa in villam, de civitate in civitatem, de castello in
from village to village from city to city from castle to

castellum, quousque pervenimus Castoriam, ibique Nativitatem
castle until we-came to-Kastoria and-there the-Nativity
Domini sollemniter celebravimus, fuimusque ibi per plures
of-the-Lord solemnly we-celebrated and-we-were there for many
dies et quaesivimus mercatum; sed ipsi noluerunt nobis
days and we-sought a-market but they were-unwilling to-us
assentire, eo quod valde timebant nos, non putantes
to-assent for-the-reason that greatly they-feared us not thinking
nos esse peregrinos, sed velle populari terram et occidere
us to-be pilgrims but to-wish to-ravage the-land and to-kill
illos. Quapropter apprehendebamus boves, equos et asinos et
them wherefore we-seized oxen horses and asses and
omnia, quae inveniebamus. Egressi de Castoria intravimus
all-things which we-found having-gone-out from Kastoria we-entered
Palagoniam, in qua erat quoddam haereticorum castrum,
Pelagonia in which was a-certain of-heretics castle
quod undique aggressi sumus, moxque nostro succubuit
which on-all-sides attacked we-have and-soon to-our it-yielded
imperio; accenso itaque igne, combussimus castrum cum
command kindled and-so the-fire we-burned the-castle with
habitatoribus suis, scilicet haereticorum congregatione.
inhabitants its namely of-heretics the-congregation
Postea pervenimus ad flumen Bardarum. Denique perrexit
afterward we-came to the-river Vardar finally went-on
dominus Boamundus ultra cum sua gente, sed non tota.
the-lord Bohemond across with his people but not all
Remansit enim comes de Russignolo cum fratribus suis.
remained for the-count of Rosignuolo with brothers his
Venit itaque exercitus imperatoris et invasit comitem cum
came and-so the-army of-the-emperor and attacked the-count with
fratribus suis et omnes, qui erant cum eis.
brothers his and all who were with them

Quod audiens Tancredus rediit retro et proiectus in
which hearing Tancred went-back back and having-thrown-himself into
flumen natando pervenit ad alios; et II milia miserunt
the-river by-swimming came to the-others and two thousand put
se in flumen sequendo Tancredum. Tandem invenerunt
themselves into the-river following Tancred at-length they-found
Turcopulos et Pinzinacos dimicantes cum nostris, quos
Turcopoles and Pechenegs fighting with our-men whom
repente fortiter invaserunt et prudenter eos superaverunt; et
suddenly bravely they-attacked and prudently them overcame and
apprehenderunt plures ex illis et duxerunt illos ligatos ante
seized many of them and led them bound before
domini Boamundi praesentiam, quibus ait ipse: Quare, miseri,
of-lord Bohemond the-presence to-whom says he why wretches
occiditis gentem Christi et meam? Ego cum vestro imperatore
do-you-kill the-people of-Christ and mine I with your emperor
nullam altercationem habeo. Qui responderunt: Nos nequimus
no quarrel have who answered we cannot
aliud agere; in roga imperatoris locati sumus, et quicquid
other-thing to-do in the-pay of-the-emperor hired we-are and whatever
nobis imperat, nos oportet implere. Quos Boamundus
to-us he-commands us it-behooves to-fulfill whom Bohemond
impunitos permisit abire. Hoc bellum factum est in IVta
unpunished allowed to-go-away this battle done was on the-fourth
feria, quae est caput ieiunii. Per omnia benedictus Deus. Amen.
weekday which is the-head of-the-fast in all-things blessed God amen

The emperor sends a curopalates to escort them, and he bids the towns bring them a market, though the towns fear them. Bohemond refuses to storm a rich castle and makes his men return plundered beasts. At Rusa the Greeks welcome him with a great market; he goes ahead to the emperor, and Tancred leads the pilgrims into a rich valley to keep Easter.

Mandavit infelix imperator simul cum nostris nuntiis uni
commanded the-unhappy emperor together with our envoys to-one
ex suis, quem valde diligebat, quem et Corpalatium vocant,
of his-men whom greatly he-loved whom also curopalates they-call
ut nos secure deduceret per terram suam, donec veniremus
that us securely he-should-lead through land his until we-should-come
Constantinopolim. Cumque transiremus ante illorum civitates,
to-Constantinople and-when we-passed before their cities
iubebat habitatoribus terrae, ut nobis apportarent mercatum,
he-ordered the-inhabitants of-the-land that to-us they-should-bring a-market
sicut faciebant et illi, quos diximus. Certe tantum
as did also those whom we-have-mentioned certainly so-much
timebant fortissimum gentem domini Boamundi, ut nullum
they-feared most-strong the-people of-lord Bohemond that none
nostrorum sinerent intrare muros civitatum. Volueruntque
of-ours they-let enter the-walls of-the-cities and-wished
nostri quoddam castrum aggredi et apprehendere, eo
our-men a-certain castle to-attack and to-seize for-the-reason
quod erat plenum omnibus bonis. Sed vir prudens
that it-was full of-all goods but the-man prudent
Boamundus noluit consentire, tantum pro iustitia terrae,
Bohemond was-unwilling to-consent as-much for the-justice of-the-land
quantum pro fiducia imperatoris. Unde valde iratus est
as for the-faith of-the-emperor whence greatly angered was

propter hoc cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus. Hoc factum
on-account-of this with Tancred and the-others all this done
est vespere. Mane vero facto, exierunt habitatores castri
was in-the-evening morning indeed made went-out the-inhabitants of-the-castle
et cum processione deferentes in manibus cruces venerunt in
and with a-procession carrying in hands crosses came into
praesentiam Boamundi. Ipse vero gaudens recepit eos et cum
the-presence of-Bohemond he but rejoicing received them and with
laetitia abire permisit illos. Deinde venimus ad quamdam
gladness to-go-away allowed them then we-came to a-certain
urbem, quae dicitur Serra, ubi nostra fiximus tentoria et sat
city which is-called Serres where our we-pitched tents and enough
habuimus mercatum illis diebus conveniens. Ibique doctus
we-had market in-those days suitable and-there learned
Boamundus optime concordatus est cum duobus Corpalatiis
Bohemond very-well agreed has with the-two curopalates
et pro amicitia eorum ac pro iustitia terrae iussit
and for the-friendship their and for the-justice of-the-land ordered
reddi omnia animalia, quae nostri depraedata tenebant;
to-be-returned all the-animals which our-men plundered held
et Corpalatius illi promiserat missos retro mandare et
and the-curopalates to-him had-promised messengers back to-send and
hominibus illis animalia per ordinem reddi. Deinde
to-the-men those the-animals in order to-be-returned then
pervenimus de castello in castellum et de villa in villam ad
we-came from castle to castle and from village to village to
Rusam civitatem. Graecorum autem gens exibat et veniebat
Rusa the-city of-the-Greeks moreover the-people went-out and came
gaudens in occursum domini Boamundi, nobis deferens
rejoicing to the-meeting of-lord Bohemond to-us bringing
maximum mercatum, ibique nostros tetendimus papiliones
a-very-great market and-there our we-stretched tents

in IVta feria ante cenam Domini; ibi etiam doctus
on the-fourth weekday before the-supper of-the-Lord there also learned
Boamundus totam gentem suam dimisit, perrexitque loqui cum
Bohemond the-whole people his left and-went-on to-speak with
imperatore Constantinopolim, suisque hominibus imperavit,
the-emperor to-Constantinople and-to-his men commanded
dicens: Modeste appropinquate civitatem, ego autem ibo
saying modestly approach the-city I moreover shall-go
prius, qui et duxit secum paucos milites. Tancredus remansit
first who also led with-himself few knights Tancred remained
caput militiae Christi; vidensque peregrinos cibos emere, ait
head of-the-army of-Christ and-seeing the-pilgrims food buying says
intra se, quod exiret extra viam et tunc populum
within himself that he-would-go-out off the-road and then the-people
conduceret, ubi feliciter viveret. Denique intravit in vallem
lead where happily it-might-live finally he-entered into a-valley
quamdam plenam omnibus bonis, quae corporalibus nutrimentis
certain full of-all goods which for-bodily nourishments
sunt congrua, in qua Pascha Domini devotissime celebravimus.
are suitable in which the-Pasch of-the-Lord most-devoutly we-celebrated

VI · THE OATH TO ALEXIUS

The emperor receives Bohemond warily and plots against the princes, but he finds no way, and the city's elders decide the princes must swear him fealty. The princes protest but swear under necessity; Alexius promises markets, help by land and sea, and to restore their losses, and offers Bohemond land beyond Antioch. Raymond refuses homage and swears only to respect the emperor's life and honor.

Cum imperator audisset honestissimum virum Boamundum
when the-emperor had-heard the-most-honorable man Bohemond
ad se venisse, iussit eum honorabiliter recipi et caute
to him to-have-come he-ordered him honorably to-be-received and warily
hospitari extra urbem. Quo hospitato, malignus imperator
to-be-lodged outside the-city who lodged the-malign emperor
misit pro eo, ut veniret loqui simul secreto secum. Illuc
sent for him that he-should-come to-speak together secretly with-him thither
quoque venit dux Godefridus cum fratre suo, ac deinde
also came duke Godfrey with brother his and then
comes Sancti Egidii appropinquavit civitati. Tunc imperator,
the-count of-Saint Gilles drew-near to-the-city then the-emperor
anxiens et bulliens ira, cogitabat, quemadmodum callide
anxious and boiling with-anger pondered how cunningly
fraudulenterque comprehenderent hos Christi milites. Sed
and-deceitfully they-might-seize these of-Christ knights but
divina gratia revelante, neque locus neque nocendi spacium
divine grace revealing neither place nor of-harming room
ab eo vel a suis inventa sunt. Novissime vero congregati
by him or by his-men found were at-the-last indeed gathered
omnes maiores natu, qui Constantinopoli erant, timentes, ne
all the-elder by-birth who at-Constantinople were fearing lest
sua privarentur patria, repererunt in suis consiliis atque
of-their they-be-deprived fatherland found in their counsels and

ingeniosis schematibus, quod nostrorum duces, comites seu
ingenious schemes that of-our-men the-dukes counts or
omnes maiores imperatori sacramentum fideliter facere
all the-greater-men to-the-emperor an-oath faithfully to-make
deberent, qui omnino prohibuerunt, dixeruntque: Certe
ought who wholly refused and-said certainly
indigni sumus atque iniustum nobis videtur ullatenus ei
unworthy we-are and unjust to-us it-seems in-any-way to-him
sacramentum iurare. Forsitan adhuc a nostris maioribus
an-oath to-swear perhaps still by our greater-men
saepe delusi erimus. Ad ultimum quid facturi erunt?
often deceived we-shall-be at the-last what about-to-do shall-they-be
dicent, quoniam necessitate compulsi, nolentes volentesque
they-shall-say that by-necessity compelled unwilling and-willing
humiliaverunt se ad nequissimi imperatoris voluntatem.
they-humbled themselves to of-the-most-wicked emperor the-will
Fortissimo autem viro Boamundo, quem valde timebat,
to-the-most-strong moreover man Bohemond whom greatly he-feared
quia olim eum saepe cum suo exercitu eiecerat de campo,
because once him often with his army he-had-driven from the-field
dixit: Quoniam, si libenter ei iuraret, XV dies eundi
he-said that if willingly to-him he-would-swear fifteen days of-going
terrae in extensione ab Antiochia retro daret, et VIII
of-land in extent from Antioch back he-would-give and eight
in latitudine; eique tali modo iuravit, ut, si ille fideliter
in breadth and-to-him in-such way he-swore that if he faithfully
teneret illud sacramentum, iste suum nunquam praeteriret.
should-keep that oath this-one his never would-transgress
Tam fortes et tam duri milites, cur hoc fecerunt? propterea
so strong and so hard knights why this did-they on-this-account
igitur, quia multa coacti erant necessitate. Imperator
therefore because by-much compelled they-were necessity the-emperor

quoque omnibus nostris fidem et securitatem dedit, iuravit
also to-all our-men faith and security gave he-swore
etiam, quia veniret nobiscum pariter cum suo exercitu
also that he-would-come with-us together with his army
per terram et per mare; et nobis mercatum terra marique
by land and by sea and to-us a-market by-land and-by-sea
fideliter daret, ac omnia nostra perdita diligenter restauraret;
faithfully would-give and all our losses diligently would-restore
insuper et neminem nostrorum peregrinorum conturbari vel
besides and no-one of-our pilgrims to-be-troubled or
contristari in via Sancti Sepulcri vellet aut permitteret.
to-be-grieved on the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher he-would-wish or permit
Comes autem Sancti Egidii erat hospitatus extra urbem
the-count moreover of-Saint Gilles had lodged outside the-city
in burgo, gensque sua remanserat retro. Mandavit itaque
in the-suburb and-people his had-remained behind commanded and-so
imperator comiti, ut faceret ei hominium et fiduciam,
the-emperor to-the-count that he-should-do to-him homage and fealty
sicut alii fecerant. Et, dum imperator haec mandabat,
as the-others had-done and while the-emperor this was-commanding
comes meditabatur, qualiter vindictam de imperatoris exercitu
the-count was-pondering how vengeance on of-the-emperor the-army
habere posset. Sed dux Godefridus et Rotbertus, comes
to-have he-might-be-able but duke Godfrey and Robert count
Flandrensis, aliique principes dixerunt ei, iniustum fore
of-Flanders and-other princes said to-him unjust it-would-be
contra Christianos pugnare. Vir quoque sapiens Boamundus
against Christians to-fight the-man also wise Bohemond
dixit, quia, si aliquid iniustum imperatori faceret et fiduciam
said that if anything unjust to-the-emperor he-should-do and fealty
ei facere prohiberet, ipse ex imperatoris parte fieret.
to-him to-do should-refuse he from of-the-emperor the-side would-become

Igitur comes, accepto consilio a suis, Alexio vitam et
therefore the-count received counsel from his-men to-Alexius life and
honorem iuravit, quod nec per se nec per alium ei
honor swore that neither through himself nor through another from-him
auferre consentiat. Cumque de hominio appellaretur,
to-take-away he-would-consent and-when about homage he-was-called-upon
non se pro capitis periculo id facturum respondit. Tunc
not himself for of-his-head peril it about-to-do he-answered then
gens domini Boamundi appropinquavit Constantinopoli.
the-people of-lord Bohemond drew-near to-Constantinople

VII · THE ROAD TO NICAEA

Tancred and Richard of the Principate slip across the Arm to avoid the oath. Godfrey sends three thousand men with axes to open a road over the mountains, marking it with crosses for the pilgrims. They reach Nicaea on May 6; bread is dear until Bohemond arrives and has a great market brought by land and sea.

Tancredus vero et Richardus de Principatu propter
Tancred but and Richard of the-Principate on-account-of
iusiurandum imperatoris latenter transfretaverunt Brachium, et
the-oath of-the-emperor secretly crossed the-Arm and
fere omnis gens Boamundi iuxta illos. Et mox exercitus
almost all the-people of-Bohemond beside them and soon the-army
comitis Sancti Egidii appropinquavit Constantinopoli. Comes
of-the-count of-Saint Gilles drew-near to-Constantinople the-count
vero remansit ibi cum ipsa sua gente. Vir itaque prudens
but remained there with that-very his people the-man and-so prudent
Boamundus remansit cum imperatore, ut cum eo consilium
Bohemond remained with the-emperor that with him counsel
acciperet, quomodo mandarent mercatum gentibus, quae
he-might-take how they-should-send a-market to-the-peoples who

erant ultra Niceam civitatem. Dux itaque Godefridus ivit
were beyond Nicaea the-city the-duke and-so Godfrey went
prius Nicomediam simul cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus,
first to-Nicomedia together with Tancred and the-others all
fueruntque ibi per III dies. Videns vero dux, quod nulla via
and-they-were there for three days seeing indeed the-duke that no road
pateret, per quam posset conducere has gentes usque Niceam
lay-open by which he-could to-lead these peoples up-to Nicaea
civitatem, quoniam per illam viam, per quam prius alii
the-city since by that road by which before the-others
transierant, non posset modo tanta gens transire, misit ante
had-passed not could now so-great a-people pass he-sent before
se III milia hominum cum securibus et gladiis, qui
himself three thousand of-men with axes and swords who
inciderent et aperirent hanc viam, quae patefacta staret
should-cut and should-open this road which opened should-stand
nostris peregrinis usque Nicenam urbem. Quae via fuit aperta
for-our pilgrims up-to the-Nicene city which road was opened
per angustam et nimis immensam montanam, et faciebant
through a-narrow and very immense mountain and they-made
retro per viam cruces ferreas ac ligneas, quas ponebant
behind along the-road crosses of-iron and of-wood which they-set
super stipites, ut eas nostri peregrini cognoscerent. Interea
upon stakes that them our pilgrims might-know meanwhile
pervenimus ad Niceam, quae est caput totius Romaniae,
we-came to Nicaea which is the-head of-all Romania
in IIIIº die, pridie nonas Maii; ibique castrametati
on the-fourth day on-the-day-before the-Nones of-May and-there encamped
sumus. Priusquam autem dominus Boamundus venisset ad nos,
we-have before moreover lord Bohemond had-come to us
tanta inopia panis fuit inter nos, ut unus panis venderetur
such want of-bread was among us that one loaf was-sold

XX aut XXX denariis. Postquam venit vir prudens
for-twenty or thirty pennies after came the-man prudent
Boamundus, iussit maximum mercatum conduci per mare,
Bohemond he-ordered a-very-great market to-be-brought by sea
et pariter utrinque veniebant, ille per terram et ille
and together from-both-sides they-came that-one by land and that-one
per mare, et fuit maxima ubertas in tota Christi militia.
by sea and there-was the-greatest plenty in the-whole of-Christ army

VIII · THE SIEGE OF NICAEA

On Ascension Day they attack Nicaea with towers and engines. Raymond and the bishop of Le Puy rout a relieving army, and the Franks sling the heads of the slain into the city. A tower is undermined but rebuilt overnight. Ships hauled overland from Civetot close the lake, and the Turks surrender the city to the emperor, who spares them to keep them ready against the Franks.

In die autem Ascensionis Domini coepimus urbem
on the-day moreover of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord we-began the-city
circumquaque invadere et aedificare instrumenta lignorum
all-around to-attack and to-build engines of-timbers
atque turres ligneas, quo possemus murales turres
and towers wooden by-which we-might-be-able the-wall towers
sternere. Tam fortiter et tam acriter aggredimur urbem
to-lay-low so strongly and so fiercely we-attack the-city
per duos dies, ut etiam foderemus murum urbis. Turci
for two days that even we-dug-under the-wall of-the-city the-Turks
quippe, licet gens barbara, qui erant in urbe, miserunt
indeed though a-people barbarous who were in the-city sent
nuntios aliis, qui venerant adiutorium civitati dare, in
messengers to-the-others who had-come help to-the-city to-give in

hunc modum: Quod audacter secureque approximent et per
this way that boldly and-securely they-should-approach and by
meridianam introeant portam, quoniam ex illa parte nemo
the-southern they-should-enter gate since on that side no-one
eis erit obviam nec contristabit. Quae porta ipsa die
to-them shall-be in-the-way nor shall-grieve-them which gate that-very day
a comite Sancti Egidii in die Sabbati post Ascensionem
by the-count of-Saint Gilles on the-day of-the-Sabbath after the-Ascension
Domini et episcopo Podiensi hospitata fuit. Qui comes
of-the-Lord and the-bishop of-Le-Puy occupied was which count
veniens ex alia parte, protectus divina virtute, ac terrenis
coming from another side protected by-divine power and with-earthly
fulgebat armis cum suo fortissimo exercitu. Hic itaque
shone arms with his most-strong army here and-so
invenit contra nos venientes Turcos. Qui undique signo
he-found against us coming the-Turks who on-all-sides with-the-sign
crucis armatus, vehementer irruit super illos atque superavit.
of-the-cross armed vehemently rushed upon them and overcame
Dederuntque fugam et fuit mortua maxima pars illorum.
and-they-gave flight and there-was dead the-greatest part of-them
Qui rursus venerunt auxilio aliorum gaudentes et exsultantes
who again came to-the-aid of-the-others rejoicing and exulting
ad certum bellum, trahentes secum funes, quibus nos ligatos
to sure battle dragging with-them ropes with-which us bound
ducerent Corosanum. Venientes autem laetantes coeperunt
they-might-lead to-Khorasan coming moreover rejoicing they-began
ex cacumine montis paulatim descendere. Quotquot
from the-summit of-the-mountain little-by-little to-descend as-many-as
descenderunt, illic caesis capitibus a manibus nostrorum
descended there cut-off heads by the-hands of-our-men

remanserunt; proiiciebant autem nostri capita occisorum
remained threw moreover our-men the-heads of-the-slain
funda in urbem, ut inde Turci magis terrerentur.
with-a-sling into the-city that thence the-Turks more might-be-terrified
Denique comes Sancti Egidii et episcopus Podiensis consiliati
finally the-count of-Saint Gilles and the-bishop of-Le-Puy took-counsel
sunt in unum, qualiter facerent suffodi quamdam
have into one how they-might-cause to-be-undermined a-certain
turrim, quae erat ante tentoria eorum. Ordinati sunt homines,
tower which was before tents their appointed were men
qui hanc suffodiant, et arbalistae et sagittarii, qui eos
who it should-undermine and crossbowmen and archers who them
undique defendant. Foderunt namque illam usque ad radices
on-all-sides should-defend they-dug for it all-the-way to the-roots
muri, submiseruntque postes et ligna, ac deinde miserunt
of-the-wall and-put-under posts and timbers and then put
ignem. Sero autem facto, cecidit turris iam in nocte; sed,
fire evening moreover made fell the-tower now in the-night but
quia nox erat, non potuerunt proeliari cum illis. Nocte vero
because night it-was not they-could do-battle with them in-night indeed
illa surrexerunt festinanter Turci et restauraverunt murum
that rose hastily the-Turks and restored the-wall
tam fortiter, ut, veniente die, nemo posset eos laedere ex illa
so strongly that coming the-day no-one could them to-harm from that
parte. Modo venit comes de Normannia et comes Stephanus
side now came the-count of Normandy and count Stephen
et alii plures, ac deinceps Rogerius de Barnavilla. Boamundus
and others many and thereafter Roger of Barneville Bohemond
denique obsedit urbem in prima fronte et iuxta eum Tancredus
finally besieged the-city in the-first front and beside him Tancred
et postea dux Godefridus ac deinde comes Flandrensis, iuxta
and afterward duke Godfrey and then the-count of-Flanders beside

quem Rotbertus Nortmannus et iuxta eum comes Sancti
whom Robert the-Norman and beside him the-count of-Saint
Egidii, iuxta quem Podiensis episcopus. Ita vero per terram
Gilles beside whom of-Le-Puy the-bishop so indeed by land
fuit obsessa, ut nemo auderet exire neque intrare; fueruntque
it-was besieged that no-one dared to-go-out nor to-enter and-were
ibi omnes congregati in unum. Et quis poterat numerare
there all gathered into one and who could to-number
tantam Christi militiam? Nullus, ut puto, tot prudentissimos
so-great of-Christ an-army none as I-think so-many most-prudent
milites nec antea vidit nec ultra videre poterit. Erat autem
knights neither before saw nor further to-see shall-be-able there-was moreover
ex una parte urbis immensus lacus, in quo Turci suas
on one side of-the-city an-immense lake on which the-Turks their
mittebant naves, et exibant et intrabant et afferebant herbam,
sent ships and went-out and entered and brought grass
ligna et alia plura. Tunc nostri maiores consiliati
wood and other-things many then our greater-men having-taken-counsel
in unum, miserunt nuntios Constantinopolim, dicturos
into one sent messengers to-Constantinople to-say
imperatori, ut faceret naves conduci ad Civitot, ubi
to-the-emperor that he-should-cause ships to-be-brought to Civetot where
portus est, atque iuberet congregari boves, qui eas traherent
a-port is and should-order to-be-gathered oxen which them should-drag
per montanas et silvas, usque approximent lacui; quod
through the-mountains and woods until they-should-approach the-lake which
continuo factum est, suosque Turcopulos mandavit cum eis.
at-once done was and-his Turcopoles he-sent with them
Die vero, quo naves fuerant conductae, noluerunt
on-the-day indeed on-which the-ships had-been brought they-were-unwilling
eas statim mittere in lacum, sed, nocte superveniente,
them at-once to-put into the-lake but night coming-on

miserunt eas in ipsum lacum plenas Turcopolis bene ornatis
they-put them into that-very lake full of-Turcopoles well equipped
armis. Summo autem diluculo stabant naves optime
with-arms at-the-earliest moreover dawn stood the-ships excellently
ordinatae, per lacum properantes contra urbem. Videntes
ordered over the-lake hastening against the-city seeing
eas Turci mirabantur, ignorantes an esset eorum gens,
them the-Turks marveled not-knowing whether it-were their people
an imperatoris. Postquam autem cognoverunt esse gentem
or the-emperor's after moreover they-knew it-to-be the-people
imperatoris, timuerunt usque ad mortem, plorantes et
of-the-emperor they-feared all-the-way to death weeping and
lamentantes; Francique gaudebant et dabant gloriam Deo.
lamenting and-the-Franks rejoiced and gave glory to-God
Videntes autem Turci, quod nullatenus ex suis exercitibus
seeing moreover the-Turks that in-no-way from their armies
adiutorium habere possent, legationem mandaverunt imperatori,
help to-have they-could an-embassy they-sent to-the-emperor
quia civitatem sponte redderent, si eos omnimodo abire
that the-city willingly they-would-surrender if them in-every-way to-go-away
permitteret cum mulieribus et filiis et omnibus substantiis
he-would-allow with wives and children and all goods
suis. Tunc imperator, plenus vana et iniqua cogitatione,
their then the-emperor full of-vain and wicked thought
iussit illos impunitos abire sine ullo timore ac sibi
ordered them unpunished to-go-away without any fear and to-himself
eos Constantinopolim cum magna fiducia adduci. Quos
them to-Constantinople with great confidence to-be-brought whom
studiose servabat, ut illos ad Francorum nocumenta et
zealously he-kept that them for of-the-Franks harms and
obstacula paratos haberet. Fuimusque in obsidione illa per
obstacles ready he-might-have and-we-were in siege that for

VII hebdomadas et III dies, et multi ex nostris illic
seven weeks and three days and many of our-men there
receperunt martyrium et laetantes gaudentesque reddiderunt
received martyrdom and rejoicing and-glad gave-back
felices animas Deo, et ex pauperrima gente multi mortui
happy souls to-God and of the-poorest people many died
sunt fame pro Christi nomine, qui in caelum triumphantes
have of-hunger for of-Christ the-name who into heaven triumphing
portaverunt stolam recepti martyrii, una voce dicentes:
carried the-robe of-received martyrdom with-one voice saying
Vindica, Domine, sanguinem nostrum, qui pro te effusus est,
avenge O-Lord blood our which for you shed is
qui es benedictus et laudabilis in saecula saeculorum. Amen.
who are blessed and praiseworthy to the-ages of-ages amen

IX · THE BATTLE OF DORYLAEUM

The army marches in two columns, and on the third day countless Turks, screeching in their tongue, fall on Bohemond's. He has the tents pitched and sends the knights to meet them, while the women bring water to the fighters. The other princes come up, and the Turks flee past their tents and are pursued all day. The author praises the Turks' skill in war and reports their claim to descend from the Franks: had they kept the Christian faith, no one could have matched them.

Interea reddita civitate et Turcis deductis Constantinopolim,
meanwhile surrendered the-city and the-Turks led-away to-Constantinople
unde imperator magis magisque gavisus, quod civitas reddita
whence the-emperor more and-more rejoicing that the-city surrendered
sit eius potestati, iussit maximas elemosynas erogari
was to-his power ordered very-great alms to-be-paid-out
nostris pauperibus. Denique prima die, qua recessimus
to-our poor finally on-the-first day on-which we-withdrew

a civitate, venimus ad quemdam pontem, ibique mansimus
from the-city we-came to a-certain bridge and-there we-stayed
per duos dies. Tertia autem die, priusquam lux coepisset
for two days on-the-third moreover day before the-light had-begun
oriri, surrexerunt nostri et, quia nox erat, non viderunt
to-rise rose our-men and because night it-was not they-saw-how
tenere unam viam, sed sunt divisi per duo agmina et
to-keep one road but were divided into two columns and
venerunt divisi per duos dies. In uno agmine fuit vir
came divided for two days in one column was the-man
Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortmannus et prudens Tancredus
Bohemond and Robert the-Norman and prudent Tancred
et alii plures; in alio fuit comes Sancti Egidii et dux
and others many in the-other was the-count of-Saint Gilles and duke
Godefridus et Podiensis episcopus et Hugo magnus comesque
Godfrey and of-Le-Puy the-bishop and Hugh the-Great and-the-count
Flandrensis et alii plures. Tertia vero die irruerunt Turci
of-Flanders and others many on-the-third indeed day rushed the-Turks
vehementer super Boemundum et eos, qui cum ipso erant.
vehemently upon Bohemond and those who with him were
Continuo Turci coeperunt stridere et garrire ac clamare
at-once the-Turks began to-screech and to-chatter and to-shout
excelsa voce, dicentes diabolicum sonum nescio quomodo
with-lofty voice saying a-devilish sound I-know-not how
in sua lingua. Sapiens vir Boamundus videns innumerabiles
in their tongue the-wise man Bohemond seeing countless
Turcos, procul stridentes et clamantes daemoniaca voce,
Turks far-off screeching and shouting with-demonic voice
protinus iussit omnes milites descendere et tentoria celeriter
at-once ordered all the-knights to-dismount and the-tents swiftly
extendere. Priusquam tentoria fuissent extensa, rursus dixit
to-stretch-out before the-tents had-been stretched-out again he-said

omnibus militibus: Seniores et fortissimi milites Christi, ecce
to-all the-knights lords and most-strong knights of-Christ behold
modo bellum angustum est undique circa nos. Igitur omnes
now the-battle narrow is on-all-sides around us therefore all
milites eant viriliter obviam illis, et pedites prudenter et
the-knights let-go manfully to-meet them and the-foot-soldiers prudently and
citius extendant tentoria! Postquam vero hoc totum factum
more-swiftly let-stretch-out the-tents after indeed this all done
est, Turci undique iam erant circumcingentes nos dimicando
was the-Turks on-all-sides now were surrounding us by-fighting
et iaculando ac spiculando et mirabiliter longe lateque
and by-hurling and by-spearing and wondrously far and-wide
sagittando. Nos itaque, quamquam nequivimus resistere illis
by-shooting-arrows we and-so although we-could-not to-resist them
neque sufferre pondus tantorum hostium, tamen pertulimus
nor bear the-weight of-so-many enemies yet we-held
illuc unanimiter gradum. Feminae quoque nostrae in illa die
there with-one-mind the-step the-women also our on that day
fuerunt nobis in maximo refugio, quae afferebant ad bibendum
were to-us in the-greatest refuge who brought for drinking
aquam nostris proeliatoribus, et forsitan semper confortabant
water to-our fighters and perhaps always comforted
illos pugnantes et defendentes. Vir itaque sapiens
them fighting and defending the-man and-so wise
Boamundus protinus mandavit aliis, scilicet egregio
Bohemond at-once sent-word to-the-others namely to-the-excellent
comiti de Sancto Egidio et inclito duci Godefrido
count of Saint Gilles and to-the-renowned duke Godfrey
et Hugoni Magno atque honestissimo Podiensi episcopo
and to-Hugh the-Great and to-the-most-honorable of-Le-Puy bishop
aliisque omnibus Christi militibus, quo festinent
and-to-the-other all of-Christ knights that they-should-hasten

et ad bellum citius approximent, dicens: Et si hodie
and to the-battle more-swiftly draw-near saying and if today
luctari volunt, viriliter veniant. Qui omnimodo prohibentes,
to-wrestle they-wish manfully let-them-come who in-every-way forbidding
deludentes illos et dicentes: Verumtamen hoc fallacium
mocking them and saying nevertheless this deceitful
est totum. Nam nos non credebamus iam illos esse tam
is all for we not believed now them to-be so
pudentes, quod amplius auderent se erigere et proeliari
honor-loving that further they-would-dare themselves to-raise and to-do-battle
nobiscum. Dux itaque Godefridus, audax et fortis, ac Hugo
with-us the-duke and-so Godfrey bold and strong and Hugh
Magnus simul venerunt prius cum suis exercitibus, episcopus
the-Great together came first with their armies the-bishop
quoque Podiensis prosecutus est illos una cum suo exercitu,
also of-Le-Puy followed has them together with his army
et comes de Sancto Egidio iuxta illos cum magna gente.
and the-count of Saint Gilles beside them with a-great people
Mirabantur ergo nostri valde, unde esset exorta tanta
marveled therefore our-men greatly whence had arisen so-great
multitudo Turcorum et Arabum et Saracenorum et aliorum,
a-multitude of-Turks and of-Arabs and of-Saracens and of-others
quos enumerare ignoro; quia paene omnes montes et
whom to-enumerate I-know-not-how because almost all the-mountains and
colles et valles et omnia plana loca intus et extra undique
hills and valleys and all level places within and without on-all-sides
erant cooperta de illa excommunicata generatione. Factus est
were covered with that excommunicate generation made was
itaque sermo secretus inter nos laudantes et consulentes atque
and-so a-speech secret among us praising and counseling and
dicentes: Estote omnimodo unanimes in fide Christi et
saying be in-every-way of-one-mind in the-faith of-Christ and

sanctae crucis vexilli victoria, quia hodie omnes divites,
of-the-holy cross of-the-banner in-the-victory because today all rich
si Deo placet, effecti eritis. Continuo fuerunt ordinatae
if to-God it-pleases made you-shall-be at-once were ordered
nostrorum acies. In sinistra parte fuit vir sapiens
of-our-men the-battle-lines on the-left side was the-man wise
Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortmannus et prudens Tancredus
Bohemond and Robert the-Norman and prudent Tancred
ac honestissimus miles Rotbertus de Ansa et inclitus
and the-most-honorable knight Robert of Anzi and the-renowned
Richardus de Principatu. Episcopus vero Podiensis venit per
Richard of the-Principate the-bishop but of-Le-Puy came by
alteram montanam, undique circumcingens incredulos Turcos;
the-other mountain on-all-sides surrounding the-unbelieving Turks
in sinistra quoque parte equitavit fortissimus miles Raimundus,
on the-left also side rode the-most-strong knight Raymond
comes de Sancto Egidio. In dextera vero parte fuit honorabilis
count of Saint Gilles on the-right indeed side was the-honorable
dux Godefridus et acerrimus miles Flandrensis comes et Hugo
duke Godfrey and the-most-fierce knight of-Flanders the-count and Hugh
Magnus et alii plures, quorum nomina ignoro. Statim autem
the-Great and others many whose names I-know-not at-once moreover
venientibus militibus nostris, Turci et Arabes et Saraceni et
coming the-knights our the-Turks and Arabs and Saracens and
Angulani et omnes barbarae nationes dederunt velociter fugam
Agulani and all the-barbarous nations gave swiftly flight
per compendia montium et per plana loca. Erat autem
by the-short-cuts of-the-mountains and by level places was moreover
numerus Turcorum, Persarum, Publicanorum, Saracenorum,
the-number of-the-Turks of-the-Persians of-the-Paulicians of-the-Saracens
Angulanorum aliorumque paganorum CCCLX milia
of-the-Agulani and-of-the-other pagans three-hundred-and-sixty thousand

extra Arabes, quorum numerum nemo scit nisi solus Deus.
besides the-Arabs whose number no-one knows except alone God
Fugerunt vero nimis velociter ad sua tentoria, ibique eos
they-fled indeed very swiftly to their tents and-there them
diu morari non licuit. Iterum vero arripuerunt fugam,
long to-stay not it-was-allowed again indeed they-took-up flight
nosque illos persecuti sumus occidentes tota una die et
and-we them pursued have killing-them the-whole one day and
accepimus spolia multa: aurum, argentum, equos et asinos,
we-received spoils many gold silver horses and asses
camelos, oves et boves et plurima alia, quae ignoramus,
camels sheep and oxen and very-many other-things which we-know-not
et nisi Dominus fuisset nobiscum in bello et aliam
and unless the-Lord had-been with-us in the-battle and another
cito nobis misisset aciem, nullus nostrorum evasisset,
quickly to-us had-sent battle-line none of-ours would-have-escaped
quia ab hora tertia usque in horam nonam perduravit
because from the-hour third all-the-way into the-hour ninth lasted
haec pugna. Sed omnipotens Deus, pius et misericors, qui
this fight but almighty God pious and merciful who
non permisit suos milites perire nec in manus inimicorum
not allowed his knights to-perish nor into the-hands of-the-enemies
incidere, festine nobis adiutorium misit. Sed fuerunt illic
to-fall speedily to-us help sent but were there
mortui duo ex nostris milites honorabiles, scilicet Godefridus
dead two of our knights honorable namely Godfrey
de Monte Scabioso et Willelmus Marchisi filius, frater
of Monte Scaglioso and William of-the-Marquis son brother
Tancredi, aliique milites et pedites, quorum nomina ignoro.
of-Tancred and-other knights and foot-soldiers whose names I-know-not

Quis unquam tam sapiens aut doctus audebit describere
who ever so wise or learned shall-dare to-describe
prudentiam, militiam et fortitudinem Turcorum? Qui putabant
the-prudence the-warfare and the-strength of-the-Turks who thought
terrere gentem Francorum minis suarum sagittarum, sicut
to-terrify the-people of-the-Franks with-threats of-their arrows as
terruerunt Arabes, Saracenos et Hermenios, Suranios et
they-terrified the-Arabs Saracens and Armenians Syrians and
Graecos? Sed, si Deo placet, nunquam tantum valebunt
Greeks but if to-God it-pleases never so-much they-shall-avail
quantum nostri. Verumtamen dicunt se esse de Francorum
as our-men nevertheless they-say themselves to-be of of-the-Franks
generatione, et quia nullus homo naturaliter debet esse miles
the-generation and that no man by-nature ought to-be a-knight
nisi Franci et illi. Veritatem dicam, quam nemo audebit
except the-Franks and they the-truth I-shall-say which no-one shall-dare
prohibere: Certe, si in fide Christi et Christianitate sancta
to-forbid certainly if in the-faith of-Christ and Christendom holy
semper firmi fuissent et unum Dominum in trinitate
always firm they-had-been and one Lord in trinity
confiteri voluissent, Deique filium natum de virgine matre,
to-confess had-wished and-of-God the-son born of a-virgin mother
passum et resurgentem a mortuis et in caelum suis
having-suffered and rising from the-dead and into heaven his
cernentibus discipulis ascendentem, ac deinde consolationem
beholding disciples ascending and then the-consolation
Sancti Spiritus perfecte mittentem et eum in caelo et in
of-the-Holy Spirit perfectly sending and him in heaven and on
terra regnantem recta mente et fide credidissent, ipsis
earth reigning with-right mind and faith had-believed than-them
potentiores vel fortiores vel bellorum ingeniosissimos nullus
more-powerful or stronger or in-wars most-ingenious no-one

invenire potuisset: et tamen gratia Dei victi sunt a
to-find could-have and yet by-the-grace of-God conquered were by
nostris. Hoc bellum factum est primo die Julii.
our-men this battle done was on-the-first day of-July

X · THROUGH ROMANIA TO HERACLEA AND TARSUS

Kilij-Arslan tells the Arabs how the Franks' numbers terrified him, and the fleeing Turks deceive the towns and plunder them. The army crosses a waterless land, eating plucked ears and using oxen and goats as beasts. At Heraclea it routs the Turks. Tancred takes Tarsus, but Baldwin claims it and Tancred withdraws, receiving Adana and Mamistra.

Postquam vero Turci, inimici Dei et Sanctae Christianitatis,
after indeed the-Turks enemies of-God and of-holy Christendom
omnino fuerunt devicti, per IV dies et noctes fugientes huc
wholly were conquered for four days and nights fleeing hither
et illuc, contigit, ut Solimanus, dux illorum, filius Solimani
and thither it-happened that Kilij-Arslan the-duke their son of-Suleiman
veteris, fugeret de Nicea, qui invenit X milia Arabum, qui
the-old fled from Nicaea who found ten thousand of-Arabs who
dixerunt ei: O infelix et infelicior omnibus gentilibus! cur
said to-him O unhappy and more-unhappy than-all the-gentiles why
tremefactus fugis? Quibus Solimanus lacrimabiliter respondit:
terrified do-you-flee to-whom Kilij-Arslan tearfully answered
Quoniam olim cum habuissem omnes Francos devictos, eosque
since once when I-had all the-Franks conquered and-them
putarem iam in captivitate ligatos, dum paulatim voluissem
I-thought now in captivity bound while little-by-little I-wished
ligare adinvicem, tunc respiciens retro, vidi tam innumerabilem
to-bind them-together then looking back I-saw so countless

gentem eorum, ut si vos aut aliquis illic adesset, putaret,
a-people of-theirs that if you or anyone there were-present he-would-think
quod omnes montes et colles vallesque et omnia plana loca
that all the-mountains and hills and-valleys and all level places
plena essent illorum multitudine. Nos igitur illos cernentes
full were of-their multitude we therefore them seeing
statim coepimus capere subitaneum iter, timentes tam
at-once began to-take a-sudden journey fearing so
mirabiliter, ut vix evaserimus de illorum manibus: unde
wondrously that scarcely we-escaped from their hands whence
adhuc in nimio terrore sumus. Et si mihi et verbis meis
still in excessive terror we-are and if me and words my
velletis credere, auferretis vos hinc, quia, si et
you-would-wish to-believe you-would-take-away yourselves hence because if also
ipsi potuerint vos solummodo scire, unus ex vobis vix
they-themselves could you only to-know one of you scarcely
amplius evadet vivus. At illi audientes talia retrorsum
further shall-escape alive but they hearing such-things backward
verterunt dorsa et se expanderunt per universam
turned backs and themselves spread through all
Romaniam. Tunc veniebamus nos persequentes iniquissimos
Romania then came we pursuing the-most-wicked
Turcos, cotidie fugientes ante nos. At illi venientes ad cuncta
Turks daily fleeing before us but they coming to all
castra sive urbes, fingentes et deludentes habitatores terrarum
castles or cities pretending and deceiving the-inhabitants of-lands
illarum dicebant: Nos devicimus Christianos omnes et
those said we have-conquered the-Christians all and
superavimus illos ita, ut nullus eorum iam unquam audeat
overcome them so that none of-them now ever may-dare
erigere se ante nos; tantum permittite nos intus intrare.
to-raise himself before us only allow us inside to-enter

Qui intrantes spoliabant ecclesias et domos et alia
who entering despoiled churches and houses and other-things
omnia, et ducebant equos secum et asinos et mulos,
all and led horses with-themselves and asses and mules
aurum et argentum et ea, quae reperire poterant. Adhuc
gold and silver and those-things which to-find they-could still
quoque filios Christianorum secum tollebant et ardebant
also the-sons of-the-Christians with-themselves they-took and burned
ac devastabant omnia convenientia sive utilia, fugientes et
and laid-waste all-things fitting or useful fleeing and
paventes valde ante faciem nostram. Nos itaque persequebamur
fearing greatly before the-face our we and-so pursued
eos per deserta et inaquosam et inhabitabilem terram,
them through deserts and waterless and uninhabitable land
ex qua vix vivi evasimus vel exivimus. Fames vero et
from which scarcely alive we-escaped or went-out hunger but and
sitis undique coartabant nos, nihilque penitus nobis erat ad
thirst on-all-sides pressed us and-nothing at-all to-us was for
edendum, nisi forte vellentes et fricantes spicas manibus
eating except perhaps plucking and rubbing ears with-hands
nostris, tali cibo quam miserrime vivebamus. Illic fuit
our on-such food how most-wretchedly we-lived there was
mortua maxima pars nostrorum equitum, eo quod
dead the-greatest part of-our horsemen for-the-reason that
multi eorum remanserunt pedites, et pro penuria equorum
many of-them remained foot-soldiers and for lack of-horses
erant nobis boves loco caballorum, et pro nimia necessitate
were for-us oxen in-place of-horses and for excessive need
succedebant nobis capri et multones ac canes ad portandum.
succeeded to-us goats and wethers and dogs for carrying

Interea coepimus intrare in terram optimam, plenam
meanwhile we-began to-enter into a-land most-excellent full
corporalibus alimentis et deliciis omnibusque bonis, ac
of-bodily nourishments and delights and-all goods and
deinceps appropinquavimus Iconio. Habitatores vero terrae
thereafter we-drew-near to-Iconium the-inhabitants but of-land
illius suadebant et admonebant nos nobiscum ferre utres
that persuaded and advised us with-us to-carry skins
plenos aqua, quia illic in itinere diei unius est maxima
full of-water because there on the-journey of-day one is the-greatest
penuria aquae. Nos vero ita fecimus, donec pervenimus
lack of-water we but so did until we-came
ad quoddam flumen, ibique hospitati sumus per II dies;
to a-certain river and-there lodged we-have for two days
coeperunt autem cursores nostri ante ire, donec pervenerunt
began moreover the-runners our ahead to-go until they-came
ad Erachiam, in qua erat Turcorum nimia congregatio,
to Heraclea in which was of-Turks an-excessive gathering
exspectans et insidians, quomodo posset Christi milites
waiting and lying-in-wait how it-might of-Christ the-knights
nocere et contristare. Quos Turcos Dei omnipotentis milites
to-harm and grieve which Turks of-God almighty the-knights
invenientes audacter invaserunt. Superati itaque sunt inimici
finding boldly attacked overcome and-so were enemies
nostri in die illa; tamque celeriter fugiebant, quam sagitta
our on day that and-as swiftly they-fled as an-arrow
fugit emissa ictu valido chordae et arcus. Nostri igitur
flies sent by-the-blow strong of-the-string and of-the-bow our-men therefore
intraverunt statim in civitatem, ibique mansimus per IV dies.
entered at-once into the-city and-there we-stayed for four days

Illic divisit se ab aliis Tancredus, Marchisi filius, et
there divided himself from the-others Tancred of-the-Marquis son and
Balduinus comes egregius, frater ducis Godefridi; simulque
Baldwin the-count excellent brother of-duke Godfrey and-together
intraverunt vallem de Botrenthrot. Divisit quoque se
entered the-valley of Botrenthrot divided also himself
Tancredus et venit Tarsum solummodo cum suis militibus.
Tancred and came to-Tarsus only with his knights
Exierunt denique Turci de urbe et venerunt obviam eis
went-out finally the-Turks from the-city and came to-meet them
atque in unum congregati properaverunt ad bellum contra
and into one gathered hastened to battle against
Christianos. Appropinquantibus itaque nostris et pugnantibus,
the-Christians drawing-near and-so our-men and fighting
dederunt inimici nostri fugam, revertentes in urbem celeri
gave the-enemies our flight returning into the-city with-swift
gressu. Tancredus vero, vir prudens atque honorabilis
step Tancred but the-man prudent and honorable
miles Christi, pervenit laxatis loris et castrametatus est ante
knight of-Christ came loosened reins and encamped has before
portam urbis. Ex alia igitur parte venit vir inclitus
the-gate of-the-city from another therefore side came the-man renowned
comes Balduinus cum suo exercitu, postulans et deprecans
count Baldwin with his army asking and entreating
Tancredum, acerrimum militem, quatinus eum amicissime in
Tancred the-most-fierce knight so-that him most-friendlily into
societatem civitatis dignaretur suscipere. Cui ait Tancredus:
the-partnership of-the-city he-would-deign to-receive to-whom says Tancred
«Te omnimodo in hac societate denego». Nocte itaque
you in-every-way in this partnership I-refuse night and-so
superveniente, omnes Turci tremefacti fugam una arripuerunt.
coming-on all the-Turks terrified flight together took-up

Exierunt denique habitatores civitatis sub illa noctis obscuritate,
went-out finally the-inhabitants of-the-city under that of-night darkness
clamantes excelsa voce: Currite! invictissimi Franci, currite!
shouting with-lofty voice run most-unconquered Franks run
quia Turci expergefacti vestro timore omnes pariter recedunt.
because the-Turks roused by-your fear all together withdraw
Orta autem die, venerunt maiores civitatis et reddiderunt
risen moreover the-day came the-greater-men of-the-city and surrendered
sponte civitatem, dicentes illis, qui super hoc litigabant
willingly the-city saying to-those who over this were-quarreling
adinvicem: Sinite modo! Seniores sinite! quia volumus et
among-themselves stop now lords stop because we-wish and
petimus dominari et regnare super nos illum, qui heri
ask to-be-lord and to-reign over us him who yesterday
tam viriliter pugnavit cum Turcis. Balduinus itaque, mirificus
so manfully fought with the-Turks Baldwin and-so the-wondrous
comes, altercabatur et litigabat cum Tancredo, dicens: Intremus
count wrangled and quarreled with Tancred saying let-us-enter
simul et spoliemus civitatem: et qui plus potuerit
together and let-us-despoil the-city and who more shall-have-been-able
habere, habeat; et qui poterit capere, capiat. Cui
to-have let-him-have and who shall-be-able to-take let-him-take to-whom
obstans fortissimus Tancredus dixit: Absit hoc a me; ego
opposing the-most-strong Tancred said far-be this from me I
namque Christianos nolo exspoliare; homines huius civitatis
for Christians wish-not to-despoil the-men of-this city
elegerunt me dominum super se, meque habere desiderant.
have-chosen me lord over themselves and-me to-have they-desire
Tandem nequivit vir fortis Tancredus diu luctari cum
at-length could-not the-man strong Tancred long to-wrestle with
Balduino, doctissimo comite, quia illi magnus erat exercitus;
Baldwin the-most-learned count because to-him a-great was army

tamen volens nolensque dimisit eam et viriliter recessit cum
yet willing and-unwilling he-left it and manfully withdrew with
suo exercitu, fueruntque ei statim traditae duae optimae
his army and-were to-him at-once handed-over two most-excellent
civitates, videlicet Athena et Manustra et plurima castra.
cities namely Adana and Mamistra and very-many castles

XI · THROUGH ARMENIA TO ANTIOCH

The main army passes through Armenia. At a castle too strong to take, the princes give the land to Simeon, a native, and beyond Caesarea they give a rich city to Peter of the Alps. At Coxon the people surrender, and Raymond sends knights toward Antioch, where Peter of Roaix wins Rusa. The army crosses a devilish mountain where horses fall and knights sell their arms, reaches Marash, and comes down into the valley of Antioch.

Maior vero exercitus, scilicet Raimundus, comes de Sancto
the-greater but army namely Raymond count of Saint
Egidio, et doctissimus Boamundus duxque Godefridus et alii
Gilles and the-most-learned Bohemond and-duke Godfrey and other
principes in Hermeniorum intraverunt terram, sitientes atque
princes into of-the-Armenians entered the-land thirsting and
aestuantes Turcorum sanguinem. Tandem pervenerunt ad
burning of-the-Turks for-the-blood at-length they-came to
quoddam castrum, quod tam forte erat, ut nihil ei possent
a-certain castle which so strong was that nothing to-it they-could
facere. Erat autem ibi homo quidam, nomine Simeon, qui
to-do there-was moreover there a-man certain by-name Simeon who
in illa ortus fuit regione, quique hanc petiit terram, quo eam
in that born was region and-who this sought land that it
de manibus defenderet inimicorum Turcorum, cui sponte
from the-hands he-might-defend of-the-enemy Turks to-whom willingly

illi dederunt terram, quique remansit ibi cum sua gente. Nos
they gave the-land and-who remained there with his people we
denique exeuntes inde pervenimus feliciter usque Caesaream
finally going-out thence came happily up-to Caesarea
Cappadociae, a Cappadocia autem egressi venimus ad
of-Cappadocia from Cappadocia moreover having-gone-out we-came to
quamdam civitatem pulcherrimam et nimis uberrimam, quam
a-certain city most-beautiful and very most-fruitful which
paululum ante nostrum adventum obsederant Turci per III
a-little before our coming had-besieged the-Turks for three
hebdomadas, sed non superaverant; mox illuc advenientibus
weeks but not had-overcome-it soon thither arriving
nobis, continuo tradidit se in manu nostra cum magna
us at-once it-gave itself into the-hand our with great
laetitia. Hanc igitur petiit quidam miles, cui nomen Petrus
joy this therefore sought a-certain knight to-whom the-name Peter
de Alpibus, ab omnibus senioribus, quatinus eam defenderet
of the-Alps from all the-lords so-that it he-might-defend
in fidelitate Dei et Sancti Sepulcri et seniorum atque
in fealty to-God and the-Holy Sepulcher and the-lords and
imperatoris, cui cum nimio amore gratis concesserunt
the-emperor to-whom with very-great love freely they-granted
eam. Sequenti nocte audivit Boamundus, quod Turci, qui
it on-the-following night heard Bohemond that the-Turks who
fuerant in obsessione civitatis, frequenter praecederent nos.
had-been at the-siege of-the-city in-numbers were-going-before us
Extemplo praeparavit se solummodo cum militibus, quatinus
forthwith he-prepared himself only with knights so-that
illos undique expugnaret; sed illos invenire non potuit.
them on-all-sides he-might-overcome but them to-find not he-could

Deinde venimus ad quamdam urbem nomine Coxon, in qua
then we-came to a-certain city by-name Coxon in which
erat maxima ubertas omnium bonorum, quae nobis erant
was the-greatest plenty of-all goods which to-us were
necessaria. Christiani igitur, videlicet alumni urbis illius,
necessary the-Christians therefore namely the-natives of-city that
reddiderunt se statim; nosque fuimus ibi optime per III
surrendered themselves at-once and-we were there excellently for three
dies, et illic maxime sunt recuperati nostri. Audiens itaque
days and there most were recovered our-men hearing and-so
Raimundus, comes de Sancto Egidio, quod Turci, qui erant
Raymond count of Saint Gilles that the-Turks who were
in custodia Antiochiae, discessissent, in suo invenit consilio,
in the-guard of-Antioch had-departed in his he-found counsel
quod mitteret illuc aliquos ex suis militibus, qui eam
that he-should-send thither some of his knights who it
diligenter custodirent. Tandem elegit illos, quos legare volebat,
diligently should-guard at-length he-chose those whom to-send he-wished
videlicet Petrum de Castellione vicecomitem, Willelmum de
namely Peter of Castillon the-viscount William of
Monte Pislerio, Petrum de Roasa, Petrum Raimundum de
Mont Pellier Peter of Roaix Peter Raymond of
Pul, cum D militibus. Venerunt itaque in vallem
Hautpoul with five-hundred knights they-came and-so into the-valley
prope Antiochiam ad quoddam castrum Publicanorum; illicque
near Antioch to a-certain castle of-the-Paulicians and-there
audierunt Turcos esse in civitate, eamque fortiter defendere
they-heard the-Turks to-be in the-city and-it strongly to-defend
praeparabant. Petrus de Roasa divisit se ibi ab aliis, et
they-were-preparing Peter of Roaix divided himself there from the-others and
proxima nocte transivit prope Antiochiam, intravitque vallem
on-the-next night passed near Antioch and-entered the-valley

de Rugia et invenit Turcos et Saracenos, et praeliatus est
of Rugia and found Turks and Saracens and fought has
cum eis et occidit multos ex eis, et alios persecutus est
with them and killed many of them and others pursued has
valde. Videntes hoc Hermenii, habitatores terrae illius, illum
greatly seeing this the-Armenians the-inhabitants of-land that him
fortiter superasse paganos, continuo reddiderunt se.
strongly to-have-overcome the-pagans at-once surrendered themselves
Ipse vero statim coepit Rusam civitatem et plurima castra.
he but at-once took Rusa the-city and very-many castles
Nos autem, qui remansimus, exeuntes inde intravimus in
we moreover who remained going-out thence entered into
diabolicam montanam, quae tam erat alta et angusta, ut
a-devilish mountain which so was high and narrow that
nullus nostrorum auderet per semitam, quae in monte
none of-ours dared by the-path which on the-mountain
patebat, ante alium praeire. Illic praecipitabant se
lay-open before another to-go-ahead there threw themselves-down
equi et unus saumarius praecipitabat alium. Milites ergo
horses and one packhorse threw-down another the-knights therefore
stabant undique tristes, feriebant se manibus prae nimia
stood on-all-sides sad struck themselves with-hands for excessive
tristitia et dolore, dubitantes quid facerent de semetipsis
sadness and grief doubting what they-should-do about themselves
et de suis armis, vendentes suos clipeos et loricas optimas
and about their arms selling their shields and hauberks most-excellent
cum galeis solummodo propter III aut V denarios vel prout
with helmets only for three or five pennies or as
quisque poterat habere. Qui autem vendere nequibant, gratis
each could to-have who moreover to-sell could-not freely
a se iactabant et ibant. Exeuntes igitur de exsecrata
from themselves threw and went going-out therefore from the-accursed

montana pervenimus ad civitatem, quae vocatur Marasim.
mountain we-came to the-city which is-called Marash
Cultores vero illius civitatis exierunt obviam nobis laetantes
the-inhabitants but of-that city went-out to-meet us rejoicing
et deferentes maximum mercatum; illicque habuimus omnem
and bringing a-very-great market and-there we-had every
copiam, exspectando donec veniret dominus Boamundus.
abundance waiting until should-come lord Bohemond
Venerunt itaque nostri milites in vallem, in qua regalis
came and-so our knights into the-valley in which the-royal
civitas Antiochia sita est, quae est caput totius Syriae,
city Antioch situated is which is the-head of-all Syria
quamque Dominus Jesus Christus tradidit beato Petro,
and-which the-Lord Jesus Christ handed-over to-blessed Peter
apostolorum principi, quatinus eam ad cultum sanctae fidei
of-the-apostles the-prince so-that it to the-worship of-the-holy faith
revocaret, qui vivit et regnat cum Deo Patre in unitate
he-might-call-back who lives and reigns with God the-Father in the-unity
Spiritus Sancti Deus per omnia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
of-the-Holy Spirit God through all ages of-ages amen

XII · THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH BEGINS

At the Iron Bridge the forerunners rout a relieving force. On October 21 the army besieges three of Antioch's gates and finds plenty around the city. Armenians and Syrians spy for the Turks, who sally against the pilgrims. Bohemond scatters a force from Harenc, and the Turks shoot arrows into his camp.

Cum coepissemus appropinquare ad Pontem Farreum, cursores
when we-had-begun to-draw-near to the-Bridge Iron the-runners
nostri, qui semper solebant nos praecedere, invenerunt Turcos
our who always were-wont us to-go-before found Turks
innumerabiles congregatos obviam eis, qui dare adiutorium
countless gathered to-meet them who to-give help
Antiochiae festinabant. Irruentes igitur nostri uno corde
to-Antioch were-hastening rushing therefore our-men with-one heart
et mente super illos superaverunt Turcos. Consternati sunt
and mind upon them overcame the-Turks dismayed were
barbari dederuntque fugam, et multi mortui sunt ex eis
the-barbarians and-gave flight and many died have of them
in ipso certamine. Nostri igitur superantes illos, Dei gratia,
in that-very combat our-men therefore overcoming them of-God by-grace
acceperunt spolia multa, equos, camelos, mulos, asinos, onustos
received spoils many horses camels mules asses laden
frumento et vino. Venientes denique nostri castrametati sunt
with-grain and wine coming finally our-men encamped have
super ripam fluminis. Protinus vir sapiens Boamundus cum
upon the-bank of-the-river at-once the-man wise Bohemond with
IIII milibus militum venit ante portam civitatis vigilare, si
four thousand of-knights came before the-gate of-the-city to-watch whether
forte aliquis nocte latenter exiret aut intraret civitatem.
perhaps anyone by-night secretly should-go-out or should-enter the-city

Crastina vero die pervenerunt usque ad Antiochiam
on-the-next indeed day they-came all-the-way to Antioch
media die in IV. feria, quae est XII. Kal.
at-mid day on the-fourth weekday which is the-twelfth-day-before the-Kalends
Novembris, et obsedimus mirabiliter III portas civitatis,
of-November and we-besieged wondrously three gates of-the-city
quoniam in alia parte deerat nobis locus obsidendi,
since on the-other side was-lacking to-us room of-besieging
quia alta et nimis angusta montana nos coartabat. Tantum
because a-high and very narrow mountain us hemmed-in so-much
autem timebant nos undique inimici nostri Turci, qui erant
moreover feared us on-all-sides enemies our the-Turks who were
intus in urbe, ut nemo eorum auderet offendere aliquem
inside in the-city that no-one of-them dared to-attack anyone
ex nostris fere per spatium dierum XV. Mox hospitantes
of our-men almost for the-space of-days fifteen soon lodging
nos circa Antiochiam reperimus illic omnem abundantiam,
we around Antioch we-found there every abundance
videlicet vineas undique plenas, foveas plenas frumento,
namely vineyards on-all-sides full pits full of-grain
arbores refertas pomis, et alia multa bona corporibus utilia.
trees crammed with-fruits and other many goods for-bodies useful
Hermenii et Surani, qui erant intus in urbe, exeuntes et
the-Armenians and Syrians who were inside in the-city going-out and
ostendentes sese fugere, cotidie erant nobiscum, sed eorum
showing themselves to-flee daily were with-us but their
uxores in civitate. Illi vero ingeniose investigabant nostrum
wives in the-city they but cunningly searched-out our
esse nostramque qualitatem, referebantque omnia his
being and-our quality and-reported all-things to-these
excommunicatis, qui in urbe inclusi. Postquam vero Turci
excommunicates who in the-city shut-in after indeed the-Turks

fuerunt edocti de nostra essentia, coeperunt paulatim de urbe
were taught about our being they-began little-by-little from the-city
exire nostrosque peregrinos undique coangustare, non solum
to-go-out and-our pilgrims on-all-sides to-hem-in not only
ex una parte, sed undique erant latentes obviam nobis ad
from one side but on-all-sides they-were lurking to-meet us toward
mare et ad montanam. Erat autem non longe castrum,
the-sea and toward the-mountain there-was moreover not far a-castle
cui nomen Aregh, ubi erant congregati multi Turci fortissimi,
to-which the-name Harenc where were gathered many Turks most-strong
qui frequenter conturbabant nostros. Audientes itaque nostri
who often troubled our-men hearing and-so our
seniores talia, nimis doluerunt, miseruntque ex militibus
lords such-things very-much grieved and-sent some-of knights
suis, qui diligenter explorarent locum, ubi erant Turci; reperto
their who diligently should-explore the-place where were the-Turks found
igitur loco, ubi latebant, nostri milites, qui quaerebant illos,
therefore the-place where they-lurked our knights who sought them
obviant eis. At nostris paulatim retrogredientibus, ubi sciebant
meet them but our-men little-by-little drawing-back where they-knew
Boamundum esse cum suo exercitu, statim fuerunt illic
Bohemond to-be with his army at-once were there
mortui II ex nostris. Hoc audiens Boamundus, surrexit cum
dead two of our-men this hearing Bohemond rose with
suis ut fortissimus Christi athleta, et barbari irruerunt
his-men as the-most-strong of-Christ champion and the-barbarians rushed
contra illos, eo quod nostri erant pauci; tamen simul
against them for-the-reason that our-men were few yet together
iuncti inierunt bellum. Mortui sunt vero multi ex nostris
joined they-entered battle died have indeed many of our

inimicis et capti alii ducti sunt ante portam urbis, ibique
enemies and captured others led were before the-gate of-the-city and-there
decollabantur, ut magis tristes fierent qui erant in urbe.
were-beheaded that more sad might-become those-who were in the-city
Exibant quidem alii de civitate et ascendebant in quandam
went-out indeed others from the-city and climbed onto a-certain
portam et sagittabant nos ita, ut sagittae eorum caderent
gate and shot-arrows-at us so that the-arrows their fell
in domini Boamundi plateam, et una mulier occubuit
into of-lord Bohemond the-square and one woman fell-dead
ictu sagittae.
by-the-blow of-an-arrow

XIII · THE CASTLE OF MAREGART AND THE FORAGING BATTLE

The princes build a castle on Maregart and guard it in turn as food grows dear before Christmas. Bohemond and the count of Flanders lead twenty thousand to forage in Saracen land, where Turks and Arabs from Jerusalem, Damascus, and Aleppo attack them, but the count, armed with the cross, routs them, and the foragers return praising God.

Congregati sunt itaque omnes maiores nostri et ordinaverunt
gathered were and-so all greater-men our and arranged
concilium, dicentes: Faciamus castrum in vertice montis
a-council saying let-us-make a-castle on the-top of-the-mount
Maregart, qui mons est super hostem Boamundi, quo securi
Maregart which mount is above the-camp of-Bohemond that safe
atque tuti possimus permanere de Turcorum formidine.
and secure we-may-be-able to-remain from of-the-Turks fear
Facto itaque castro atque munito, omnes maiores illud
made and-so the-castle and fortified all the-greater-men it

invicem custodiebant. Iamiam coeperant frumentum et
in-turn guarded now-and-now had-begun grain and
omnia nutrimenta corporum nimis esse cara ante Natale
all nourishments of-bodies very to-be dear before the-Birthday
Domini. Foras penitus non audebamus exire nihilque penitus
of-the-Lord outside at-all not we-dared to-go-out and-nothing at-all
in terra Christianorum invenire poteramus ad edendum. In
in the-land of-the-Christians to-find we-could for eating into
Saracenorum namque terra nemo intrare audebat nisi cum
of-the-Saracens for the-land no-one to-enter dared except with
magna gente. Ad ultimum statuerunt nostri seniores concilium
a-great people at the-last resolved our lords a-council
ordinando qualiter regerent tantas gentes. Invenerunt in
arranging how they-should-rule so-great peoples they-found in
consilio, ut una pars nostri iret diligenter attrahere
council that one part of-ours should-go diligently to-bring-in
stipendium et ubique custodire exercitum; alia quoque pars
supplies and everywhere to-guard the-army the-other also part
fiducialiter remaneret custodire hostem. Boamundus denique
confidently should-remain to-guard the-camp Bohemond finally
dixit: Seniores et prudentissimi milites, si vultis et honestum
said lords and most-prudent knights if you-wish and honorable
et bonum vobis videtur, ego ero cum Flandrensi comite
and good to-you it-seems I shall-be with the-Flemish count
iturus cum eo. Celebratis itaque gloriosissime sollemnitatibus
about-to-go with him celebrated and-so most-gloriously the-solemnities
Nativitatis, in die lunae, II. scilicet feria, egressi sunt
of-the-Nativity on the-day of-the-moon the-second namely weekday went-out have
illi et alii plus quam XX milia militum et peditum,
they and others more than twenty thousand of-knights and of-foot-soldiers
ac sani et incolumes intraverunt terram Saracenorum.
and sound and unharmed entered the-land of-the-Saracens

Congregati quippe erant multi Turci et Arabes et Saraceni
gathered indeed were many Turks and Arabs and Saracens
ab Jerusalem et Damasco et Aleph et ab aliis regionibus,
from Jerusalem and Damascus and Aleppo and from other regions
qui veniebant fortitudinem Antiochiae dare. Audientes itaque
who were-coming strength to-Antioch to-give hearing and-so
isti Christianorum gentem conductam esse in illorum terram,
these of-the-Christians the-people led to-be into their land
ilico praeparaverunt se ad bellum contra Christianos,
at-once prepared themselves for battle against the-Christians
atque summo diluculo venerunt in locum, ubi gens nostra
and at-the-highest dawn came into the-place where people our
erat in unum. Diviseruntque se barbari et fecerunt
was in one and-divided themselves the-barbarians and made
duas acies, unam ante et aliam retro, cupientes ex omni
two battle-lines one in-front and another behind desiring from every
parte circumcingere nos. Egregius itaque comes Flandrensis,
side to-surround us the-excellent and-so count of-Flanders
undique regimine fidei signoque crucis, quam fideliter
on-all-sides with-the-rule of-faith and-with-the-sign of-the-cross which faithfully
cotidie baiulabat, armatus, occurrit illis una cum Boamundo,
daily he-carried armed ran-to-meet them together with Bohemond
irrueruntque nostri unanimiter super illos, qui statim
and-rushed our-men with-one-mind upon them who at-once
arripuerunt fugam et festinanter verterunt retro scapulas; ac
took-up flight and hastily turned back shoulders and
mortui sunt ex illis plurimi, nostrique ceperunt equos eorum
died have of them very-many and-our-men took horses their
et alia spolia; alii vero, qui vivi remanserant, velociter fugerunt
and other spoils others but who alive had-remained swiftly fled
et in iram perditionis abierunt. Nos autem revertentes cum
and into the-wrath of-perdition went-away we moreover returning with

magno tripudio, laudavimus et magnificavimus trinum et
great rejoicing praised and magnified the-threefold and
unum Deum, qui vivit et regnat nunc et in aevum. Amen.
one God who lives and reigns now and into eternity amen

XIV · DEFEAT IN THE CAMP AND FAMINE

With Bohemond and the count away, the Turks sally and kill many, and the bishop of Le Puy loses his standard-bearer. Bohemond returns with little, rebuking the men who straggle off alone. Armenians and Syrians buy grain in the mountains and sell it at ruinous prices, and many of the pilgrims die of hunger.

Turci denique inimici Dei et sanctae Christianitatis,
the-Turks finally enemies of-God and of-holy Christendom
qui erant intus in custodia civitatis Antiochiae, audientes
who were inside in the-guard of-the-city of-Antioch hearing
dominum Boamundum et Flandrensem comitem in obsessione
lord Bohemond and the-Flemish count at the-siege
non esse, exierunt de civitate et audacter veniebant proeliari
not to-be went-out from the-city and boldly came to-do-battle
nobiscum, insidiantes undique, in qua parte obsidio esset
with-us lying-in-wait on-all-sides on which side the-siege might-be
languidior, scientes illos prudentissimos milites foris esse,
more-sluggish knowing those most-prudent knights outside to-be
inveneruntque, quod in una Martis die possent obsistere
and-they-found that on one of-Mars day they-could to-withstand
nobis et laedere. Venerunt vero iniquissimi barbari caute et
us and harm-us came indeed the-most-wicked barbarians warily and
irruerunt vehementer super nos, et incautos occiderunt multos
rushed vehemently upon us and unwary they-killed many
ex nostris militibus et peditibus. Episcopus quoque Podiensis
of our knights and foot-soldiers the-bishop also of-Le-Puy

in illa amara die perdidit suum senescalcum, conducentem
on that bitter day lost his seneschal leading
et regentem suum vexillum; et, nisi esset flumen,
and guiding his banner and unless there-had-been the-river
quod erat inter nos et illos, saepius invasissent nos
which was between us and them more-often they-would-have-attacked us
atque maximam laesionem fecissent in nostram gentem.
and the-greatest harm would-have-done to our people
Egrediebatur tunc vir prudens Boamundus cum suo exercitu
was-going-out then the-man prudent Bohemond with his army
de terra Saracenorum venitque in Tancredi montanam,
from the-land of-the-Saracens and-came into of-Tancred the-mountain
cogitans an forte ibi valeret invenire aliquid, quod
wondering whether perhaps there he-might-be-able to-find anything which
potuisset deferri, nam totam terram in expendio miserant:
could be-carried-off for the-whole land into expenditure they-had-put
alii quippe invenerant, alii vero vacui redierant. Tunc vir
some indeed had-found others but empty had-returned then the-man
sapiens Boamundus increpavit eos dicens: O infelix et
wise Bohemond rebuked them saying O unhappy and
miserrima gens! O vilissima omnium Christianorum! Cur tam
most-wretched people O most-vile of-all Christians why so
celeriter vultis abire? Sinite modo, sinite, usquequo erimus
swiftly do-you-wish to-go-away stop now stop until we-shall-be
congregati in unum; et nolite errare sicut oves non habentes
gathered into one and do-not stray like sheep not having
pastorem. Si autem inimici nostri invenerint vos errantes,
a-shepherd if moreover enemies our shall-have-found you straying
occident vos, quia die noctuque vigilant, ut vos sine
they-shall-kill you because by-day and-by-night they-watch that you without
ductore segregatos sive solos inveniant; vosque cotidie occidere
a-leader separated or alone they-may-find and-you daily to-kill

et in captivitatem ducere laborant. Cumque finis esset
and into captivity to-lead they-labor and-when an-end there-was
dictis, rediit ad suam hostem cum suis plus vacuis, quam
to-the-words he-returned to his camp with his-men more empty than
onustis. Videntes autem Hermenii et Surani, quod nostri
laden seeing moreover the-Armenians and Syrians that our-men
penitus vacui rediissent, consiliati in unum abibant per
wholly empty had-returned having-taken-counsel into one went-away through
montaneas et praescita loca, subtiliter inquirentes et ementes
the-mountains and foreknown places subtly inquiring and buying
frumentum et corporea alimenta, quae ad hostem deferebant,
grain and bodily nourishments which to the-camp they-carried
in qua erat fames immensa, et vendebant onus unius asini
in which was a-famine immense and they-sold the-load of-one ass
VIII purpuratis, qui appretiabantur CXX solidis
for-eight purple-pieces which were-valued at-a-hundred-and-twenty shillings
denariorum. Ibi quidem sunt mortui multi ex nostris, non
of-pennies there indeed have died many of our-men not
habentes pretium unde tam carum emere potuissent.
having the-price whence so dear to-buy they-could-have

XV · THE FLIGHT OF WILLIAM THE CARPENTER

William the Carpenter and Peter the Hermit slip away; Tancred brings them back in disgrace. Bohemond rebukes William as the shame of France, and at the Franks' plea spares him on his oath never to leave the journey, but William soon flees again. The army is so poor that not a thousand of its knights still have good horses.

Willelmus igitur Carpentarius et Petrus heremita pro
William therefore the-Carpenter and Peter the-hermit for
immensa infelicitate ac miseria ipsa latenter recesserunt.
the-immense unhappiness and misery itself secretly withdrew
Quos Tancredus persequens apprehendit secumque reduxit
whom Tancred pursuing seized and-with-himself brought-back
cum dedecore, qui dextram et fidem illi dederunt, quia
with disgrace who the-right-hand and faith to-him gave that
libenter ad hostem redirent et satisfactionem senioribus
willingly to the-camp they-would-return and satisfaction to-the-lords
facerent. Tota denique nocte Willelmus uti mala res in
would-make the-whole finally night William like a-bad thing in
tenda Boamundi iacuit. Crastina vero die, summo diluculo,
the-tent of-Bohemond lay on-the-next indeed day at-the-very-first dawn
veniens erubescendo ante Boamundi praesentiam stetit, quem
coming blushing before of-Bohemond the-presence he-stood whom
alloquens Boamundus dixit: O infelix et infamia totius
addressing Bohemond said O unhappy-one and infamy of-all
Franciae, dedecus et scelus Galliarum! O nequissime omnium
France disgrace and crime of-the-Gauls O most-wicked of-all
quos terra suffert! cur tam turpiter fugisti? Forsitan ob hoc,
whom the-earth bears why so basely did-you-flee perhaps for this
quod voluisti tradere hos milites et hostem Christi, sicut
that you-wished to-betray these knights and the-army of-Christ as

tradidisti alios in Hispania? Qui omnino tacuit, et nullus
you-betrayed others in Spain who wholly was-silent and no
sermo ex eius ore processit. Adunaverunt sese omnes fere
speech from his mouth proceeded gathered themselves all almost
Francigenae, rogaveruntque humiliter dominum Boamundum, ne
the-French-born and-asked humbly lord Bohemond lest
deterius ei fieri permitteret. Annuit ille sereno vultu et
worse to-him to-be-done he-should-allow nodded he with-serene face and
ait: Hoc pro vestri amore libenter consentiam, si mihi toto
said this for of-you love willingly I-shall-consent if to-me with-whole
corde et mente iuraverit, quod nunquam recedet ab
heart and mind he-shall-have-sworn that never he-shall-withdraw from
Hierosolymitano itinere, sive bono sive malo; et Tancredus
the-Jerusalem journey whether good or bad and Tancred
neque per se neque per suos aliquid contrarii ei
neither through himself nor through his-men anything contrary to-him
consentiet fieri. Qui auditis his verbis voluntarie concessit;
shall-consent to-be-done who heard these words willingly conceded
ipse vero protinus dimisit eum. Postmodum vero Carpentarius,
he but at-once let-go him afterward indeed the-Carpenter
maxima captus turpitudine, non diu morans furtim recessit.
by-the-greatest seized shame not long lingering stealthily withdrew
Hanc paupertatem et miseriam pro nostris delictis concessit
this poverty and misery for our offenses granted
nos habere Deus. In tota namque hoste non valebat
us to-have God in the-whole for army not was-able
aliquis invenire mille milites, qui equos haberent optimos.
anyone to-find a-thousand knights who horses might-have most-excellent

XVI · THE DESERTION OF TATIKIOS

Hearing that a Turkish army is coming, the emperor's man Tatikios pretends to go for help, promising ships with grain and horses, and leaves his tents behind, a perjurer forever. The Turks press the camp on every side, hunger torments it, and the poor flee to Cyprus, Romania, and the mountains.

Interea inimicus Tetigus audiens, quod exercitus Turcorum
meanwhile the-enemy Tatikios hearing that the-army of-the-Turks
venissent super nos, ait se timuisse, arbitransque nos
had-come upon us said himself to-have-feared and-thinking us
omnes perisse atque in manibus inimicorum incidisse,
all to-have-perished and into the-hands of-the-enemies to-have-fallen
fingens omnia falsa, quae assidue seminare poterat, dixit:
feigning all false-things which constantly to-sow he-could said
Seniores et viri prudentissimi, videte, quia nos hic sumus
lords and men most-prudent see that we here are
in maxima necessitate et ex nulla parte nobis adiutorium
in the-greatest need and from no side to-us help
succedit. Ecce modo sinite me in Romaniae patriam reverti,
comes behold now allow me into of-Romania the-fatherland to-return
et ego absque ulla dubitatione faciam huc multas naves
and I without any doubt shall-cause hither many ships
venire per mare, onustas frumento, vino, hordeo, carne, farina
to-come by sea laden with-grain wine barley meat flour
et caseis, omnibusque bonis, quae sunt nobis necessaria.
and cheeses and-all goods which are for-us necessary
Faciam et equos conduci ad vendendum, et mercatum
I-shall-cause also horses to-be-brought for selling and a-market
per terram in fidelitate imperatoris huc advenire faciam.
by land in the-fealty of-the-emperor hither to-arrive I-shall-cause

Ecce haec omnia vobis fideliter iurabo et attendam.
behold these-things all to-you faithfully I-shall-swear and shall-attend-to
Adhuc quoque et domestici mei et papilio meus sunt in
still also both household my and tent my are in
campo, unde et firmiter credite, quia quantocius redibo.
the-field whence also firmly believe that with-all-speed I-shall-return
Sic itaque fecit finem dictis. Ivit ille inimicus et omnia
thus and-so he-made an-end to-the-words went that enemy and all
sua dimisit in campo, et in periurio manet et manebit.
his-things left in the-field and in perjury remains and shall-remain
Itaque tali modo inerat nobis maxima necessitas, quia
and-so in-such way there-was-in us the-greatest need because
Turci undique constringebant nos, ita ut nullus nostrorum
the-Turks on-all-sides hemmed-in us so that none of-ours
auderet iam exire extra tentoria, nam illi constringebant nos
dared now to-go-out outside the-tents for they hemmed-in us
ex una parte et fames cruciabat ex alia, succursus vero
from one side and hunger tormented-us from the-other relief but
et adiutorium nobis deerat. Gens minuta et pauperrima
and help to-us was-lacking the-people small and most-poor
fugiebat Cyprum, Romaniam et in montaneas. Ad mare
fled to-Cyprus to-Romania and into the-mountains to the-sea
utique non audebamus ire propter timorem pessimorum
certainly not we-dared to-go for fear of-the-most-evil
Turcorum, nusquam erat nobis via patefacta.
Turks nowhere was to-us a-road opened

Bohemond divides the army, leaving the foot to guard the camp, and leads the knights out at evening between the river and the lake. The princes give him command, and he orders six battle lines. When the Turks' main force drives the Franks back, he sends his constable Robert son of Gerard forward like a hungry lion, and the Franks pursue the fleeing Turks to the Iron Bridge. A hundred heads are carried to the city gate, where the emir's envoys are camped.

Itaque audiens dominus Boamundus innumerabilem gentem
and-so hearing lord Bohemond a-countless people
Turcorum venientem super nos, caute venit ad alios dicens:
of-Turks coming upon us warily came to the-others saying
Seniores et prudentissimi milites, quid facturi erimus? Nos
lords and most-prudent knights what about-to-do shall-we-be we
namque tanti non sumus, ut in duabus partibus pugnare
for so-great not are that in two parts to-fight
valeamus. Sed scitis quid faciemus? Faciamus ex nobis
we-may-be-able but know-you what we-shall-do let-us-make of us
duas partes: Pars peditum remaneat iugiter custodire
two parts the-part of-the-foot-soldiers let-remain continually to-guard
papiliones et quibit nimis obsistere his, qui in civitate
the-tents and it-shall-be-able much to-withstand those who in the-city
sunt; alia vero pars militum nobiscum veniat obviam
are the-other but part of-the-knights with-us let-come to-meet
inimicis nostris, qui hic hospitati sunt prope nos in castello
enemies our who here lodged have near us in the-castle
Areg, ultra Pontem Farreum. Sero autem facto, exiit e
Harenc beyond the-Bridge Iron evening moreover made went-out from
tentoriis vir prudens Boamundus cum aliis prudentissimis
the-tents the-man prudent Bohemond with the-other most-prudent
militibus ivitque iacere inter flumen et lacum. Summo
knights and-went to-lie between the-river and the-lake at-the-highest

diluculo iussit protinus exploratores exire et videre,
dawn he-ordered at-once scouts to-go-out and to-see
quot sunt Turcorum turmae et ubi sint aut certe
how-many are of-the-Turks the-squadrons and where they-are or surely
quid agant. Exierunt illi et coeperunt subtiliter inquirere,
what they-are-doing went-out they and began subtly to-inquire
ubi essent acies Turcorum reconditae. Viderunt tandem
where were the-battle-lines of-the-Turks hidden they-saw at-length
Turcos innumerabiles segregatos venire ex parte fluminis
Turks countless separated coming from the-side of-the-river
divisos per duas acies; maxima vero virtus illorum veniebat
divided into two battle-lines the-greatest but power of-them was-coming
retro. Reversi sunt namque celeriter speculatores, dicentes:
behind returned have for swiftly the-watchers saying
Ecce, ecce, veniunt. Igitur estote omnes parati, quia iam
behold behold they-come therefore be all ready because now
prope nos sunt. Dixitque vir sapiens Boamundus aliis:
near us they-are and-said the-man wise Bohemond to-the-others
Seniores et invictissimi milites, ordinate adinvicem bellum.
lords and most-unconquered knights order among-yourselves the-battle
Responderuntque illi: Tu sapiens et prudens, tu magnus
and-answered they you wise and prudent you great
et magnificus, tu fortis et victor, tu bellorum arbiter et
and magnificent you strong and victor you of-wars the-arbiter and
certaminum iudex, hoc totam fac, hoc totum super te sit!
of-combats the-judge this all do this all upon you let-be
Omne bonum quod tibi videtur, nobis et tibi operare et
every good which to-you seems for-us and for-you work and
fac! Tunc Boamundus iussit, ut unusquisque principum per
do then Bohemond ordered that each of-the-princes by
se dirigeret aciem suam ordinatim. Feceruntque ita, et
himself should-direct battle-line his in-order and-they-did so and

ordinatae sunt VI acies. Quinque vero ex eis ierunt adunatim
ordered were six battle-lines five but of them went in-a-body
invadere illos. Boamundus itaque paulatim gradiebatur retro
to-attack them Bohemond and-so little-by-little stepped back
cum sua acie. Iunctis igitur prospere nostris, unus cominus
with his battle-line joined therefore successfully our-men one hand-to-hand
percutiebat alium. Clamor vero resonabat ad caelum. Omnes
struck another the-shout but resounded to heaven all
proeliabantur insimul. Imbres telorum obnubilabant aerem.
fought together showers of-missiles clouded the-air
Postquam venit maxima virtus illorum, quae erat retro, acriter
after came the-greatest power of-them which was behind fiercely
invasit nostros, ita ut nostri paululum iam cederent retro.
it-attacked our-men so that our-men a-little now yielded back
Quod ut vidit vir doctissimus Boamundus, ingemuit.
which when saw the-man most-learned Bohemond he-groaned
Tunc praecepit suo conostabili, scilicet Rotberto, filio Girardi,
then he-commanded his constable namely Robert son of-Gerard
dicens: Vade quam citius potes, ut vir fortis, et recordare
saying go as quickly-as you-can like a-man strong and remember
prudentium antiquorumque nostrorum fortium parentum et
the-prudent and-ancient our strong forefathers and
esto acer in adiutorium Dei Sanctique Sepulcri; et revera
be fierce in the-help of-God and-of-the-Holy Sepulcher and in-truth
scias, quia hoc bellum carnale non est, sed spirituale.
you-should-know that this battle carnal not is but spiritual
Esto igitur fortissimus athleta Christi. Vade in pace, Dominus
be therefore the-bravest champion of-Christ go in peace the-Lord
sit tecum ubique! Fuit itaque ille undique signo crucis
be with-you everywhere was and-so he on-all-sides with-the-sign of-the-cross
munitus; qualiter leo perpessus famem per III aut IV dies,
fortified like a-lion having-endured hunger for three or four days

qui exiens a suis cavernis, rugiens ac sitiens sanguinem
who going-out from his caves roaring and thirsting for-the-blood
pecudum, sicut improvide ruit ille inter agmina gregum,
of-cattle as heedlessly rushes he among the-columns of-the-flocks
dilanians oves fugientes huc et illuc, ita agebat iste
tearing the-sheep fleeing hither and thither so acted this-one
inter agmina Turcorum, tam vehementer instabat illis, ut
among the-columns of-the-Turks so vehemently he-pressed them that
linguae honorabilis vexilli volitarent super Turcorum capita.
the-tongues of-the-honorable banner flew over of-the-Turks the-heads
Videntes autem aliae acies, quod vexillum Boamundi tam
seeing moreover the-other battle-lines that the-banner of-Bohemond so
honeste esset ante alios delatum, ilico redierunt retrorsum,
honorably was before the-others borne at-once returned backward
nostrique unanimiter invaserunt Turcos, qui omnes stupefacti
and-our-men with-one-mind attacked the-Turks who all stupefied
arripuerunt fugam. Nostri itaque persecuti sunt illos et
took-up flight our-men and-so pursued have them and
detruncaverunt usque ad Pontem Farreum. Reversi sunt
cut-to-pieces-them all-the-way to the-Bridge Iron returned have
autem Turci festinanter in castrum suum, acceperuntque
moreover the-Turks hastily into castle their and-they-took
omnia, quae ibi reperire potuerunt, totumque castrum
all-things which there to-find they-could and-the-whole castle
spoliaverunt, miseruntque ignem et fugerunt. Hermenii et
they-despoiled and-they-put fire and fled the-Armenians and
Surani, scientes Turcos omnino perdidisse bellum, exierunt et
Syrians knowing the-Turks wholly to-have-lost the-battle went-out and
excubaverunt per arta loca et occiderunt et apprehenderunt
kept-watch along narrow places and killed and seized
multos ex eis. Superati sunt itaque, Deo annuente, in illa die
many of them overcome were and-so God nodding on that day

inimici nostri. Satis vero recuperati sunt nostri de equis et
enemies our enough indeed recovered were our-men in horses and
de aliis multis, quae erant illis valde necessaria. Et C
in other many-things which were to-them very necessary and a-hundred
capita mortuorum detulerunt ante portam civitatis, ubi legati
heads of-the-dead they-carried before the-gate of-the-city where the-envoys
ammirati Babyloniae castrametati fuerant, qui mittebantur
of-the-emir of-Babylon encamped had who were-being-sent
senioribus. Illi, qui remanserant in tentoriis, tota die
to-the-lords those who had-remained in the-tents the-whole day
proeliati sunt cum illis, qui erant in civitate ante III portas
fought have with those who were in the-city before three gates
civitatis. Factum est hoc bellum in die Martis ante caput
of-the-city done was this battle on the-day of-Mars before the-head
ieiunii, V°. idus Februarii, favente Domino nostro
of-the-fast on-the-fifth-day-before the-Ides of-February favoring Lord our
Iesu Christo, qui cum Patre et Spiritu Sancto vivit et
Jesus Christ who with the-Father and the-Spirit Holy lives and
regnat Deus per immortalia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
reigns God through immortal ages of-ages amen

The princes resolve to build a castle at the Mahomerie before the bridge gate. While Bohemond and Raymond fetch men from Saint Simeon, the Turks rout the builders and ambush the returning column, martyring over a thousand; but the army, rejoined by Bohemond, crushes the Turks on the narrow bridge, reddening the river with their blood. The Turks bury their dead; the Franks dig them up and build the castle from the tombstones.

Reversi sunt nostri, agente Deo, triumphantes et gaudentes de
returned have our-men acting God triumphing and rejoicing about
triumpho, quem in die illo habuerunt devictis inimicis, qui sunt
the-triumph which on day that they-had conquered the-enemies who were
per omnia superati, semper fugientes, huc et illuc vagantes
in all-things overcome always fleeing hither and thither wandering
et errantes, alii in Corrozanam, alii vero in Saracenorum
and straying some into Khorasan others but into of-the-Saracens
introierunt terram. Videntes autem nostri maiores, quod male
entered the-land seeing moreover our greater-men that badly
tractarent et constringerent nos inimici nostri, qui erant
treated and hemmed-in us enemies our who were
in civitate, die ac nocte invigilantes et insidiantes, qua
in the-city by-day and by-night keeping-watch and lying-in-wait on-which
parte nos laedere possent, congregati in unum dixerunt:
side us to-harm they-might-be-able gathered into one they-said
Priusquam perdamus gentem nostram, faciamus castrum ad
before we-lose people our let-us-make a-castle at
Machumariam, quae est ante portam urbis, ubi pons
the-Mahomerie which is before the-gate of-the-city where the-bridge
est; ibique forsitan poterimus nostros constringere inimicos.
is and-there perhaps we-shall-be-able our to-hem-in enemies
Consenserunt omnes et laudaverunt, quod bonum esset ad
agreed all and approved that good it-would-be for

faciendum. Comes de Sancto Egidio primus dixit: Estote mihi
doing the-count of Saint Gilles first said be to-me
in adiutorium ad faciendum castrum, et ego muniam ac
in help for making the-castle and I shall-fortify and
servabo. Respondit Boamundus: Si vos vultis et alii seniores
shall-keep-it answered Bohemond if you wish and the-other lords
laudant, ibo vobiscum ad Portum Sancti Simeonis, diligenter
approve I-shall-go with-you to the-Port of-Saint Simeon diligently
conducere illos qui illic sunt homines, ut peragant hoc
to-bring those who there are men that they-may-complete this
opus; alii, qui sunt remansuri, muniant se undique ad
work the-others who are about-to-remain let-fortify themselves on-all-sides for
defendendum, si forte inimici nostri et Dei exierint
defending if perhaps enemies our and of-God shall-have-gone-out
de civitate, et in illo loco sint omnes congregati in
from the-city and in that place should-be all gathered into
unum, licet ubi nos demonstraremus. Factumque est ita.
one be-it where we might-show-them and-done was so
Comes igitur et Boamundus perrexerunt ad Sancti Simeonis
the-count therefore and Bohemond went-on to of-Saint Simeon
portum. Nos vero, qui remansimus congregati in unum,
the-port we but who remained gathered into one
castrum incipiebamus; dum Turci praeparaverunt se
the-castle were-beginning when the-Turks prepared themselves
ilico et exierunt extra civitatem obviam nobis ad proelium.
at-once and went-out outside the-city to-meet us for battle
Sic itaque irruerunt super nos et miserunt nostros in fugam,
thus and-so they-rushed upon us and put our-men to flight
occideruntque plures ex nostris, unde tristes valde fuimus.
and-killed many of our-men whence sad greatly we-were

Crastina autem die videntes Turci, quod maiores nostri
on-the-next moreover day seeing the-Turks that greater-men our
deessent et quod praeterita die ivissent ad portum,
were-absent and that on-the-past day they-had-gone to the-port
praeparaverunt se et ierunt obviam illis venientibus e
prepared themselves and went to-meet them coming from
portu. Tunc videntes comitem et Boamundum venientes et
the-port then seeing the-count and Bohemond coming and
conducentes illam gentem, mox coeperunt stridere et garrire
leading that people soon they-began to-screech and to-chatter
ac clamare vehementissimo clamore, circumcingendo undique
and to-shout with-most-vehement shout surrounding on-all-sides
nostros iaculando, sagittando, vulnerando et crudeliter
our-men by-hurling by-shooting-arrows by-wounding and cruelly
detruncando. Nam tam acriter invaserunt nostros, ut illi
by-cutting-down for so fiercely they-attacked our-men that they
inirent fugam per maximam montaneam et ubi via eundi
entered flight over a-very-great mountain and where a-road of-going
patebat; qui potuit celeri se gressu expedire, evasit
lay-open who could with-swift himself step get-clear escaped
vivus, qui vero fugere nequivit, mortem suscepit. Fueruntque
alive who but to-flee could-not death received and-there-were
in illa die martyrizati ex nostris militibus seu peditibus
on that day martyred of our knights or foot-soldiers
plus quam mille, qui, ut credimus, in caelum laetantes
more than a-thousand who as we-believe into heaven rejoicing
ascendebant atque candidati ferentes stolam recepti martyrii,
ascended and white-robed bearing the-robe of-received martyrdom
glorificantes et magnificantes Dominum Deum nostrum
glorifying and magnifying the-Lord God our
trinum et unum, in quo feliciter triumphabant et dicebant
threefold and one in whom happily they-triumphed and they-said

concordabili voce: Quare non defendis sanguinem nostrum,
with-harmonious voice why not do-you-defend blood our
qui hodie pro tuo nomine effusus est?
which today for your name shed has-been
Itaque Boamundus viam, quam tenuerant, non tenuit, sed
and-so Bohemond the-road which they-had-held not held but
celerius cum paucis militibus ad nos venit, qui eramus in
more-swiftly with few knights to us came who were into
unum congregati. Tunc nos accensi occisione nostrorum,
one gathered then we kindled by-the-slaughter of-our-men
Christi nomine invocato, et S. Sepulcri confidentes
of-Christ the-name invoked and of-the-Holy Sepulcher trusting
itinere, iuncti simul pervenimus contra eos ad bellum,
in-the-journey joined together came against them to battle
eosque invasimus uno corde et animo. Stabant vero
and-them we-attacked with-one heart and spirit stood indeed
inimici Dei et nostri undique iam stupefacti et vehementer
the-enemies of-God and our on-all-sides now stupefied and vehemently
perterriti, putantes nostros se devincere et occidere,
terrified thinking our-men themselves to-conquer and to-kill
sicut fecerant gentem comitis et Boamundi. Sed Deus
as they-had-done the-people of-the-count and of-Bohemond but God
omnipotens hoc illis non permisit. Milites igitur veri Dei
almighty this to-them not allowed the-knights therefore true of-God
undique signo crucis armati irruerunt acriter super illos
on-all-sides with-the-sign of-the-cross armed rushed fiercely upon them
et fortiter invaserunt; illi autem celeriter fugerunt per
and strongly attacked they moreover swiftly fled through
medium angusti pontis ad illorum introitum. Illi, qui vivi
the-middle of-the-narrow bridge to their entrance those who alive
nequiverunt transire pontem prae nimia multitudine gentium
could-not to-cross the-bridge for the-excessive multitude of-peoples

et caballorum, ibi receperunt sempiternum interitum et
and of-horses there received everlasting destruction and
reddiderunt infelices animas Diabolo et Sathanae ministris.
gave-back unhappy souls to-the-Devil and to-Satan's ministers
Nos itaque illos superavimus, impellentes in flumen et
we and-so them overcame driving into the-river and
deicientes. Unda vero rapidi fluminis undique videbatur
casting-down the-wave but of-the-rapid river on-all-sides seemed
fluere rubea Turcorum sanguine. Et si forte aliquis eorum
to-flow red of-the-Turks with-blood and if perhaps anyone of-them
voluisset reptare super pontis columnas aut natando ad
had-wished to-creep over of-the-bridge the-columns or by-swimming to
terram moliretur exire, vulneratus est a nostris undique
land should-strive to-go-out wounded he-was by our-men on-all-sides
stantibus super ripam fluminis. Rumor quoque et clamor
standing upon the-bank of-the-river the-uproar also and the-shout
nostrorum et illorum resonabat ad caelum. Pluviae telorum
of-our-men and of-them resounded to heaven rains of-missiles
et sagittarum tegebant polum et claritatem diei; altae
and of-arrows covered the-sky and the-brightness of-the-day lofty
voces intus et extra. Mulieres christianae urbis veniebant ad
voices within and without the-women Christian of-the-city came to
muri fenestras, spectantes misera fata Turcorum et occulte
of-the-wall the-windows watching the-wretched fates of-the-Turks and secretly
plaudebant manibus, sicut mos erat illarum. Hermenii et
applauded with-hands as the-custom was of-them the-Armenians and
Surani iussu maiorum Turcorum inviti seu spontanei
Syrians by-the-command of-the-greater Turks unwilling or willing
sagittas iaciebant foras ad nos. Mortui sunt etiam in anima
arrows shot outside at us died have also in soul
et corpore XII ammiralii de Turcorum agmine in proelio
and body twelve emirs from of-the-Turks the-column in battle

illo, et alii prudentissimorum et fortiorum militum, qui
that and others of-the-most-prudent and stronger knights who
melius civitatem pugnando defendebant, numerus quorum fuit
better the-city by-fighting defended the-number of-whom was
M et D. Alii, qui remanserant vivi, iam amplius
a-thousand and five-hundred the-others who had-remained alive now further
non audebant clamitare vel garrire in die sive in nocte,
not dared to-shout or to-chatter by day or by night
sicut ante solebant. Omnes itaque nos vel illos solummodo
as before they-were-wont all and-so us or them only
superavit nox, noxque divisit utrosque in proeliando, iaculando,
overcame night and-night divided both in fighting hurling
spiculando, sagittando. Sic superati sunt inimici nostri virtute
spearing shooting-arrows thus overcome were enemies our by-the-power
Dei et S. Sepulcri, et ulterius non valuerunt talem
of-God and of-the-Holy Sepulcher and further not were-able such
virtutem habere neque in voce neque in opere sicuti prius.
power to-have neither in voice nor in deed as before
Nos itaque valde fuimus refecti in illa die de illorum equis
we and-so greatly were refreshed on that day in their horses
et de aliis multis rebus, quae satis erant nobis necessariae.
and in other many things which quite were to-us necessary
Crastina vero die, summo diluculo, exierunt alii Turci
on-the-next indeed day at-the-highest dawn went-out other Turks
de civitate et collegerunt omnia cadavera fetentia Turcorum
from the-city and gathered all the-corpses stinking of-the-Turks
mortuorum, quae reperire potuerunt super ripam fluminis,
dead which to-find they-could on the-bank of-the-river
exceptis illis, quae in alveo latebant eiusdem fluminis, et
except those which in the-bed lay-hidden of-the-same river and
sepelierunt ad Machumariam, quae est ultra pontem ante
buried-them at the-Mahomerie which is beyond the-bridge before

portam urbis, simulque illis consepelierunt pallia, bisanteos
the-gate of-the-city and-together with-them they-buried cloaks bezants
aureos, arcus, sagittas et alia plurima instrumenta, quae
gold bows arrows and other very-many implements which
nominare nequimus. Audientes itaque nostri quod humassent
to-name we-cannot hearing and-so our-men that they-had-buried
mortuos suos Turci, omnes sese praeparaverunt et venerunt
dead their the-Turks all themselves prepared and came
festinantes ad diabolicum atrium et iusserunt desepeliri et
hastening to the-devilish courtyard and ordered to-be-unburied and
frangi tumbas eorum et trahi eos extra sepulcra.
to-be-broken the-tombs their and to-be-dragged them outside the-sepulchers
Et eiecerunt omnia cadavera eorum in quandam foveam et
and they-threw all corpses their into a-certain pit and
deportaverunt caesa capita ad tentoria nostra, quatinus perfecte
carried-off the-cut-off heads to tents our so-that perfectly
sciretur eorum numerus, excepto quod oneraverant IIII equos
might-be-known their number except that they-had-loaded four horses
nunciis Ammiralii Babyloniae et miserant ad mare. Quod
for-the-envoys of-the-emir of-Babylon and had-sent-them to the-sea which
videntes Turci doluerunt nimis fueruntque tristes usque ad
seeing the-Turks grieved very-much and-were sad all-the-way to
necem; nam cotidie dolentes nihil aliud agebant nisi flere et
death for daily grieving nothing else they-did except to-weep and
ululare. Tertia vero die coepimus simul iuncti cum gaudio
to-howl on-the-third indeed day we-began together joined with joy
magno aedificare castrum supradictum, de lapidibus scilicet,
great to-build the-castle aforesaid of stones namely
quos abstraximus de tumulis Turcorum. Peracto itaque castro,
which we-dragged-out from the-tombs of-the-Turks completed and-so the-castle
mox coepimus ex omni parte coangustare inimicos nostros,
soon we-began from every side to-hem-in enemies our

quorum superbia ad nihilum iam erat redacta. Nos autem
whose pride to nothing now was reduced we moreover
secure ambulabamus huc et illuc ad portum et ad montaneas,
securely walked hither and thither to the-port and to the-mountains
laudantes et glorificantes Dominum Deum nostrum, cui
praising and glorifying the-Lord God our to-whom
est honor et gloria per omnia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
is honor and glory through all ages of-ages amen

XIX · TANCRED HOLDS THE MONASTERY CASTLE

One path is still open to the Turks, by a castle and a monastery beyond the river. Tancred offers to hold it for four hundred marks of silver and seals the road, seizing the food the Armenians and Syrians bring in. The author confesses he cannot tell all they did before the city fell.

Iam iam omnes semitae paene prohibitae et incisae undique
now now all paths almost forbidden and cut-off on-all-sides
erant Turcis, nisi ex illa parte fluminis, ubi erat castrum
were to-the-Turks except on that side of-the-river where was a-castle
et quoddam monasterium. Quod castrum si fuisset a
and a-certain monastery which castle if it-had-been by
nobis perfecte munitum, iam nullus eorum auderet extra
us perfectly fortified now none of-them would-dare outside
civitatis portam exire. Conciliaverunt se denique nostri
of-the-city the-gate to-go-out took-counsel themselves finally our-men
et una voce concorditer dixerunt: Eligamus unum ex
and with-one voice harmoniously said let-us-choose one of
nobis, qui robuste teneat illud castrum et nostris inimicis
us who sturdily may-hold that castle and from-our enemies
prohibeat montaneas et plana et introitum urbis et
may-forbid the-mountains and the-plains and the-entrance of-the-city and

exitum. Plures vero ex illis prohibentes se illud hospitari,
the-exit many but of them refusing themselves it to-occupy
nisi forte fuissent multi in unum. Tancredus igitur primus
unless perhaps they-were many into one Tancred therefore first
protulit se ante alios, dicens: Si scirem, quid proficui
put-forward himself before the-others saying if I-knew what of-profit
mihi attigerit, ego sedule cum meis solummodo hominibus
to-me would-fall I zealously with my only men
corroborarem castrum, et viam, per quam inimici nostri
would-strengthen the-castle and the-road by which enemies our
solent frequentius saevire, viriliter devetabo illis. Qui continuo
are-wont more-often to-rage manfully I-shall-bar to-them who at-once
spoponderunt ei CCCC marcas argenti. Non adquievit
pledged to-him four-hundred marks of-silver not acquiesced
Tancredus; quamquam solus erat, tamen perrexit cum suis
Tancred although alone he-was yet he-went-on with his
honestissimis militibus ac servientibus, et extemplo abstulit
most-honorable knights and servants and forthwith took-away
undique viam et semitam Turcis, ita ut nulli auderent
on-all-sides the-road and the-path from-the-Turks so that none dared
ex eis iam timore eius perterriti extra urbis portam exire
of them now by-fear of-him terrified outside of-the-city the-gate to-go-out
neque propter herbam, neque propter ligna, neque propter ulla
neither for grass nor for wood nor for any
necessaria. Remansit vero ibi Tancredus cum suis coepitque
necessaries remained indeed there Tancred with his-men and-began
vehementer ubique coangustare civitatem. Ipsa quoque die
vehemently everywhere to-hem-in the-city that-very also day
veniebat maxima pars Hermeniorum et Suranorum secure
came the-greatest part of-the-Armenians and of-the-Syrians securely
de montaneis, qui ferebant alimenta Turcis in adiutorium
from the-mountains who brought nourishments to-the-Turks in help

civitatis. Quibus advenit obviam Tancredus et apprehendit
of-the-city whom came to-meet Tancred and seized
eos et omnia, quae deferebant, videlicet frumentum, vinum,
them and all-things which they-carried namely grain wine
hordeum, oleum et alia huiusmodi. Sic itaque robuste
barley oil and other-things of-this-kind thus and-so sturdily
et prospere deducebat se Tancredus, iamque habebat
and successfully conducted himself Tancred and-now had
prohibitas et incisas omnes semitas Turcis, donec Antiochia
forbidden and cut-off all paths to-the-Turks until Antioch
esset capta. Omnia, quae egimus antequam urbs esset
was taken all-things which we-did before the-city was
capta, nequeo enarrare, quia nemo est in his partibus sive
taken I-cannot to-recount because no-one is in these parts whether
clericus sive laicus, qui omnino possit vel scribere vel
cleric or layman who wholly could either to-write or
narrare sicut res gesta est: Tamen aliquantulum dicam.
tell as the-thing done was yet a-little I-shall-say

XX · FIRUZ BETRAYS ANTIOCH

Firuz, an emir who guards three towers, promises them to Bohemond, who asks the princes for the city if he wins it; they refuse, then agree, saving the emperor's claim, when an enemy army is reported. Bohemond sends a feigned foray, and by night sixty men climb a ladder into Firuz's towers. A gate is broken, the banner is raised, and the city falls on June 3; Yaghi-Siyan flees and is beheaded by Syrians and Armenians.

Erat quidam ammiratus de genere Turcorum, cui nomen
there-was a-certain emir of the-race of-the-Turks to-whom the-name
Pirus, qui maximam amicitiam receperat cum Boamundo.
Firuz who the-greatest friendship had-received with Bohemond
Hunc saepe Boamundus pulsabat nuntiis adinvicem missis,
him often Bohemond pressed with-messengers to-one-another sent
quo eum infra civitatem amicissime reciperet, eique
that him within the-city most-amicably he-should-receive and-to-him
christianitatem liberius promittebat et eum se divitem
Christianity more-freely he-promised and him himself rich
facturum cum multo honore mandabat. Consensit ille dictis
to-make with much honor he-sent-word agreed he to-the-words
et promissionibus dicens: Tres turres custodio, eique libenter
and promises saying three towers I-guard and-to-him willingly
ipsas promitto et, quacunque hora voluerit, in eas eum
them I-promise and at-whatever hour he-shall-have-wished into them him
recolligam. Erat itaque Boamundus iam securus de introitu
I-shall-take-in was and-so Bohemond now secure about the-entrance
civitatis, et gavisus serenaque mente, placido vultu venit
of-the-city and having-rejoiced and-with-serene mind with-calm face came
ad omnes seniores, eisque iocunda verba intulit dicens:
to all the-lords and-to-them pleasant words brought saying
Viri, prudentissimi milites, videte, quomodo nos omnes in
men most-prudent knights see how we all in

nimia paupertate et miseria sumus, maiores sive minores, et
excessive poverty and misery are greater or lesser and
ignoramus penitus, qua parte melius succedat nobis. Igitur
we-know-not at-all on-which side better it-may-succeed for-us therefore
si vobis bonum et honestum videtur, eligat se ante
if to-you good and honorable it-seems let-put-forward himself before
alios unus ex nobis et si aliquomodo vel ingenio civitatem
the-others one of us and if in-any-way or by-skill the-city
acquirere vel ingeniare potuerit, per se vel per alios
to-acquire or to-contrive he-shall-have-been-able by himself or by others
concordi voce ei urbem dono concedamus. Qui omnino
with-harmonious voice to-him the-city as-a-gift let-us-grant who wholly
prohibuerunt et denegaverunt dicentes: Nemini dimittetur
forbade and refused saying to-no-one shall-be-given-over
haec civitas, sed omnes aequaliter habebimus illam; sicut
this city but all equally we-shall-have it as
aequalem habuimus laborem, sic inde aequalem habeamus
equal we-had labor so thence equal let-us-have
honorem. Itaque Boamundus, auditis his verbis, paulominus
honor and-so Bohemond heard these words a-little
subridens protinus recessit. Non multo post audivimus nuntios
smiling at-once withdrew not much after we-heard messengers
de exercitu hostium nostrorum, Turcorum, Publicanorum,
about the-army of-the-enemies our of-the-Turks of-the-Paulicians
Angulanorum, Azimitarum et aliarum plurimarum nationum
of-the-Agulani of-the-Azymites and of-other very-many nations
gentilium, quas numerare neque nominare nescio.
gentile which to-number nor to-name I-know-not-how
Statimque adunaverunt se omnes maiores nostri simul,
and-at-once gathered themselves all greater-men our together
tenueruntque concilium, dicentes: Quoniam si Boamundus
and-held a-council saying since if Bohemond

potuerit adquirere civitatem aut per se aut per
shall-have-been-able to-acquire the-city either by himself or by
alios, nos una libenti corde ultro ei donamus,
others we together with-willing heart of-our-own-accord to-him give-it
eo tenore ut si imperator venerit nobis in adiutorium
on-this condition that if the-emperor shall-have-come to-us in help
et omnem conventionem nobis, sicut promisit et iuravit,
and every covenant to-us as he-promised and swore
attendere voluerit, nos ei eam iure reddemus; sin
to-keep shall-have-wished we to-him it by-right shall-return but-if-not
autem, Boamundus eam in suam habeat potestatem.
moreover Bohemond it into his let-have power
Mox itaque Boamundus coepit humiliter amicum suum
soon and-so Bohemond began humbly friend his
cotidiana deprecari petitione, promittendo humillima, maxima
with-daily to-entreat petition promising most-humble very-great
et dulcia in hunc modum: Ecce vere modo tempus
and sweet-things in this way behold truly now a-time
habemus idoneum, in quo possumus operari quicquid boni
we-have fit in which we-can work whatever of-good
volumus; ergo adiuvet me nunc amicus meus Pirus.
we-wish therefore let-help me now friend my Firuz
Qui satis gavisus de nuntio ait se illum adiuvare
who quite having-rejoiced at the-message said himself him to-help
omnino sicut agere deberet. Nocte itaque veniente proxima,
wholly as to-do he-ought night and-so coming next
misit caute filium suum pignus Boamundo, ut securior
he-sent warily son his as-a-pledge to-Bohemond that more-secure
fieret de introitu urbis. Misit quoque ei verba in
he-might-become about the-entrance of-the-city he-sent also to-him words in
hunc modum: Ut in crastinum omnem Francorum gentem
this way that on the-morrow the-whole of-the-Franks people

praeconiare atque summovere faciat, quod in Saracenorum
to-proclaim and to-move-off he-should-cause that into of-the-Saracens
terram depraedare vadat, dissimulans ac deinde celeriter
the-land to-plunder it-should-go pretending and then swiftly
revertatur per dextram montaneam. Ego vero, ait, ero
it-should-return by the-right mountain I but said shall-be
intentione erecta praestolans illa agmina, eaque recipiam
with-intent erect awaiting those columns and-them I-shall-receive
in turres, quas in mea habeo potestate ac custodia.
into the-towers which in my I-hold power and guard
Dein Boamundus iussit celeriter ad se vocari quendam
then Bohemond ordered swiftly to himself to-be-called a-certain
servientem suum, videlicet Malam Coronam, eique praecepit,
servant his namely Evil Crown and-to-him commanded
ut quasi praeco commoneret Francorum maximam gentem,
that as-if a-herald he-should-warn of-the-Franks the-greatest people
quatinus fideliter praepararet se in Saracenorum itura
so-that faithfully it-should-prepare itself into of-the-Saracens about-to-go
terram. Factumque est ita. Credidit itaque Boamundus hoc
the-land and-done was so entrusted and-so Bohemond this
consilium duci Godefrido et Flandrensi comiti, comiti
plan to-duke Godfrey and to-the-Flemish count to-the-count
quoque de Sancto Egidio atque Podiensi episcopo, dicens:
also of Saint Gilles and of-Le-Puy to-the-bishop saying
Quia, Dei favente gratia, hac nocte tradetur nobis
that of-God favoring grace this night shall-be-handed-over to-us
Antiochia. Ordinata sunt denique haec omnia: milites
Antioch ordered were finally these-things all the-knights
tenuerunt plana et pedites montaneam. Tota nocte
held the-plain and the-foot-soldiers the-mountain the-whole night
equitaverunt et ambulaverunt usque prope auroram, ac
they-rode and walked all-the-way near dawn and

deinceps coeperunt appropinquare ad turres, quas ille vigil
thereafter began to-draw-near to the-towers which that watchman
custodiebat. Confestim descendit Boamundus et praecepit
guarded at-once dismounted Bohemond and commanded
omnibus, dicens: Ite securo animo et felici concordia, et
all saying go with-secure spirit and with-happy concord and
ascendite per scalam in Antiochiam, quam statim habebimus,
climb by the-ladder into Antioch which at-once we-shall-have
si Deo placet, in nostra custodia. Venerunt illi usque ad
if to-God it-pleases in our keeping came they all-the-way to
scalam, quae iam erat erecta et fortiter ligata ad civitatis
the-ladder which now was raised and strongly bound to of-the-city
merulas, et ascenderunt per illam homines fere LX ex
the-battlements and climbed by it men almost sixty of
nostris ac divisi sunt per turres quas ille observabat.
ours and divided were among the-towers which he watched
Videns hoc Pirus, quod tam pauci ascendissent ex nostris,
seeing this Firuz that so few had-climbed of ours
coepit pavere, timens sibi et nostris, ne in manus
began to-be-afraid fearing for-himself and for-ours lest into the-hands
Turcorum inciderent, dixitque: Micro Francos echome (hoc
of-the-Turks they-should-fall and-said few Franks we-have this
est: Paucos Francos habemus). Ubi est acerrimus Boamundus?
is few Franks we-have where is the-most-fierce Bohemond
ubi est ille miles invictus? Interim descendit quidam serviens
where is that knight unconquered meanwhile came-down a-certain servant
Longobardus deorsum et cucurrit quantocius ad Boamundum,
Lombard down and ran with-all-speed to Bohemond
dicens: Quid hic stas, vir prudens? Quamobrem huc
saying why here do-you-stand man prudent wherefore hither

venisti? Ecce nos iam tres turres habemus! Motus est
have-you-come behold we now three towers have moved was
ille cum aliis et omnes gaudentes pervenerunt ad scalam.
he with the-others and all rejoicing came to the-ladder
Videntes itaque illi, qui iam erant in turribus, coeperunt
seeing and-so those who now were in the-towers began
iocunda voce clamare: Deus le volt! Nos vero idem
with-joyful voice to-shout God it wills we but the-same
clamabamus. Nunc coeperunt ilico mirabiliter ascendere;
shouted now they-began at-once wondrously to-climb
ascenderunt tamen et cucurrerunt festinanter in alias turres.
they-climbed yet and ran hastily into the-other towers
Quos illic inveniebant, mortalem eis continuo dabant
whom there they-found a-mortal on-them at-once they-passed
sententiam; fratrem quoque Piri occiderunt. Interea forte
sentence the-brother also of-Firuz they-killed meanwhile by-chance
rupta est scala, per quam noster erat ascensus, unde inter
broken was the-ladder by which our was ascent whence among
nos orta est immensa angustia et tristitia. Quamquam autem
us arisen has immense distress and sadness although moreover
scala fuisset fracta, tamen quaedam porta erat iuxta nos
the-ladder had-been broken yet a-certain gate was near us
clausa in sinistra parte, quae quibusdam manebat incognita;
closed on the-left side which to-some remained unknown
nox namque erat, sed tamen palpando et inquirendo
night for it-was but yet by-groping and by-searching
invenimus eam, omnesque cucurrimus ad illam et, ipsa fracta,
we-found it and-all ran to it and it broken
intravimus per eam. Tunc innumerabilis fragor mirabiliter
we-entered through it then a-countless crash wondrously
resonabat per totam urbem. Non adquievit Boamundus
resounded through the-whole city not acquiesced Bohemond

his, sed ilico imperavit honorabile vexillum deferri
in-these but at-once he-commanded the-honorable banner to-be-carried
sursum coram castello in quodam monte; omnes vero pariter
up in-view-of the-citadel on a-certain hill all but together
stridebant in civitate. Summo autem diluculo audientes illi,
screeched in the-city at-the-highest moreover dawn hearing those
qui foris erant in tentoriis, vehementissimum rumorem strepere
who outside were in the-tents a-most-vehement uproar to-roar
per civitatem, exierunt festinantes et viderunt vexillum
through the-city went-out hastening and saw the-banner
Boamundi sursum in monte, celerique cursu properantes
of-Bohemond up on the-hill and-with-swift course hurrying
venerunt omnes et per portas intraverunt in urbem et
came all and through the-gates entered into the-city and
interfecerunt Turcos et Saracenos, quos ibi reppererunt,
killed the-Turks and Saracens whom there they-found
extra illos, qui fugerant sursum in castrum. Alii vero
except those who had-fled up into the-citadel others but
Turcorum per portas exierunt et fugientes vivi evaserunt.
of-the-Turks through the-gates went-out and fleeing alive escaped
Cassianus vero, dominus illorum, timens valde gentem
Yaghi-Siyan but lord their fearing greatly the-people
Francorum, dedit se omnimodo fugae cum aliis multis,
of-the-Franks gave himself in-every-way to-flight with others many
qui erant cum eo, et fugiendo pervenit in Tancredi terram
who were with him and by-fleeing came into of-Tancred the-land
non longe a civitate. Fatigati vero erant equi eorum,
not far from the-city wearied indeed were horses their
miseruntque se in quoddam casale et mersi sunt
and-they-put themselves into a-certain farmstead and sunk were
in unam domum. Cognoverunt ergo eum habitatores
into one house knew therefore him the-inhabitants

illius montaneae, scilicet Suriani et Hermenii, et confestim
of-that mountain namely Syrians and Armenians and at-once
apprehenderunt eum truncaveruntque caput illius et tulerunt
seized him and-cut-off head his and carried-it
ante Boamundi praesentiam, ut inde mererentur libertatem
before of-Bohemond the-presence that thence they-might-deserve freedom
accipere. Balteum quoque eius et vaginam appretiaverunt
to-receive belt also his and scabbard they-valued
LX bizanteis. Haec omnia gesta sunt III[a]. die
at-sixty bezants these-things all done were on-the-third day
intrante mense Junio, V[a]. feria, III[a]. nonas
entering the-month of-June on-the-fifth weekday on-the-third-day-before the-Nones
Junii. Omnes namque plateae civitatis iam undique erant
of-June all for the-squares of-the-city now on-all-sides were
plenae cadaveribus mortuorum, ita ut nemo posset sufferre
full of-the-corpses of-the-dead so that no-one could bear
ibi esse prae nimis fetoribus: nullus vero poterat ire per
there to-be for excessive stenches none but could go along
semitam civitatis, nisi super cadavera mortuorum.
a-path of-the-city except over the-corpses of-the-dead

XXI · KERBOGHA COMES TO ANTIOCH

Called by Yaghi-Siyan, Kerbogha gathers a vast army and the caliph's leave to kill Christians, and the emir of Jerusalem and the king of Damascus join him. Shams-ad-Daula begs his help and must yield him the citadel. Kerbogha sets a trusted emir over it, laughs at the rusty arms brought to him as the Franks' weapons, and writes to Khorasan that he has the Franks shut in Antioch and will have them killed or led captive.

Curbaram, princeps militiae Soldani Persiae, dum adhuc
Kerbogha the-prince of-the-army of-the-Sultan of-Persia while still
esset Corrozanum, quotiens Cassianus ammiralius Antiochiae
he-was in-Khorasan as-often-as Yaghi-Siyan the-emir of-Antioch
legationem ei misit, quo sibi succurreret in tempore
an-embassy to-him sent that to-him he-should-come-to-aid in time
opportuno, quoniam gens fortissima Francorum eum
opportune since the-people bravest of-the-Franks him
impeditum graviter obsidebat in Antiochia; et, si adiutorium
hemmed-in grievously was-besieging in Antioch and if help
ei impenderet, urbem Antiochenam illi traderet aut
to-him he-should-render the-city Antiochene to-him he-would-hand-over or
eum maximo munere ditaret; cumque iam habuisset
him with-a-very-great gift would-enrich and-when now he-had
maximum exercitum Turcorum, ex longo collectum tempore,
a-very-great army of-Turks over a-long gathered time
et licentiam Christianos occidendi accepisset a Calipha,
and leave Christians of-killing had-received from the-Caliph
illorum Apostolico, ilico inchoavit iter longae viae
their apostolic-one at-once he-began the-journey of-the-long road
Antiochiae. Hierosolymitanus ammiralius in adiutorium cum
to-Antioch the-Jerusalem emir in help with
suo exercitu venit; rex Damasci illuc venit cum maxima
his army came the-king of-Damascus thither came with a-very-great

gente. Idem vero Curbaram congregavit innumeras gentes
people the-same but Kerbogha gathered countless peoples
paganorum, videlicet Turcos, Arabes, Saracenos, Publicanos,
of-pagans namely Turks Arabs Saracens Paulicians
Azimitas, Curtos, Persas, Agulanos et alias multas gentes
Azymites Kurds Persians Agulani and other many peoples
innumerabiles. Et Agulani fuerunt numero III milia, qui neque
countless and the-Agulani were in-number three thousand who neither
lanceas neque sagittas neque ulla arma timebant, quia omnes
lances nor arrows nor any arms feared because all
erant undique cooperti ferro et equi eorum; ipsique
were on-all-sides covered with-iron and horses their and-they-themselves
nolebant in bellum ferre arma, nisi solummodo gladios. Isti
were-unwilling into battle to-carry arms except only swords these
omnes venerunt in obsidionem Antiochiae ad dispergendum
all came to the-siege of-Antioch for scattering
Francorum collegium. Et cum appropinquassent urbi, venit
of-the-Franks the-company and when they-had-drawn-near to-the-city came
obviam illis Sensadolus, filius Cassiani, ammiralii Antiochiae,
to-meet them Shams-ad-Daula son of-Yaghi-Siyan the-emir of-Antioch
et continuo cucurrit ad Curbaram lacrimabiliter rogans eum
and at-once ran to Kerbogha tearfully asking him
et dicens: Invictissime princeps, te supplex precor, quatinus
and saying most-unconquered prince you as-a-suppliant I-beg so-that
modo mihi succurras; quoniam Franci undique obsident
now me you-should-aid since the-Franks on-all-sides besiege
me in Antiocheno oppido, urbemque in suo tenent imperio,
me in the-Antiochene town and-the-city in their they-hold command
nosque alienare a regione Romaniae sive Syriae adhuc
and-us to-estrange from the-region of-Romania or of-Syria still
autem et Corrozani cupiunt. Omnia patravere quae
moreover and of-Khorasan they-desire all-things they-have-accomplished which

voluerunt, patrem occiderunt meum; nihil aliud superest, nisi
they-wished father they-have-killed my nothing else remains except
ut me et te et omnes alios ex genere nostro interficiant.
that me and you and all others of race our they-should-kill
Ego namque iamdudum tuum exspecto auxilium, ut mihi
I for long-since your await help that me
succurras in hoc periculo. Cui ait ille: Si vis, ut ex
you-should-aid in this peril to-whom says he if you-wish that from
toto corde in tuo sim proficuo tibique fideliter in hoc
whole heart in your I-be profit and-to-you faithfully in this
succurram periculo, illud oppidum in meam trade manum
I-aid peril that town into my hand-over hand
et tunc videbis, qualiter in tuo ero proficuo, idque
and then you-shall-see how in your I-shall-be profit and-it
faciam custodire meis hominibus. Ait illi Sensadolus: Si
I-shall-cause to-be-guarded by-my men says to-him Shams-ad-Daula if
potes omnes Francos occidere mihique capita eorum tradere,
you-can all the-Franks to-kill and-to-me the-heads their hand-over
tibi dabo oppidum, tibique faciam hominium et in tua
to-you I-shall-give the-town and-to-you I-shall-do homage and in your
fidelitate custodiam illud oppidum. Cui Curbaram: Non
fealty I-shall-guard that town to-whom Kerbogha not
ita, inquit, erit, sed continuo in meam manum committe
so he-says it-shall-be but at-once into my hand commit
castrum. Tandem volens nolensque commisit illi castrum.
the-citadel at-length willing and-unwilling he-committed to-him the-citadel
Tertia vero die postquam intravimus civitatem, eorum
on-the-third indeed day after we-entered the-city their
praecursores ante urbem praecurrerunt; exercitus autem illorum
forerunners before the-city ran-ahead the-army moreover of-them
ad Pontem Farreum castrametatus est, et expugnaverunt
at the-Bridge Iron encamped has and they-stormed

turrim et occiderunt omnes, quos illic invenerunt, et nemo
a-tower and killed all whom there they-found and no-one
evasit vivus nisi dominus illorum, quem invenimus ligatum
escaped alive except the-lord their whom we-found bound
in vinculis ferreis, facto maiore bello. Crastina vero die, moto
in chains of-iron made the-greater battle on-the-next indeed day moved
exercitu paganorum, appropinquaverunt urbi et castrametati
the-army of-the-pagans they-drew-near to-the-city and encamped
sunt inter duo flumina, steteruntque ibi per duos dies. Recepto
have between two rivers and-they-stood there for two days received
itaque castro, Curbaram convocavit unum ammiralium ex suis,
and-so the-citadel Kerbogha summoned one emir of his-men
quem sciebat veracem, mitem et pacificum, et ait illi: Volo,
whom he-knew truthful mild and peaceable and said to-him I-wish
ut intres in fidelitatem meam custodire hoc castrum, quoniam
that you-enter into fealty my to-guard this citadel since
ex longissimo tempore scio te fidelissimum, ideoque precor
from a-very-long time I-know you most-faithful and-therefore I-beg
te, ut summa cautela hoc serves oppidum, adhuc namque
you that with-the-highest caution this you-keep town still for
quod scio te in opere prudentissimum, nullum magis
what I-know you in work most-prudent none more
veracem et fortissimum hic modo reperire possum. Cui ait
truthful and bravest here now to-find I-can to-whom says
ammiralius: Tibi unquam de tali nollem obedire officio;
the-emir to-you ever in such I-would-not-wish to-obey office
sed priusquam me tuo arguas stimulo, hoc faciam illo
but before me with-your you-goad spur this I-shall-do on-that
tenore, ut, si Franci eiecerint vos de mortali proelio et
condition that if the-Franks shall-have-thrown you from the-mortal battle and
vicerint, eis continuo tradam hoc castrum. Dixitque
shall-have-conquered to-them at-once I-shall-hand-over this citadel and-said

illi Curbaram: Tam honestum et prudentem te cognosco,
to-him Kerbogha so honorable and prudent you I-know
ut omne quicquid boni vis agere, ego consentiam.
that everything whatever of-good you-wish to-do I shall-consent
Reversus est itaque Curbaram ad suum exercitum, et protinus
returned has and-so Kerbogha to his army and at-once
Turci, deludentes Francorum collegium, detulerunt ante
the-Turks mocking of-the-Franks the-company carried before
conspectum Curbaram quendam vilissimum ensem rubigine
the-sight of-Kerbogha a-certain most-vile sword with-rust
tectum et teterrimum arcum ligneum et lanceam nimis
covered and a-most-foul bow wooden and a-lance very
inutilem, quae abstulerant nuper pauperibus peregrinis,
useless which they-had-taken-away lately from-poor pilgrims
dixeruntque: Ecce arma, quae attulerunt Franci obviam
and-they-said behold the-arms which have-brought the-Franks to-meet
nobis ad pugnam! Tunc Curbaram coepit subridere, palam
us for fighting then Kerbogha began to-smile openly
dicens omnibus, qui in illo aderant collegio: Haec sunt
saying to-all who in that were-present company these are
arma bellica et nitida, quae attulerunt Christiani super nos
the-arms warlike and gleaming which have-brought the-Christians upon us
in Asiam, quibus putant nos et confidunt expellere ultra
into Asia with-which they-think us and are-confident to-drive beyond
confinia Corrozanae et delere nomina nostra ultra Amazonia
the-borders of-Khorasan and to-blot-out names our beyond the-Amazon
flumina, qui propulerunt omnes parentes nostros a Romania
rivers who have-driven-out all forefathers our from Romania
et Antiochia urbe regia, quae est honorabile caput totius
and Antioch the-city royal which is the-honorable head of-all
Syriae. Mox convocavit suum notarium et ait: Scribe cito
Syria soon he-summoned his notary and said write quickly

plures chartas, quae in Corrozana sint legendae, videlicet:
many charters which in Khorasan are to-be-read namely
Caliphae, nostro Apostolico, ac nostro regi, domino Soldano,
to-the-Caliph our apostolic-one and to-our king the-lord Sultan
militi fortissimo, atque omnibus prudentissimis militibus
the-knight bravest and to-all the-most-prudent knights
Corrozanae, salus et immensus honor. Satis sint laeti et
of-Khorasan greeting and immense honor quite let-them-be glad and
gavisi iocunda concordia et satisfaciant ventribus, imperent
rejoicing in-pleasant concord and let-them-satisfy their-bellies let-them-command
et sermocinent per universam regionem illam, ut omnino
and let-them-discourse through all region that that wholly
dent sese ad petulantiam et ad luxuriam, multosque filios
they-give themselves to wantonness and to lust and-many sons
patrare congaudeant, qui contra Christianos fortiter pugnare
to-beget let-them-rejoice-together who against the-Christians strongly to-fight
praevaleant et libenter suscipiant haec tria arma, quae olim
may-prevail and willingly let-them-receive these three arms which lately
abstulimus a Francorum turma, et discant modo quae
we-took-away from of-the-Franks the-troop and let-them-learn now what
arma attulerit super nos gens Francigena, qualiter optima
arms has-brought upon us the-people French-born how excellent
et perfecta sunt, heu! certare contra nostra arma, quae bis
and perfect they-are alas to-contend against our arms which twice
aut ter sive quater sunt colata aut purgata ceu argentum
or thrice or four-times are refined or purified like silver
aut aurum purissimum. Adhuc quoque sciant omnes, quoniam
or gold most-pure still also let-know all that
ego cunctos Francos intus in Antiochia conclusos habeo et
I all the-Franks inside in Antioch shut-in have and
castrum in mea libera teneo voluntate, illi vero deorsum sunt
the-citadel in my free I-hold will they but below are

in civitate. Habeo etiam omnes illos iam in mea manu, eosque
in the-city I-have also all them now in my hand and-them
faciam aut capitalem subire sententiam aut deduci in
I-shall-cause either the-capital to-undergo sentence or to-be-led into
Corrozanam in captivitatem nimiam, eo quod minantur
Khorasan into captivity excessive for-the-reason that they-threaten
nos suis armis propulsare et expellere ab omnibus finibus
us with-their arms to-drive-off and to-expel from all borders
nostris aut eiicere ultra superiorem Indiam, ceu eiecerunt
our or to-cast beyond the-upper India as they-cast
omnes parentes nostros a Romania sive Syria. Amodo iuro
all forefathers our from Romania or Syria henceforth I-swear
vobis per Machomet et per omnia Deorum nomina, quoniam
to-you by Muhammad and by all of-the-Gods the-names that
ante vestram non ero rediturus praesentiam, donec
before your not I-shall-be about-to-return presence until
regalem urbem Antiochiam et omnem Syriam sive Romaniam
the-royal city Antioch and all Syria or Romania
atque Bulgariam usque in Apuliam acquisiero mea
and Bulgaria all-the-way into Apulia I-shall-have-acquired with-my
forti dextera ad Deorum honorem et vestrum et omnium,
strong right-hand to the-Gods' honor and yours and of-all
qui sunt ex genere Turcorum. Sic fecit finem dictis.
who are of the-race of-the-Turks thus he-made an-end to-the-words

Kerbogha's mother comes from Aleppo and begs him not to fight the Franks, whose God fights for them as a shepherd guards his flock, as the prophets and the Apostle say. She has read in the stars and the books of the gentiles that the Christians will conquer, and warns that he will not die in this battle but will lose all and die within the year. He refuses, and she returns grieving.

Mater vero eiusdem Curbaram, quae erat in Aleph civitate,
the-mother but of-the-same Kerbogha who was in Aleppo the-city
statim venit ad eum, dixitque illi lacrimabiliter: Fili,
at-once came to him and-said to-him tearfully son
suntne vera, quae audio? Cui ait ille: Quae? Et
are true-things which I-hear to-whom says he what-things and
dixit illa: Audivi, quia bellum vis committere cum
said she I-have-heard that battle you-wish to-join with
Francorum gente. Ait ille: Verum omnino scias. Dixit
of-the-Franks the-people says he true wholly you-should-know said
illa: Contestor te, fili, per omnium Deorum nomina et per
she I-adjure you son by of-all the-Gods the-names and by
tuam magnam bonitatem, ne bellum cum Francis committas,
your great goodness not battle with the-Franks to-join
quoniam tu es miles invictus, et nullam imprudentiam ex
since you are a-knight unconquered and no imprudence from
te aut ex tuo exercitu unquam penitus audivi, et te e
you or from your army ever at-all have-I-heard and you from
campo ab aliquo victore fugientem quisquam minime invenit.
the-field by any victor fleeing anyone not-at-all has-found
Diffamata est tua militia ubique, omnesque prudentes milites
spread-abroad is your soldiership everywhere and-all prudent knights
audito tuo nomine contremiscunt. Satis namque scimus, fili,
heard your name tremble well for we-know son

quoniam tu es bellipotens et fortis et bellorum ingeniosus,
that you are war-mighty and strong and in-wars ingenious
nullaque gens Christianorum vel paganorum ante tuum
and-no people of-Christians or of-pagans before your
conspectum aliquam virtutem habere potuit; sed fugiebant
sight any power to-have could but they-fled
solummodo audito tuo nomine sicut oves ante leonis
only heard your name as sheep before of-the-lion
furorem fugiunt. Ideoque obsecro te, carissime fili, ut meis
the-fury flee and-therefore I-beseech you dearest son that in-my
acquiescas consiliis et ne unquam in tuo haesitet animo aut
you-acquiesce counsels and lest ever in your it-waver mind or
in tuo inveniatur consilio, ut bellum velis incipere cum
in your be-found counsel that battle you-should-wish to-begin with
Christiana gente. Tunc Curbaram, materna audiens monita,
the-Christian people then Kerbogha the-maternal hearing warnings
feroci respondit sermone: Quid est hoc, mater, quod
with-fierce answered speech what is this mother that
mihi refers? Puto, quod insanis aut furiis es plena.
to-me you-relate I-think that you-are-mad or with-furies you-are full
Enimvero mecum habeo plures amiralios, quam Christiani
indeed with-me I-have more emirs than Christians
sint, sive maiores sive minores. Respondit ei mater sua: O
there-be either greater or lesser answered him mother his O
dulcissime fili, Christiani nequeunt vobiscum bellare; scio
sweetest son the-Christians cannot with-you to-make-war I-know
namque, quod non valent nobis pugnam inferre, sed Deus
for that not they-are-able on-us fight to-bring but God
eorum pro ipsis cotidie pugnat, eosque diu noctuque sua
their for them daily fights and-them by-day and-by-night with-his
protectione defendit et vigilat super eos, sicut pastor vigilat
protection defends and watches over them as a-shepherd watches

super gregem suum, et non permittit eos laedi nec
over flock his and not allows them to-be-harmed nor
conturbari ab ulla gente, et quicunque volunt eis obstare,
to-be-troubled by any people and whoever wish them to-oppose
idem eorum Deus conturbat illos, sicut ipse ait per os
the-same their God troubles them as he says through the-mouth
David prophetae: «Dissipa gentes, quae bella volunt», et
of-David the-prophet scatter the-peoples who wars wish and
alibi: «Effunde iram tuam in gentes, quae te non noverunt,
elsewhere pour-out anger your upon the-peoples who you not have-known
et in regna, quae nomen tuum non invocaverunt».
and upon the-kingdoms which name your not have-called-upon
Antequam vero praeparati sint ad incipiendum bellum,
before indeed prepared they-are for beginning battle
eorum Deus omnipotens et bellipotens simul cum sanctis
their God almighty and war-mighty together with saints
suis omnes inimicos iam habet devictos, quanto magis modo
his all enemies now has conquered how-much more now
faciet circa vos, qui eius estis inimici et qui praeparastis
shall-he-do with you who his are enemies and who have-prepared
vos obsistere eis tota virtute? Hoc autem, carissime,
yourselves to-oppose them with-all strength this moreover dearest
in rei veritate scias, quoniam isti Christiani «filii
in of-the-thing truth you-should-know that these Christians sons
Christi» vocati sunt et prophetarum ore «filii adoptionis
of-Christ called are and of-the-prophets by-the-mouth sons of-adoption
et promissionis» et secundum Apostolum «heredes Christi»
and of-promise and according-to the-Apostle heirs of-Christ
sunt, quibus Christus hereditates repromissas iam donavit
they-are to-whom Christ the-inheritances promised already has-given
dicendo per prophetas: «A Solis ortu usque ad
saying through the-prophets from of-the-sun the-rising all-the-way to

occasum erunt termini vestri, et nemo stabit contra vos».
the-setting shall-be borders your and no-one shall-stand against you
Et qui potest his dictis contradicere vel obstare? Certe si
and who can these words to-contradict or oppose certainly if
hoc bellum contra eos inceperis, maximum tibi erit
this battle against them you-shall-have-begun the-greatest to-you shall-be
damnum ac dedecus, et multos fideles tuos milites perdes
loss and disgrace and many faithful your knights you-shall-lose
et universa spolia, quae apud te habes, amittes et nimio
and all the-spoils which with you you-have you-shall-lose and with-excessive
pavore fugiendo everteris. Tu autem in hoc bello non
terror by-fleeing you-shall-be-overthrown you moreover in this battle not
morieris modo, sed tamen in hoc anno, quoniam ipse Deus
shall-die now but yet in this year since he-himself God
non statim iudicat offendentem se exerta ira, sed quando
not at-once judges one-offending him with-drawn anger but when
vult, punit cum manifesta vindicta; ideoque timeo, ne
he-wishes he-punishes with manifest vengeance and-therefore I-fear lest
te iudicet poenali tristitia. Non morieris, inquam, modo,
you he-judge with-penal sadness not you-shall-die I-say now
verumtamen perditurus es in praesentiarum habita.
nevertheless about-to-lose you-are for the-present the-things-held
Curbaram denique valde dolens intimis visceribus, auditis
Kerbogha finally greatly grieving in-his-inmost bowels heard
maternis sermonibus, respondit: Mater carissima, quaeso
the-maternal words answered mother dearest I-ask
te, quis dixit tibi ista de gente Christiana, quod
you who said to-you these-things about the-people Christian that
Deus eorum tantum eos amet et quod ipse pugnandi
God their so-much them loves and that he of-fighting
virtutem in se retinet maximam, et quod illi Christiani
the-power in himself retains the-greatest and that those Christians

vincent nos in Antiocheno proelio et quod ipsi capturi
shall-conquer us in the-Antiochene battle and that they about-to-take
sunt nostra spolia, nosque persecuturi magna victoria, et
are our spoils and-us about-to-pursue with-great victory and
quod in hoc anno moriturus sum morte subitanea? Tunc
that in this year about-to-die I-am by-a-death sudden then
respondit ei mater sua dolens: Fili carissime, ecce sunt
answered him mother his grieving son dearest behold there-are
plus quam centum annorum tempora, de quibus inventum
more than a-hundred of-years the-times since which found
est in nostra pagina et in gentilium voluminubus, quoniam
is in our page and in of-the-gentiles the-volumes that
gens Christiana super nos foret ventura et nos ubique
the-people Christian upon us would-be about-to-come and us everywhere
victura ac super paganos regnatura, et nostra gens
about-to-conquer and over the-pagans about-to-reign and our people
illis ubique erit subdita. Sed ignoro, utrum modo an
to-them everywhere shall-be subject but I-know-not whether now or
in futuro sint haec eventura. Ego utique misera sum
in the-future may-be these-things about-to-happen I certainly wretched have
te secuta ab Aleph, urbe pulcherrima, in qua speculando
you followed from Aleppo the-city most-beautiful in which by-watching
atque ingeniose rimando respexi in coelorum astra et
and cleverly by-searching I-looked into of-the-heavens the-stars and
sagaciter scrutata sum planetas et duodecim signa sive
shrewdly scrutinized have the-planets and the-twelve signs or
sortes innumeras. In eis omnibus repperi, quoniam gens
lots countless in them all I-found that the-people
Christiana nos ubique est devictura, ideoque de te
Christian us everywhere is about-to-conquer and-therefore about you
timeo valde, nimis maesta, ne ex te remaneam orbata.
I-fear greatly very-much sorrowful lest of you I-remain bereaved

Dixit illi Curbaram: Mater carissima, dic mihi omnia, quae
said to-her Kerbogha mother dearest tell me all-things which
in corde meo sunt incredula. Quae respondens ait: Hoc,
in heart my are unbelieving who answering says this
carissime, libenter faciam, si sciero ea, quae tibi
dearest willingly I-shall-do if I-shall-have-known those-things which to-you
sunt incognita. Cui ille dixit: Non sunt igitur Boamundus
are unknown to-whom he said not are therefore Bohemond
et Tancredus Francorum Dii et non eos liberant de
and Tancred of-the-Franks Gods and not them they-free from
inimicis suis et non ipsi manducant in uno quoque prandio
enemies their and not they eat at one every meal
II milia vaccas et IV milia porcos? Respondit mater: Fili
two thousand cows and four thousand pigs answered the-mother son
carissime, Boamundus et Tancredus mortales sunt sicut alii
dearest Bohemond and Tancred mortal are like others
omnes; sed Deus eorum valde diligit eos prae omnibus aliis
all but God their greatly loves them before all others
et virtutem proeliandi dat eis prae ceteris. Nam Deus
and the-power of-fighting gives to-them before the-rest for God
illorum, omnipotens est nomen eius, qui fecit caelum et
their almighty is the-name his who made heaven and
terram et fundavit maria et omnia, quae in eis sunt, cuius
earth and founded the-seas and all-things which in them are whose
sedes in caelo est parata in aeternum, cuius potestas ubique
seat in heaven is prepared into eternity whose power everywhere
est metuenda. Ait filius: Si ita est causa, cum eis proeliari
is to-be-feared says the-son if so is the-case with them to-fight
non desinam. Itaque audiens mater eius, quod nullomodo
not I-shall-cease and-so hearing mother his that in-no-way

acquiesceret consiliis suis, maestissima recessit retrorsum in
he-would-acquiesce in-counsels her most-sorrowful withdrew back to
Aleph, deferens secum cuncta spolia, quae conducere potuit.
Aleppo carrying with-herself all the-spoils which to-bring she-could

XXIII · THE FRANKS BESIEGED IN ANTIOCH

Kerbogha attacks from the citadel side, and the Franks are driven into the city through a gate so narrow that many are crushed. William of Grandmesnil and others let themselves down the wall by night and tell the sailors at Saint Simeon that all are lost; the ships flee, and the Turks burn the ships left behind. The Franks wall themselves off and are reduced to eating horses and asses.

Tertia vero die armavit se Curbaram et maxima pars
on-the-third indeed day armed himself Kerbogha and the-greatest part
Turcorum cum eo, veneruntque ad civitatem ex illa parte,
of-the-Turks with him and-they-came to the-city from that side
in qua erat castrum. Nos autem putantes resistere posse
in which was the-citadel we moreover thinking to-resist to-be-able
illis, paravimus bellum contra eos; sed tam magna fuit
them prepared battle against them but so great was
virtus illorum, quod nequivimus illis resistere; sicque coacti
the-power of-them that we-could-not them to-resist and-thus compelled
intravimus civitatem; quibus fuit tam mirabiliter arta et
we-entered the-city for-whom was so wondrously tight and
angusta porta, ut illic fuerint multi mortui oppressione
narrow the-gate that there there-were many dead by-the-crushing
aliorum. Interea alii pugnabant extra urbem, alii intus, in
of-others meanwhile some fought outside the-city others inside on
V[a] feria per totum diem usque ad vesperam. Inter
the-fifth weekday through the-whole day all-the-way to evening among

haec Willelmus de Grentamasnil et Albericus frater eius
these-things William of Grandmesnil and Aubrey brother his
et Wido Trursellus et Lambertus Pauper, isti omnes timore
and Guy Trousseau and Lambert the-Poor these all by-fear
perterriti de hesterno bello, quod duraverat usque ad
terrified from yesterday's battle which had-lasted all-the-way to
vesperam, nocte latenter dimissi sunt per murum fugientes
evening by-night secretly let-down were over the-wall fleeing
pedibus contra mare, ita ut neque in manibus neque in
on-foot toward the-sea so that neither on the-hands nor on
pedibus remaneret aliquid nisi solummodo ossa. Multique alii
the-feet remained anything except only bones and-many others
fugerunt cum illis, quos nescio. Venientes igitur ad naves, quae
fled with them whom I-know-not coming therefore to the-ships which
erant ad Portum Sancti Simeonis, dixerunt nautis: Quid hic,
were at the-Port of-Saint Simeon they-said to-the-sailors why here
miseri, statis? Omnes nostri mortui sunt et nos mortem
wretches do-you-stand all our-men dead are and we death
vix evasimus, quia exercitus Turcorum undique obsident
scarcely escaped because the-armies of-the-Turks on-all-sides besiege
alios in urbe. At illi audientes talia stabant stupefacti,
the-others in the-city but they hearing such-things stood stupefied
ac timore perterriti cucurrerunt ad naves et miserunt se
and by-fear terrified ran to the-ships and put themselves
in mare. Deinde supervenientes Turci, quos invenerunt,
on the-sea then coming-upon-them the-Turks whom they-found
occiderunt, et naves, quae in alveo fluminis remanserant,
they-killed and the-ships which in the-bed of-the-river had-remained
combusserunt igni et apprehenderunt spolia eorum.
they-burned with-fire and seized the-spoils their
Nos denique, qui remansimus, nequivimus sufferre pondus
we finally who remained could-not bear the-weight

armorum illorum; fecimusque murum inter nos et illos,
of-the-arms of-them and-we-made a-wall between us and them
quem custodiebamus diu noctuque. Interea tanta oppressione
which we-guarded by-day and-by-night meanwhile by-such oppression
fuimus oppressi, ut equos et asinos nostros manducaremus.
we-were oppressed that horses and asses our we-ate

XXIV · THE PRIEST'S VISION AND THE OATH

A priest tells the princes that Christ, with his mother and Saint Peter, appeared to him, rebuked the army's sins with pagan and Christian women, and promised help within five days if they return to him and sing Congregati sunt *daily. He offers to leap from a tower to prove it, and the bishop of Le Puy has him swear to it on the Gospels and the cross. The princes swear not to flee, and Tancred vows not to withdraw while he has forty knights with him.*

Quodam vero die stantibus nostris maioribus sursum ante
on-a-certain indeed day standing our greater-men up before
castellum tristibus ac dolentibus, venit quidam sacerdos ad eos
the-citadel sad and grieving came a-certain priest to them
et dixit: Seniores, si vobis placet, audite rem quamdam, quam
and said lords if to-you it-pleases hear a-thing certain which
in visione vidi: Cum nocte una iacerem in ecclesia S.
in a-vision I-saw when on-a-night one I-lay in the-church of-Saint
Mariae, matris Domini nostri Jesu Christi, apparuit mihi
Mary the-mother of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ appeared to-me
Salvator mundi cum sua genetrice et beato Petro, apostolorum
the-Savior of-the-world with his mother and blessed Peter of-the-apostles
principe, stetitque ante me et dixit mihi: «Agnoscis me»?
the-prince and-he-stood before me and said to-me do-you-know me
Cui respondi: «Non». His dictis, ecce apparuit integra crux
to-whom I-answered no these said behold appeared a-whole cross

in capite eius. Iterum ergo interrogavit me Dominus, dicens:
on head his again therefore asked me the-Lord saying
«Agnoscis me»? Cui dixi: «Te alio modo non agnosco,
do-you-know me to-whom I-said you in-other way not I-know
nisi quia crucem in capite tui cerno sicut Salvatoris nostri».
except that a-cross on the-head of-you I-see as of-the-Savior our
Qui dixit: «Ego sum». Statim cecidi ad pedes eius, rogans
who said I am at-once I-fell at the-feet his asking
humiliter, ut subveniret nobis in oppressione illa, quae
humbly that he-would-come-to-aid us in oppression that which
super nos erat. Respondit Dominus: «Bene adiuvi vos et
upon us was answered the-Lord well I-have-helped you and
amodo adiuvabo. Ego permisi vos habere Niceam civitatem
henceforth I-shall-help I allowed you to-have Nicaea the-city
et omnia devincere bella, et conduxi vos huc usque et
and all to-conquer the-battles and I-led you hither all-the-way and
condolui vestrae miseriae, quam passi fuistis in obsidione
I-grieved-with your misery which suffered you-had in the-siege
Antiochiae. Ecce in auxilio opportuno misi vos sanos et
of-Antioch behold in help opportune I-put you sound and
incolumes in civitatem; et ecce, multam pravam dilectionem
unharmed into the-city and behold much depraved love
operantes cum Christianis et pravis paganis mulieribus,
you-are-working with Christian and depraved pagan women
unde immensus fetor ascendit in caelum.» Tunc alma Virgo
whence an-immense stench rises into heaven then the-kindly Virgin
et beatus Petrus ceciderunt ad pedes eius, rogantes eum et
and blessed Peter fell at the-feet his asking him and
deprecantes, ut suum in hac tribulatione adiuvaret populum.
entreating that his in this tribulation he-would-help people
Dixitque beatus Petrus: «Domine, per tot tempora tenuit
and-said blessed Peter O-Lord for so-many times has-held

paganorum gens domum meam, in qua multa et ineffabilia
of-the-pagans the-people house my in which many and unspeakable
mala fecerunt. Modo vero expulsis inimicis inde, Domine,
evils they-have-done now indeed driven-out the-enemies thence O-Lord
laetantur angeli in caelis.» Dixitque mihi Dominus: «Vade
rejoice the-angels in the-heavens and-said to-me the-Lord go
ergo et dic populo meo, ut revertatur ad me, et ego
therefore and say to-people my that it-return to me and I
revertar ad illum et infra V dies mittam ei magnum
shall-return to it and within five days I-shall-send to-it great
adiutorium, et cotidie decantet responsorium: Congregati
help and daily let-it-sing the-responsory gathered
sunt, totum cum versu. Seniores, si hoc non creditis esse
are whole with the-verse lords if this not you-believe to-be
verum, sinite modo me in hanc scandere turrim, mittamque
true allow now me into this to-climb tower and-I-shall-throw
me deorsum; si vero fuero incolumis, credatis hoc
myself down if indeed I-shall-have-been unharmed may-you-believe this
esse verum, sin autem ullam laesionem fuero passus,
to-be true but-if-not moreover any harm I-shall-have suffered
decollate me aut in ignem proiicite me. Tunc Podiensis
behead me or into the-fire throw me then of-Le-Puy
episcopus iussit, ut adferrentur Evangelia et crux, quatinus
the-bishop ordered that be-brought the-Gospels and the-cross so-that
iuraret ille hoc esse verum. Consiliati sunt omnes maiores
should-swear he this to-be true took-counsel have all greater-men
nostri in illa hora, ut iurarent sacramentum, quod illorum
our in that hour that they-should-swear an-oath that of-them
nullus fugeret neque pro morte neque pro vita, quamdiu vivi
none would-flee neither for death nor for life as-long-as alive
essent. Primus dicitur iurasse Boamundus, deinde comes
they-should-be first is-said to-have-sworn Bohemond then the-count

Sancti Egidii et Rotbertus Nortmannus ac dux Godefridus
of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman and duke Godfrey
et comes Flandrensis. Tancredus vero iuravit ac promisit
and the-count of-Flanders Tancred but swore and promised
tali modo, quia, quamdiu secum XL milites haberet,
in-such way that as-long-as with-himself forty knights he-should-have
non solum ex illo bello, sed etiam ab Hierosolymitano
not only from that battle but also from the-Jerusalem
itinere non esset recessurus. Nimis autem exsultavit
journey not he-would-be about-to-withdraw very-much moreover exulted
Christiana congregatio, hoc audiens sacramentum.
the-Christian congregation this hearing oath

XXV · SAINT ANDREW AND THE LANCE

Saint Andrew appears twice to a pilgrim named Peter, shows him where the Lord's lance lies buried in Saint Peter's church, and rebukes him for not digging it up, promising that whoever carries it in battle will never be overcome. The people doubt until Peter swears it, and they take heart at the promise that their enemies will be conquered.

Erat autem quidam peregrinus de nostro exercitu, cui
there-was moreover a-certain pilgrim from our army to-whom
nomen Petrus, cui ante quam civitatem intraremus, apparuit
the-name Peter to-whom before that we-entered the-city appeared
Sanctus Andreas apostolus, dicens: Quid agis, bone vir?
Saint Andrew the-apostle saying what are-you-doing good man
Cui ille respondit: Tu quis es? Dixit ei apostolus: Ego
to-whom he answered you who are said to-him the-apostle I
sum Andreas apostolus. Agnoscas, fili, quia, dum villam
am Andrew the-apostle you-should-know son that when the-town

intraveris, vadens ad ecclesiam beati Petri, ibi invenies
you-shall-have-entered going to the-church of-blessed Peter there you-shall-find
lanceam Salvatoris nostri Jesu Christi, ex qua in crucis
the-lance of-the-Savior our Jesus Christ with which on of-the-cross
pendens patibulo vulneratus est. Haec omnia dicens
hanging the-gibbet wounded he-was these-things all saying
apostolus continuo recessit. Ipse autem timens revelare consilium
the-apostle at-once withdrew he moreover fearing to-reveal the-counsel
apostoli, noluit indicare nostris peregrinis. Aestimabat
of-the-apostle was-unwilling to-make-known to-our pilgrims he-thought
autem se visum videre et dixit ad eum: Domine, quis hoc
moreover himself a-vision to-see and said to him Lord who this
crediderit? In illa vero hora accepit eum Sanctus Andreas et
would-believe in that indeed hour took him Saint Andrew and
portavit eum usque ad locum, ubi lancea erat recondita in
carried him all-the-way to the-place where the-lance was hidden in
terra. Iterum cum essemus ita ut superius diximus, venit
the-earth again when we-were so as above we-said came
Sanctus Andreas rursus, dicens ei: Quare non abstulisti
Saint Andrew again saying to-him why not have-you-taken-away
lanceam de terra ut ego tibi praecepi? Scias revera,
the-lance from the-earth as I to-you commanded you-should-know in-truth
quia quicunque lanceam hanc portaverit in bello, numquam
that whoever lance this shall-have-carried in battle never
ab hoste superabitur. Petrus vero continuo revelavit mysterium
by an-enemy shall-be-overcome Peter but at-once revealed the-mystery
apostoli hominibus nostris. Populus autem non credebat, sed
of-the-apostle to-men our the-people moreover not believed but
prohibebat dicens: Quomodo possumus hoc credere? Omnino
refused-it saying how can-we this to-believe wholly
enim erant paventes et protinus mori putabant. Accessit
for they-were fearing and at-once to-die they-thought approached

itaque ille et iuravit hoc totum veracissimum esse, quoniam
and-so he and swore this all most-true to-be since
ei Sanctus Andreas bis in visione apparuerat eique dixerat:
to-him Saint Andrew twice in a-vision had-appeared and-to-him had-said
Surge, vade et dic populo Dei, ne timeat, sed firmiter
rise go and say to-the-people of-God lest it-fear but firmly
toto corde credat in unum verum Deum, eruntque
with-whole heart let-it-believe in one true God and-they-shall-be
ubique victuri, et infra V dies mandabit eis Dominus
everywhere about-to-conquer and within five days shall-send to-them the-Lord
talem rem, unde laeti et gavisi manebunt, et, si certare
such a-thing whence glad and rejoicing they-shall-remain and if to-contend
voluerint, mox ut exierint unanimiter ad bellum,
they-shall-have-wished as-soon as they-shall-have-gone-out with-one-mind to battle
omnes inimici eorum vincentur et nemo stabit contra
all the-enemies their shall-be-conquered and no-one shall-stand against
illos. Audientes itaque, quod inimici eorum ab eis omnino
them hearing and-so that the-enemies their by them wholly
essent vincendi, protinus coeperunt sese vivificare et
were about-to-be-conquered at-once they-began themselves to-revive and
confortabant se adinvicem dicentes: Expergiscimini et
comforted themselves among-one-another saying awake and
estote ubique fortes et prudentes, quoniam in proximo
be everywhere strong and prudent since in the-near-future
erit nobis Deus in adiutorium; et erit maximum
shall-be for-us God in help and he-shall-be the-greatest
refugium populo suo, quem respicit in maerore manentem.
refuge to-people his whom he-beholds in sorrow remaining

XXVI · FIRE AND FAMINE IN THE CITY

The citadel Turks press so hard that three knights are trapped in a tower, where Hugh the Mad fights all day. When the men will not leave the houses, Bohemond sets fire to the city, and about two thousand churches and houses burn. The Franks wall off the citadel; a fire falls from heaven on the Turkish camp; and hunger drives the pilgrims to eat leaves, thistles, and hides.

Turci denique, qui erant seorsum in castello, undique tam
the-Turks finally who were apart in the-citadel on-all-sides so
mirabiliter coangustabant nos, ut quadam die incluserint
wondrously hemmed-in us that on-a-certain day they-shut-in
tres milites ex nostris in turrim, quae erat ante eorum
three knights of ours in a-tower which was before their
castellum. Exierant namque gentiles et irruerant super illos
citadel had-gone-out for the-gentiles and had-rushed upon them
tam acriter, ut nequirent sufferre pondus eorum. Duo ex
so fiercely that they-could-not bear the-weight of-them two of
militibus exierunt de turri vulnerati, et tertius per
the-knights went-out from the-tower wounded and the-third through
totam diem viriliter defendebat se de Turcorum invasione
the-whole day manfully defended himself from of-the-Turks the-attack
tam prudenter, ut in ipsa die duos Turcos straverit super
so prudently that on that-very day two Turks he-laid-low upon
aditum muri caesis hastis. Nam tres hastae detruncatae
the-approach of-the-wall broken the-spears for three spears cut-to-pieces
sunt in illa die in manibus suis. Illi vero acceperunt capitalem
were on that day in hands his they but received the-capital
sententiam. Erat nomen illi Hugo li Forcenez, de exercitu
sentence was the-name to-him Hugh the Mad from the-army
Gosfridi de Monte Scabioso. Videns autem vir venerabilis
of-Godfrey of Monte Scaglioso seeing moreover the-man venerable

Boamundus, quia nullatenus posset conducere gentes sursum
Bohemond that in-no-way he-could to-lead the-peoples up
in castellum ad bellum (nam qui erant inclusi in domibus,
to the-citadel for battle for those-who were shut-in in the-houses
timebant alii fame, alii timore Turcorum), iratus est valde
feared some from-hunger others from-fear of-the-Turks angered was greatly
iussitque confestim mitti ignem per urbem in illa parte,
and-ordered at-once to-be-put fire through the-city in that part
in qua erat Cassiani palatium. Quod videntes illi, qui erant
in which was of-Yaghi-Siyan the-palace which seeing those who were
in civitate, dereliquerunt domos et omnia, quae habebant,
in the-city abandoned the-houses and all-things which they-had
fugiebantque alii in castellum, alii ad portam comitis Sancti
and-fled some into the-citadel others to the-gate of-the-count of-Saint
Egidii, alii ad portam ducis Godefridi, unusquisque ad suam
Gilles others to the-gate of-duke Godfrey each to his-own
gentem. Tunc nimia tempestas venti subito surrexit, ita ut
people then an-excessive storm of-wind suddenly rose so that
nemo posset se regere rectum. Boamundus itaque vir
no-one could himself to-guide straight Bohemond and-so the-man
sapiens contristatus est valde, timens pro ecclesia Sancti Petri
wise saddened was greatly fearing for the-church of-Saint Peter
et Sanctae Mariae aliisque ecclesiis. Haec ira duravit ab
and of-Saint Mary and-the-other churches this wrath lasted from
hora tertia usque in mediam noctem, fueruntque crematae
the-hour third all-the-way into the-middle night and-there-were burned
fere II milia ecclesiarum et domorum. Veniente autem
almost two thousand of-churches and of-houses coming moreover
media nocte statim omnis feritas ignis cecidit. Itaque
the-middle night at-once all the-savagery of-the-fire fell and-so
Turci habitantes in castello intra urbem bellabant nobiscum
the-Turks dwelling in the-citadel within the-city made-war with-us

diu noctuque, et nihil aliud disseparabat nos nisi arma.
by-day and-by-night and nothing else separated us except arms
Videntes hoc nostri, quod non possent diu haec pati,
seeing this our-men that not they-could long these-things to-suffer
quoniam qui habebat panem, non licebat ei manducare,
since he-who had bread not it-was-allowed to-him to-eat
et qui habebat aquam, non licebat bibere, fecerunt
and who had water not it-was-allowed to-drink they-made
murum inter nos et ipsos petra et calce, et aedificaverunt
a-wall between us and them with-stone and lime and built
castellum et machinas, ut securi essent. Pars autem
a-castle and engines that secure they-might-be part moreover
Turcorum remansit in castello agendo nobiscum bellum, alia
of-the-Turks remained in the-citadel making with-us war the-other
vero pars hospitata erat prope castellum in una valle. Nocte
but part lodged had near the-citadel in a valley night
quippe superveniente ignis de caelo apparuit ab occidente
indeed coming-on a-fire from heaven appeared from the-west
veniens et appropinquans cecidit intra Turcorum exercitus,
coming and drawing-near fell within of-the-Turks the-army
unde mirati sunt et nostri et Turci. Mane autem facto
whence marveled have both our-men and the-Turks morning moreover made
tremefacti Turci fugerunt omnes pariter pro ignis timore
terrified the-Turks fled all together for of-the-fire fear
ante domini Boamundi portam, illicque hospitati sunt. Pars
before of-lord Bohemond the-gate and-there lodged have the-part
vero, quae erat in castello, agebat bellum cum nostris die
but which was in the-citadel made war with our-men by-day
noctuque sagittando, vulnerando, occidendo. Alia autem
and-by-night by-shooting-arrows by-wounding by-killing the-other moreover
pars undique obsedit civitatem, ita ut nullus nostrorum
part on-all-sides besieged the-city so that none of-ours

civitatem auderet exire aut intrare nisi nocte et occulte.
the-city dared to-go-out-of or to-enter except by-night and secretly
Ita vero eramus obsessi et oppressi ab illis paganis, inimicis
so indeed we-were besieged and oppressed by those pagans the-enemies
Dei et Christianitatis, quorum numerus fuit innumerabilis.
of-God and of-Christendom whose number was countless
Istique profani et inimici Dei ita tenebant nos inclusos
and-these profane-men and enemies of-God so held us shut-in
in urbe Antiochiae, ut multi mortui fuerint fame,
in the-city of-Antioch that many dead were of-hunger
quoniam parvus panis vendebatur uno bisantio, de vino non
since a-small loaf was-sold for-one bezant of wine not
loquar. Equinas namque carnes aut asininas manducabant
I-shall-speak horse for meat or asses' they-ate
et vendebant; vendebant quoque gallinam XV solidis,
and sold they-sold also a-hen for-fifteen shillings
ovum duobus solidis, unam nucem uno denario. Omnia
an-egg for-two shillings one nut for-one penny all-things
enim valde erant cara: folia fici, vitis et cardui
for very were dear the-leaves of-the-fig of-the-vine and of-the-thistle
omniumque arborum coquebant et manducabant, tantam
and-of-all trees they-cooked and ate such
famem immensam habebant. Alii coria caballorum et
hunger immense they-had others the-hides of-horses and
camelorum et asinorum atque boum seu bufalorum sicca
of-camels and of-asses and of-oxen or of-buffaloes dried
decoquebant et manducabant. Istas et multas anxietates ac
boiled-down and ate these and many anxieties and
angustias, quas nominare nequeo, passi sumus pro Christi
straits which to-name I-cannot suffered we-have for of-Christ

nomine et Sancti Sepulcri via deliberanda. Tales quoque
the-name and of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-road to-be-freed such also
tribulationes et fames ac timores passi sumus per XXVI dies.
tribulations and hungers and fears suffered we-have for twenty-six days

XXVII · STEPHEN OF BLOIS TURNS THE EMPEROR BACK

Stephen of Blois, count of Chartres and the army's chosen leader, feigns sickness, flees, and seeing the Turkish tents from a mountain tells the emperor at Philomelium that all are lost. The emperor turns back and lays the land waste. Bohemond's brother Guy weeps for Bohemond, then calls Stephen a half-dog whose word is false, but the army turns back, and many die on the road.

Imprudens itaque Stephanus, Carnotensis comes, quem omnes
the-imprudent and-so Stephen of-Chartres the-count whom all
nostri maiores elegerant, ut esset ductor nostrorum,
our greater-men had-chosen that he-should-be the-leader of-our-men
maxima se finxit deprimi infirmitate, priusquam
by-the-greatest himself feigned to-be-weighed-down sickness before
Antiochia esset capta, turpiterque recessit in aliud castrum,
Antioch was taken and-basely withdrew into another castle
quod vocatur Alexandreta. Nos itaque cotidie praestolabamur
which is-called Alexandretta we and-so daily awaited
eum, quatinus subveniret nobis in adiutorio, qui eramus
him so-that he-might-come-to-aid us in help who were
inclusi in urbe salutifero carentes auxilio. At ille, postquam
shut-in in the-city of-saving lacking aid but he after
audivit gentem Turcorum circumcingentem et obsidentem
he-heard the-people of-the-Turks surrounding and besieging
nos, latenter ascendit super proximam montaneam, quae
us secretly climbed onto the-nearest mountain which

stabat prope Antiochiam, viditque innumerabilia tentoria,
stood near Antioch and-saw countless tents
vehementique captus timore recessit, fugitque festinanter cum
and-by-vehement seized fear withdrew and-fled hastily with
suo exercitu. Veniens autem in suum castrum, exspoliavit
his army coming moreover into his castle he-despoiled
illud et celeri cursu retrovertitur. Postquam vero venit
it and with-swift course turns-back after indeed he-came
obviam imperatori ad Philomenam, seorsum vocavit eum
to-meet the-emperor at Philomelium apart he-called him
secreto dicens: Scias revera, quoniam capta est Antiochia
secretly saying you-should-know in-truth that taken is Antioch
et castrum minime captum est, nostrique omnes gravi
and the-citadel not-at-all taken is and-our-men all by-grievous
oppressione obsessi sunt et, ut puto, a Turcis modo interfecti
oppression besieged are and as I-think by the-Turks now killed
sunt. Revertere ergo retro quam citius potes, ne et ipsi
were return therefore back as quickly-as you-can lest also they
inveniant te et hanc gentem, quam tecum ducis. Tunc
find you and this people which with-you you-lead then
imperator timore perterritus clam vocavit Widonem, fratrem
the-emperor by-fear terrified secretly called Guy brother
Boamundi, et quosdam alios, et ait illis: Seniores, quid
of-Bohemond and certain others and said to-them lords what
faciemus? Ecce omnes nostri districta obsessione impediti sunt
shall-we-do behold all our-men by-tight siege hampered are
et forsitan in hac hora omnes a Turcorum manibus mortui
and perhaps in this hour all by of-the-Turks the-hands dead
sunt aut in captivitatem ducti, sicut iste infelix comes
are or into captivity led as this unhappy count
turpiter fugiens narrat. Si vultis, revertamur retro celeri
basely fleeing tells if you-wish let-us-return back with-swift

cursu, ne et nos moriamur repentina morte, quemadmodum
course lest also we die by-a-sudden death just-as
et illi mortui sunt. Cum Wido, miles honestissimus,
also they died have when Guy knight most-honorable
talia audisset fallacia, cum omnibus statim coepit plorare
such-things had-heard falsehoods with all at-once began to-weep
atque vehementissimo ululatu plangere, unaque voce omnes
and with-most-vehement howling to-lament and-with-one voice all
dicebant: O Deus verus, trinus et unus, quamobrem haec
said O God true threefold and one wherefore these-things
fieri permisisti? Cur populum sequentem te in manibus
to-be-done have-you-allowed why the-people following you into the-hands
inimicorum incidere permisisti et viam tui itineris
of-the-enemies to-fall have-you-allowed and the-road of-your journey
tuique Sepulcri liberare volentes tam cito dimisisti?
and-of-your Sepulcher to-free those-wishing so quickly have-you-abandoned
Certe, si verum est hoc verbum, quod ab istis nequissimis
certainly if true is this word which from these most-wicked-men
audivimus, nos et alii Christiani derelinquemus te, nec
we-have-heard we and other Christians shall-forsake you nor
te amplius rememorabimur, et unus ex nobis non audebit
you further shall-we-remember and one of us not shall-dare
ulterius invocare nomen tuum. Et fuit hic sermo maestissimus
further to-invoke name your and was this talk most-sorrowful
in tota militia, ita ut nullus illorum sive episcopus sive
in the-whole army so that none of-them whether bishop or
abbas seu clericus seu laicus auderet invocare Christi nomen
abbot or cleric or layman dared to-invoke of-Christ the-name
per plures dies. Nemo namque poterat consolari Widonem
for many days no-one for could console Guy
plorantem et ferientem se manibus suosque frangentem
weeping and striking himself with-hands and-his breaking

digitos et dicentem: Heu mihi! domine mi Boamunde,
fingers and saying alas for-me lord my Bohemond
honor et decus totius mundi, quem omnis mundus
honor and glory of-the-whole world whom all the-world
timebat et amabat! Heu mihi tristis! non merui dolens
feared and loved alas for-me sad not I-deserved grieving
tuam videre honestissimam speciem, qui nullam rem magis
your to-see most-honorable appearance who no thing more
videre desiderabam. Quis mihi det, ut ego moriar pro
to-see desired who for-me would-grant that I might-die for
te, dulcissime amice et domine? Cur ego ex utero matris
you sweetest friend and lord why I from the-womb of-mother
meae exiens non statim mortuus fui? Cur ad hanc lugubrem
my going-out not at-once dead was why to this mournful
diem perveni? Cur non demersus fui in mare? Cur non
day have-I-come why not drowned was-I in the-sea why not
ex equo cecidi fracto collo, ut recepissem repentinum
from my-horse did-I-fall broken my-neck that I-might-have-received sudden
interitum? Utinam tecum recepissem felix martyrium, ut
destruction would-that with-you I-had-received happy martyrdom that
cernerem te gloriosissimum recepisse finem! Cumque omnes
I-might-see you most-glorious to-have-received an-end and-when all
cucurrissent ad eum, quatinus consolarentur eum, ut iam
had-run to him so-that they-might-console him that now
finem daret planctui, in se reversus ait: Forsitan
an-end he-should-give to-the-lament into himself having-returned he-says perhaps
creditis huic semicano imprudenti militi? Unquam vere non
you-believe this half-dog imprudent knight ever truly not
audivi loqui de militia aliqua, quam idem fecisset.
I-have-heard speak of feat-of-arms any which the-same had-done
Sed turpiter et inhoneste recedit sicut nequissimus et
but basely and dishonorably he-withdraws like a-most-wicked and

infelix, et quicquid miser nuntiat, sciatis falsum esse.
unhappy-man and whatever the-wretch announces know false to-be
Interea iussit imperator suis hominibus dicens: Ite et
meanwhile ordered the-emperor his men saying go and
conducite omnes homines istius terrae in Bulgariam et
lead all the-men of-this land into Bulgaria and
explorate et devastate universa loca, ut, cum venerint
scour and lay-waste all places that when shall-have-come
Turci, nihil possint hic reperire. Voluissent noluissent
the-Turks nothing they-may-be-able here to-find willing-or unwilling
nostri, reversi sunt retrorsum dolentes amarissime usque ad
our-men returned have back grieving most-bitterly all-the-way to
mortem; fueruntque mortui multi ex peregrinis languentes
death and-there-were dead many of the-pilgrims languishing
nec valentes fortiter militiam sequi, remanebantque morientes
nor able strongly the-army to-follow and-they-remained dying
in via. Omnes vero alii reversi sunt Constantinopolim.
on the-road all but the-others returned have to-Constantinople

XXVIII · THE LANCE FOUND, AND ENVOYS TO KERBOGHA

Thirteen men dig all day in Saint Peter's church, and the pilgrim Peter finds the lance as he foretold, to great joy. The princes send Peter the Hermit and Herluin to ask Kerbogha why he has invaded Christian land, and to bid him withdraw, taking all his goods with him. Kerbogha answers that the Franks may have land and friendship if they become Turks, or else death or captivity.

Nos igitur, auditis sermonibus illius, qui nobis Christi
we therefore heard the-words of-him who to-us of-Christ
revelationem retulit per verba apostoli, statim festinantes
the-revelation reported through the-words of-the-apostle at-once hastening

pervenimus ad locum in Sancti Petri ecclesia, quem
came to the-place in of-Saint Peter the-church which
ille demonstraverat. Et foderunt ibi XIII homines a
he had-shown and dug there thirteen men from
mane usque ad vesperam: sicque homo ille invenit
morning all-the-way to evening and-thus man that found
lanceam, sicut indicaverat, et acceperunt illam cum magno
the-lance as he-had-indicated and they-received it with great
gaudio et timore; fuitque orta immensa laetitia in tota
joy and fear and-was arisen immense gladness in the-whole
urbe. Ab illa hora accepimus inter nos consilium belli.
city from that hour we-took among us counsel of-battle
Porro statuerunt omnes maiores nostri consilium, quatinus
further resolved all greater-men our a-council so-that
nuntium mitterent ad inimicos Christi Turcos, qui per
a-messenger they-should-send to the-enemies of-Christ the-Turks who through
aliquem interpretem interrogaret eos securo eloquio dicens:
some interpreter should-ask them with-secure eloquence saying
Quamobrem superbissime in Christianorum introissent
wherefore most-proudly into of-the-Christians they-had-entered
terram et cur castrametati sint et quare Christi servos
the-land and why encamped they-have and why of-Christ the-servants
occidant et conquassent. Cumque iam finis esset dictis,
they-kill and they-shatter and-when now an-end there-was to-the-words
invenerunt quosdam viros, Petrum scilicet heremitam et
they-found certain men Peter namely the-hermit and
Herluinum, illisque dixerunt haec omnia: Ite ad exsecratum
Herluin and-to-them said these all-things go to the-accursed
Turcorum exercitum et diligenter narrate eis haec
of-the-Turks army and diligently tell to-them these-things
omnia, interrogantes eos, cur audacter et superbissime
all asking them why boldly and most-proudly

introierint terram Christianorum et nostram. His dictis
they-have-entered the-land of-the-Christians and ours these said
recesserunt nuntii veneruntque ad profanum collegium,
withdrew the-messengers and-came to the-profane company
dicentes omnia missa verba Curbaram et aliis ita: Satis
saying all the-sent words to-Kerbogha and to-the-others thus enough
multumque mirantur nostri maiores et seniores, quamobrem
and-much marvel our greater-men and lords wherefore
temere ac superbissime in Christianorum introistis terram
rashly and most-proudly into of-the-Christians you-have-entered the-land
et illorum. Putamus forsitan et credimus, quia huc ideo
and theirs we-think perhaps and believe that hither for-this
venistis, quoniam per omnia vultis effici Christiani; aut
you-have-come because in all-things you-wish to-be-made Christians or
propterea igitur huc venistis, ut per omnia Christianos
on-that-account therefore hither you-have-come that in all-things the-Christians
afficiatis? Rogant vos igitur omnes pariter nostri maiores, ut
you-may-afflict ask you therefore all together our greater-men that
velociter recedatis a terra Dei et Christianorum, quam
swiftly you-withdraw from the-land of-God and of-the-Christians which
beatus Petrus apostolus iam dudum praedicando ad Christi
blessed Peter the-apostle long since by-preaching to of-Christ
culturam convertit. At illi permittunt adhuc vobiscum deduci
the-worship converted but they allow still with-you to-be-led
omnia vestra: scilicet equos et mulos, asinos et camelos,
all-things your namely horses and mules asses and camels
oves et boves et omnia alia ornamenta permittunt vobiscum,
sheep and oxen and all other furnishings they-allow with-you
quocumque volueritis, ferre. Tunc Curbaram, princeps
wherever you-shall-have-wished to-carry then Kerbogha the-prince
militiae Soldani Persidis, cum omnibus aliis, pleni superbia,
of-the-army of-the-Sultan of-Persia with all the-others full of-pride

feroci respondere sermone: Deum vestrum et vestram
with-fierce to-answer speech God your and your
Christianitatem nec optamus nec volumus, vosque cum
Christianity neither we-desire nor wish and-you with
illis omnino respuimus. Huc usque iam venimus, eo
them wholly we-spit-out hither up-to now we-have-come for-the-reason
quod valde miramur, quamobrem seniores ac maiores, quos
that greatly we-marvel wherefore the-lords and greater-men whom
memoratis, cur terram, quam abstulimus effeminatis gentibus,
you-mention why the-land which we-took-away from-effeminate peoples
illi vocant esse suam. Vultis namque scire quid vobis
they call to-be theirs do-you-wish for to-know what to-you
dicimus? Revertimini ergo quantocius et dicite vestris
we-say return therefore with-all-speed and say to-your
senioribus, quia, si per omnia cupiunt effici Turci et
lords that if in all-things they-desire to-be-made Turks and
Deum vestrum, quem vos inclini colitis, abnegare volunt et
God your whom you bowed worship to-deny they-wish and
leges vestras spernere, nos illis hanc et satis plus dabimus
the-laws your to-spurn we to-them this and enough more shall-give
de terra et civitates et castella; adhuc autem quod nemo
of land and cities and castles further moreover that none
vestrorum remanebit pedes, sed erunt omnes milites, sicut
of-yours shall-remain a-foot-soldier but they-shall-be all knights as
et nos sumus; et habebimus semper eos in summa amicitia.
also we are and we-shall-have always them in the-highest friendship
Sin autem, sciant se per omnia capitalem subire
but-if-not moreover let-them-know themselves in all-things the-capital to-undergo
sententiam aut deducti in vinculis Corrozanam in captivitate
sentence or led in chains to-Khorasan in captivity
perpetua servient nobis nostrisque infantibus per sempiterna
perpetual they-shall-serve us and-our children through everlasting

tempora. Nuntii vero nostri velociter reversi sunt retrorsum,
times the-messengers but our swiftly returned have back
referentes omnia, quae respondisset eis gens crudelissima.
reporting all-things which had-answered them the-most-cruel people
Fertur Herluinus utramque scisse linguam fuitque interpres
is-said Herluin both to-have-known tongue and-was interpreter
Petro Eremitae. Interea exercitus noster in utraque tremefactus
to-Peter the-hermit meanwhile army our on both terrified
parte ignorabat quid faceret: ex una enim parte coangustabat
side knew-not what it-should-do on one for side hemmed-in
eos cruciabilis fames, in alia constringebat timor Turcorum.
them tormenting hunger on the-other constrained the-fear of-the-Turks

XXIX · THE GREAT BATTLE OF ANTIOCH

After three days' fasting and processions, six battle-lines march out, the bishop of Le Puy bearing the lance, while clergy march with them praying and others bless them from the wall. Kerbogha lets them come out, then falters; a seventh line meets a flanking force; and a host on white horses led by Saints George, Mercurius, and Demetrius comes to help. The Turks flee, the citadel surrenders to Bohemond, and its emir is baptized. The battle is fought on June 28.

Tandem triduanis expletis ieiuniis et processionibus celebratis
at-length three-day completed fasts and processions celebrated
ab una ecclesia in aliam, de peccatis suis confessi
from one church to another of sins their confessed
sunt et absoluti, fideliterque corpori et sanguini Christi
have and absolved and-faithfully in-the-body and blood of-Christ
communicaverunt: datisque eleemosynis fecerunt celebrari
communicated and-given alms they-caused to-be-celebrated
missas. Deinde stabilitae sunt VI acies ex eis intra
masses then established were six battle-lines of them within

civitatem: in prima vero acie, in primo videlicet capite,
the-city in the-first indeed battle-line in the-first namely head
fuit Hugo Magnus cum Francigenis et Flandrensi comite;
was Hugh the-Great with the-French-born and the-Flemish count
in secunda dux Godefridus cum suo exercitu; in tertia vero
in the-second duke Godfrey with his army in the-third indeed
fuit Rotbertus Nortmannus cum suis militibus; in quarta
was Robert the-Norman with his knights in the-fourth
fuit Podiensis episcopus, portans secum lanceam Salvatoris,
was of-Le-Puy the-bishop carrying with-himself the-lance of-the-Savior
cum sua gente et cum exercitu Raimundi comitis Sancti
with his people and with the-army of-Raymond the-count of-Saint
Egidii, qui remansit sursum custodire castellum pro timore
Gilles who remained up to-guard the-citadel for fear
Turcorum, ne descenderent in civitatem; in quinta acie
of-the-Turks lest they-should-come-down into the-city in the-fifth battle-line
fuit Tancredus, Marchisi filius, cum sua gente; in sexta
was Tancred of-the-Marquis son with his people in the-sixth
etenim fuit vir sapiens Boamundus cum sua militia.
indeed was the-man wise Bohemond with his army
Episcopi nostri et presbyteri et clerici ac monachi sacris
bishops our and presbyters and clerics and monks in-sacred
vestibus induti nobiscum exierunt cum crucibus, orantes et
vestments clothed with-us went-out with crosses praying and
deprecantes Dominum, ut nos salvos faceret et custodiret
entreating the-Lord that us safe he-should-make and should-guard
et ab omnibus malis eriperet. Alii stabant super murum
and from all evils should-rescue others stood upon the-wall
portae, tenentes sacras cruces in manibus suis, signando
of-the-gate holding holy crosses in hands their signing
et benedicendo nos. Ita nos ordinati et signo crucis
and blessing us so we ordered and by-the-sign of-the-cross

protecti exivimus per portam, quae est ante Machomariam.
protected went-out through the-gate which is before the-Mahomerie
Postquam Curbaram vidit Francorum acies tam pulchre
after Kerbogha saw of-the-Franks the-battle-lines so beautifully
ordinatas exire unam post aliam, dixit: Sinite eos exire,
ordered go-out one after another he-said allow them to-go-out
ut melius eos habeamus in potestate nostra. Postquam vero
that better them we-may-have in power our after indeed
fuerunt foris de urbe viditque Curbaram ingentem Francorum
they-were outside of the-city and-saw Kerbogha the-huge of-the-Franks
gentem, valde timuit. Mox mandavit suo amiralio, qui omnia
people greatly he-feared soon he-sent-word to-his emir who all-things
habebat in custodia, ut, si ille videret ignem accensum
had in keeping that if he should-see a-fire kindled
in capite hostis, protinus praeconari faceret omnem
at the-head of-the-army at-once to-be-proclaimed he-should-cause the-whole
exercitum redire, sciens Turcos amisisse bellum. Continuo
army to-return knowing the-Turks to-have-lost the-battle at-once
Curbaram coepit paulatim redire retro contra montaneam,
Kerbogha began little-by-little to-go-back back toward the-mountain
nostrique paulatim persequebantur illos. Denique divisi sunt
and-our-men little-by-little pursued them finally divided were
Turci: una pars ivit contra mare, et alii steterunt illic,
the-Turks one part went toward the-sea and others stood there
putantes nostros includere inter se. Videntes hoc nostri,
thinking our-men to-shut-in between themselves seeing this our-men
fecerunt similiter. Illic fuit ordinata acies septena ex
did likewise there was ordered a-battle-line seventh from
acie ducis Godefridi et comitis Nortmanniae, et
the-battle-line of-the-duke Godfrey and of-the-count of-Normandy and
caput illius fuit Reinaldus. Hanc miserunt obviam Turcis,
the-head of-it was Rainald this-one they-sent to-meet the-Turks

qui veniebant a mari. Turci autem proeliati sunt cum illis
who came from the-sea the-Turks moreover fought have with them
et sagittando multos occiderunt ex nostris. Aliae autem
and by-shooting-arrows many killed of our-men the-other moreover
turmae ordinatae sunt a flumine usque ad montaneam,
squadrons ordered were from the-river all-the-way to the-mountain
quod distat per II milliaria. Coeperunt vero turmae
which is-distant by two miles began indeed the-squadrons
ex utraque parte exire nostrosque undique circumcingere
from both side to-go-out and-our-men on-all-sides to-surround
iaculando, sagittando, vulnerando. Exibant quoque de
by-hurling by-shooting-arrows by-wounding went-out also from
montaneis innumerabiles exercitus, habentes equos albos,
the-mountains countless armies having horses white
quorum vexilla omnia erant alba. Videntes itaque nostri
whose banners all were white seeing and-so our-men
hunc exercitum, ignorabant penitus, quid hoc esset et qui
this army knew-not at-all what this might-be and who
essent, donec cognoverunt esse adiutorium Christi, cuius
they-were until they-knew it-to-be the-help of-Christ whose
ductores fuerunt Sancti Georgius, Mercurius et Demetrius.
leaders were the-Saints George Mercurius and Demetrius
Haec verba credenda sunt, quia plures ex nostris viderunt.
these words to-be-believed are because many of ours saw-it
Turci autem, qui stabant in parte maris, videntes, quod
the-Turks moreover who stood on the-side of-the-sea seeing that
non possent suffere amplius, miserunt ignem in herbam,
not they-could to-bear further put fire in the-grass
ut videntes illi, qui erant in tentoriis, fugerent. At illi,
that seeing those who were in the-tents should-flee but they
cognoscentes illud signum, arripuerunt omnia honorabilia
knowing that signal snatched-up all the-honorable

spolia et fugerunt. Nostri vero paulatim militabant, ubi
spoils and fled our-men but little-by-little fought where
maxima virtus eorum erat, scilicet ad tentoria illorum. Dux
the-greatest power of-them was namely at the-tents of-them duke
Godefridus et Flandrensis comes et Hugo magnus equitabant
Godfrey and the-Flemish count and Hugh the-Great rode
iuxta aquam, ubi virtus illorum erat. Isti primitus signo
beside the-water where the-power of-them was these first with-the-sign
crucis muniti unanimiter invaserunt illos. Videntes hoc
of-the-cross fortified with-one-mind attacked them seeing this
aliae acies, simili modo invaserunt illos, exclamaverunt
the-other battle-lines in-like way attacked them shouted
autem Persae et Turci. Nos itaque invocantes Deum
moreover the-Persians and Turks we and-so invoking God
vivum et verum equitavimus contra illos et in nomine
living and true rode against them and in the-name
Jesu Christi et Sancti Sepulchri incepimus bellum et Deo
of-Jesus Christ and of-the-Holy Sepulcher we-began the-battle and God
iuvante devicimus eos. Turci vero tremefacti arripuerunt
helping we-conquered them the-Turks but terrified took-up
fugam, nostrique illos persequebantur iuxta tentoria. Itaque
flight and-our-men them pursued beside the-tents and-so
milites Christi magis amabant persequi illos quam ulla
the-knights of-Christ more loved to-pursue them than any
spolia quaerere. Et persecuti sunt eos usque ad Pontem
spoils to-seek and pursued have them all-the-way to the-Bridge
Farreum ac deinde usque ad castellum Tancredi. Illi vero
Iron and then all-the-way to the-castle of-Tancred they but
dimiserunt ibi papiliones suos et aurum et argentum
left there tents their and gold and silver
multaque ornamenta, oves quoque et boves, equos et mulos,
and-many furnishings sheep also and oxen horses and mules

camelos et asinos, frumentum et vinum, farinam et alia
camels and asses grain and wine flour and other
multa, quae nobis erant necessaria. Hermenii et Suriani,
many-things which to-us were necessary the-Armenians and Syrians
qui habitabant in illis partibus, audientes nos superasse
who dwelt in those parts hearing us to-have-overcome
Turcos, cucurrerunt ad montaneam obviantes illis, et quantos
the-Turks ran to the-mountain meeting them and as-many-as
comprehenderunt ex illis, interfecerunt. Nos autem revertentes
they-caught of them they-killed we moreover returning
ad civitatem cum magno gaudio laudavimus et benediximus
to the-city with great joy praised and blessed
Deum, qui victoriam dedit populo suo. Ammiralius itaque,
God who victory gave to-people his the-emir and-so
qui castellum custodiebat, videns Curbaram et omnes
who the-citadel guarded seeing Kerbogha and all
alios fugientes e campo ante Francorum exercitum,
the-others fleeing from the-field before of-the-Franks the-army
magis timuit: statim vero cum magna festinatione petebat
more feared at-once indeed with great haste he-sought
Francorum vexilla. Comes igitur Sancti Egidii, qui illic
of-the-Franks the-banners the-count therefore of-Saint Gilles who there
astabat ante castellum, iussit ei portari suum vexillum.
stood-by before the-citadel ordered to-him to-be-carried his banner
Ille autem accepit illud et diligenter misit in turrim. Statim
he moreover received it and diligently put-it into the-tower at-once
dixerunt Longobardi, qui illic stabant: Hoc vexillum non est
said the-Lombards who there stood this banner not is
Boamundi. Interrogavit ille et dixit: Cuius est? Qui dixerunt:
of-Bohemond asked he and said whose is-it who said
Sancti Egidii comitis. Accessit ille et apprehenso vexillo
of-Saint Gilles the-count approached he and seized the-banner

reddidit comiti. Ipsa vero hora venit vir venerabilis
gave-it-back to-the-count in-that-very indeed hour came the-man venerable
Boamundus deditque illi suum vexillum; ille autem illud
Bohemond and-gave him his banner he moreover it
accepit cum magno gaudio et iniit pactum cum domino
received with great joy and entered a-pact with lord
Boamundo, ut pagani, qui vellent christianitatem recipere,
Bohemond that the-pagans who wished Christianity to-receive
essent cum eo, et qui vellent abire, sanos et absque
should-be with him and who wished to-go-away sound and without
ulla laesione abire permitteret. Consensit ille quicquid
any harm to-go-away he-should-allow agreed he whatever
ammiralius postulavit, et continuo misit suos servientes in
the-emir asked and at-once sent his servants into
castellum. Non post multos dies baptizatus est ammiralius
the-citadel not after many days baptized was the-emir
cum illis, qui Christum recognoscere maluerunt. Illos vero,
with those who Christ to-acknowledge preferred those but
qui suas voluerunt tenere leges, fecit dominus Boamundus
who their wished to-keep laws caused lord Bohemond
conduci in Saracenorum terram. Hoc bellum factum est
to-be-led into of-the-Saracens the-land this battle done was
in IVº. Kalendas Julii, in vigilia apostolorum Petri
on the-fourth-day-before the-Kalends of-July on the-vigil of-the-apostles Peter
et Pauli, regnante Domino nostro Jesu Christo, cui est
and Paul reigning Lord our Jesus Christ to-whom is
honor et gloria in sempiterna saecula. Amen.
honor and glory to everlasting ages amen

The princes send Hugh the Great to summon the emperor to take over the city; Hugh goes and never returns. The princes wait for November, since the land is dry in summer, and Raymond Pilet takes Talamania and a Saracen castle but is routed before Marra. In the city the bishop of Le Puy dies on August 1, mourned as the support of the poor, whom he urged the knights to honor.

Et cum iam essent omnes inimici nostri — Deo trino et
and when now were all enemies our to-God threefold and
uno summoque dignas referimus grates — per omnia devicti,
one and-highest worthy we-render thanks in all-things conquered
huc illucque fugientes, alii semivivi, alii vulnerati in vallibus
hither and-thither fleeing some half-alive others wounded in the-valleys
et in nemoribus et in arvis et in viis deficiebant mortui.
and in the-groves and in the-fields and on the-roads they-failed dead
Populus vero Christi, victores scilicet peregrini, reversi sunt
the-people but of-Christ the-victors namely the-pilgrims returned have
gaudentes felici triumpho, devictis hostibus, in civitatem.
rejoicing in-the-happy triumph conquered the-foes into the-city
Statim omnes nostri seniores, videlicet dux Godefridus, comes
at-once all our lords namely duke Godfrey the-count
Sancti Egidii Raimundus, Boamundus, comes Nortmanniae
of-Saint Gilles Raymond Bohemond the-count of-Normandy
dominus Rotbertus, comesque Flandrensis et alii omnes
lord Robert and-the-count of-Flanders and others all
miserunt nobilissimum militem Hugonem Magnum imperatori
sent the-most-noble knight Hugh the-Great to-the-emperor
Constantinopolim, ut ad recipiendam civitatem veniret et
to-Constantinople that for receiving the-city he-should-come and
conventiones, quas erga illos habebat, expleret: ivit nec postea
the-covenants which toward them he-had should-fulfill he-went nor afterward

rediit. Postquam vero haec omnia facta sunt, congregati
returned after indeed these-things all done were gathered
omnes nostri maiores ordinaverunt concilium, quemadmodum
all our greater-men ordained a-council how
hunc feliciter valerent conducere et regere populum, donec
this happily they-might-be-able to-lead and to-rule people until
peragerent iter Sancti Sepulcri, pro quo huc usque
they-should-complete the-journey of-the-Holy Sepulcher for which hither up-to
multa erant passi pericula. Inventum est in concilio, quia
many they-had suffered perils found it-was in the-council that
nondum auderent intrare in paganorum terram, eo
not-yet they-should-dare to-enter into of-the-pagans the-land for-the-reason
quod valde in aestivo tempore est arida et inaquosa: ideoque
that greatly in the-summer time it-is dry and waterless and-therefore
acceperunt terminum attendendum ad Kalendas Novembris.
they-took a-term to-be-awaited to the-Kalends of-November
Denique divisi sunt seniores, et unusquisque profectus est in
finally divided were the-lords and each set-out has into
terram suam, donec esset terminus eundi, feceruntque principes
land his until should-be the-term of-going and-made the-princes
praeconari per universam urbem, ut, si forte aliquis egens
to-be-proclaimed through all the-city that if perhaps anyone needy
illic adesset et auro et argento careret, conventione facta cum
there were-present and of-gold and silver lacked covenant made with
illis remanere si vellet, ab eis cum gaudio retentus esset.
them to-remain if he-wished by them with joy retained he-would-be
Erat autem ibi quidam miles de exercitu comitis Sancti
there-was moreover there a-certain knight from the-army of-the-count of-Saint
Egidii, cui nomen Raimundus Piletus; hic plurimos
Gilles to-whom the-name Raymond Pilet he very-many
retinuit homines, milites et pedites. Egressus est ille cum
retained men knights and foot-soldiers went-out has he with

collecto exercitu et viriliter introiit in Saracenorum terram
gathered army and manfully entered into of-the-Saracens the-land
et profectus est ultra duas civitates et pervenit ad quoddam
and set-out has beyond two cities and came to a-certain
castrum, cui nomen Talamania. Habitatores castri, scilicet
castle to-which the-name Talamania the-inhabitants of-the-castle namely
Suriani, confestim sua sponte se tradiderunt ei.
Syrians at-once of-their own-accord themselves surrendered to-him
Cumque omnes essent ibi fere per VIII dies, nuntii venerunt
and-when all were there almost for eight days messengers came
ad eum dicentes: Quoniam hic prope nos est castrum
to him saying that here near us is a-castle
Saracenorum multitudine plenum. Ad hoc castrum ilico ierunt
of-Saracens with-a-multitude full to this castle at-once went
Christi milites peregrini et undique invaserunt illud, quod
of-Christ the-knights pilgrims and on-all-sides attacked it which
continuo ab illis captum est Christi adiutorio. Apprehenderunt
at-once by them taken was of-Christ with-the-help they-seized
igitur omnes illius loci colonos, et qui christianitatem
therefore all of-that place the-farmers and who Christianity
recipere noluerunt, occiderunt, qui vero Christum recognoscere
to-receive were-unwilling they-killed who but Christ to-acknowledge
maluerunt, vivos conservarunt. Reversi sunt itaque hoc peracto
preferred alive they-kept returned have and-so this completed
nostri Franci cum magno gaudio ad prius castrum. Tertia
our Franks with great joy to the-former castle on-the-third
vero die exierunt et venerunt ad quamdam urbem, cui
indeed day they-went-out and came to a-certain city to-which
nomen Marra, quae illic erat prope illos. Erant autem ibi
the-name Marra which there was near them were moreover there
multi Turci congregati et Saraceni ab Aleph civitate et ab
many Turks gathered and Saracens from Aleppo the-city and from

omnibus urbibus et castris, quae circa illam sunt. Exierunt
all the-cities and castles which around it are went-out
ergo barbari contra illos ad bellum, nostrique aestimantes
therefore the-barbarians against them to battle and-our-men thinking
luctari cum illis proeliando, coegerunt eos in fugam, et
to-wrestle with them by-fighting drove them into flight and
tamen reversi, per totum diem invadebant nostros
yet having-returned through the-whole day they-attacked our-men
adinvicem; et usque ad vesperam perduravit illa invasio.
by-turns and all-the-way to evening lasted that attack
Aestus namque erat immensus; nequibant iam nostri sufferre
the-heat for was immense could-not now our-men bear
tantam sitim, quoniam nullatenus ad bibendum invenire
such thirst since in-no-way for drinking to-find
ibi aquam poterant; voluerunt tamen ad illorum castrum
there water they-could they-wished yet to their castle
secure redire. Pro illorum enim peccatis Suriani et minuta
securely to-return for of-them for the-sins the-Syrians and the-small
gens nimio pavore correpti, mox coeperunt viam carpere
people by-excessive terror seized soon began the-road to-take
retrorsum. Ut autem Turci viderunt illos retrocedentes,
backward as moreover the-Turks saw them going-back
statim coeperunt illos persequi, et victoria illis ministrabat
at-once they-began them to-pursue and victory to-them supplied
vires, multi namque ex ipsis reddiderunt animas Deo,
strength many for of them gave-back souls to-God
cuius amore illic congregati fuerant. Haec occisio facta est
whose for-love there gathered they-had-been this slaughter done was
V^{o} die in mense Julio. Reversi sunt autem Franci illi,
on-the-fifth day in the-month of-July returned have moreover the-Franks those
qui remanserant, in suum castrum, et fuit ibi Raimundus
who had-remained into their castle and was there Raymond

cum sua gente per plures dies. Alii vero, qui in Antiochia
with his people for many days others but who in Antioch
remanserant, steterunt in ea cum gaudio et laetitia magna,
had-remained stayed in it with joy and gladness great
quorum rector et pastor extitit Podiensis episcopus, qui
of-whom the-ruler and shepherd stood-forth of-Le-Puy the-bishop who
nutu Dei gravi aegritudine captus est et, ut Dei
by-the-nod of-God by-grievous sickness seized was and as of-God
voluntas fuit, migravit ab hoc saeculo et in pace requiescens
the-will was departed from this world and in peace resting
obdormivit in Domino, in solemnitate scilicet sancti Petri
fell-asleep in the-Lord on the-solemnity namely of-Saint Peter
quae dicitur ad Vincula. Unde magna angustia et tribulatio
which is-called in Chains whence great distress and tribulation
immensusque dolor fuit in tota Christi militia, quia ille
and-immense grief was in the-whole of-Christ army because he
erat sustentamentum pauperum, consilium divitum, ipseque
was the-support of-the-poor the-counsel of-the-rich and-he
ordinabat clericos, praedicabat et summonebat milites dicens:
ordered the-clerics preached and admonished the-knights saying
Quia nemo ex vobis salvari potest, nisi honorificet pauperes
that no-one of you to-be-saved can unless be-honor the-poor
et reficiat, vosque non potestis salvari sine illis, ipsique
and refresh-them and-you not can be-saved without them and-they
vivere nequeunt sine vobis: Oportet igitur, ut ipsi cotidiana
to-live cannot without you it-behooves therefore that they with-daily
supplicatione pro vestris orent delictis Deum, quem in
supplication for your should-pray offenses God whom in
multis cotidie offenditis, unde vos rogo, ut pro Dei
many-things daily you-offend whence you I-ask that for of-God
amore eos diligatis et in quantum potestis eos sustentetis.
love them you-love and in as-much-as you-can them you-sustain

Raymond takes Albara, kills its Saracens, and has a bishop chosen for it, who is taken to Antioch to be consecrated. At All Saints the princes gather in Antioch, but Bohemond claims the city under the old covenant, while Raymond holds to his oath to the emperor. The judges fear to rule; Raymond agrees to accept the peers' judgment, saving the emperor's fealty, and each fortifies his own part of the city.

Non post multum vero temporis venit vir venerabilis
not after much indeed of-time came the-man venerable
Raimundus, comes de Sancto Egidio, et intravit in
Raymond count of Saint Gilles and entered into
Saracenorum terram et pervenit ad quamdam urbem, quae
of-the-Saracens the-land and came to a-certain city which
vocatur Albara, quam invasit una cum suo exercitu,
is-called Albara which he-attacked together with his army
eamque continuo cepit; et occidit omnes Saracenos et
and-it at-once took and killed all the-Saracens and
Saracenas, maiores et minores, quos ibi reperit. Quam
the-Saracen-women greater and lesser whom there he-found which
postquam suo continuit imperio, ad Christi revocavit fidem,
after by-his he-held command to of-Christ he-called-back the-faith
quaesivitque consilium a suis sapientissimis viris, ut
and-sought counsel from his most-wise men that
episcopum in hac urbe devotissime praeordinari faceret, qui
a-bishop in this city most-devoutly to-be-preordained he-might-cause who
illam ad Christi cultum fideliter revocaret et de domo
it to of-Christ the-worship faithfully should-call-back and from a-house
diabolica templum Deo vivo et vero et oracula Sanctorum
devilish a-temple to-God living and true and oratories of-the-Saints
consecraret. Novissime elegerunt quemdam honorabilem ac
should-consecrate at-the-last they-chose a-certain honorable and

sapientissimum virum et duxere illum in Antiochiam ad
most-wise man and led him into Antioch for
consecrandum; factumque est ita. Alii autem, qui in
being-consecrated and-done was so the-others moreover who in
Antiochia remanserant, fuerunt ibidem cum gaudio
Antioch had-remained were in-the-same-place with joy
et laetitia. Appropinquante vero termino, videlicet festo
and gladness drawing-near indeed the-term namely on-the-feast
Omnium Sanctorum, regressi sunt omnes maiores nostri in
of-All Saints returned have all greater-men our into
unum in Antiochiam, omnesque simul coeperunt quaerere,
one into Antioch and-all together began to-seek
qualiter iter Sancti Sepulcri valerent peragere,
how the-journey of-the-Holy Sepulcher they-might-be-able to-complete
dicentes: Quoniam appropinquaverat eundi terminus, nulla
saying since there-had-drawn-near of-going the-term no
erat hora conturbandi amplius! Boamundus autem quaerebat
was hour of-disturbing further Bohemond moreover sought
cotidie conventionem, quam omnes seniores olim habuerant
daily the-covenant which all the-lords once had-had
ei in reddendam civitatem; sed comes Sancti Egidii ad
with-him in surrendering the-city but the-count of-Saint Gilles to
nullam conventionem volebat se emollire erga Boamundum,
no covenant wished himself to-soften toward Bohemond
eo quod timebat se peierare erga imperatorem;
for-the-reason that he-feared himself to-perjure toward the-emperor
tamen saepe fuerunt congregati in ecclesia Sancti Petri
yet often they-were gathered in the-church of-Saint Peter
ad faciendum quod iustum erat. Boamundus recitavit suam
for doing what just was Bohemond recited his
conventionem suumque ostendit compotum. Comes Sancti
covenant and-his showed account the-count of-Saint

Egidii similiter sua patefecit verba et iusiurandum, quod
Gilles likewise his laid-open words and the-oath which
fecerat imperatori per consilium Boamundi. Episcopi et dux
he-had-made to-the-emperor by the-counsel of-Bohemond the-bishops and duke
Godefridus, Flandrensisque comes et comes de Nortmannia
Godfrey and-the-Flemish count and the-count of Normandy
aliique seniores divisi sunt ab aliis et intraverunt ubi
and-other lords divided were from the-others and entered where
est cathedra Sancti Petri, ut ibi iudicium inter utrumque
is the-throne of-Saint Peter that there judgment between both
discernerent. Postea vero timentes, ne Sancti Sepulcri
they-might-decide afterward indeed fearing lest of-the-Holy Sepulcher
via perturbaretur, noluerunt aperte iudicium dicere.
the-road be-disturbed they-were-unwilling openly the-judgment to-speak
Ait denique comes Sancti Egidii: Priusquam via Sancti
says finally the-count of-Saint Gilles before the-road of-the-Holy
Sepulcri remaneat, si Boamundus nobiscum venire voluerit,
Sepulcher remain if Bohemond with-us to-come shall-have-wished
quicquid nostri pares, videlicet dux Godefridus et Flandrensis
whatever our peers namely duke Godfrey and the-Flemish
comes et Rotbertus Nortmannus aliique seniores laudaverint,
count and Robert the-Norman and-other lords shall-have-approved
ego fideliter consentiam salva fidelitate imperatoris. Hoc
I faithfully shall-consent saving the-fealty of-the-emperor this
totum laudavit Boamundus, et promiserunt ambo in manibus
all approved Bohemond and promised both in the-hands
episcoporum, quod nullo modo per se via Sancti
of-the-bishops that in-no way through them the-road of-the-Holy
Sepulcri deturbaretur. Tunc accepit Boamundus consilium
Sepulcher would-be-disturbed then took Bohemond counsel
cum suis hominibus, quomodo muniret castrum de alta
with his men how he-should-fortify the-castle of the-high

montanea hominibus et victu. Similiter comes Sancti Egidii
mountain with-men and food likewise the-count of-Saint Gilles
accepit consilium cum suis, quomodo muniret palatium
took counsel with his-men how he-should-fortify the-palace
Cassiani admiralii et turrim, quae est super portam pontis,
of-Yaghi-Siyan the-emir and the-tower which is over the-gate of-the-bridge
qui est ex parte Portus Sancti Simeonis, muniret, inquam,
which is on the-side of-the-Port of-Saint Simeon should-fortify I-say
hominibus et victu, qui non deficeret longo tempore.
with-men and food which not would-fail for-a-long time

XXXII · THE CITY OF ANTIOCH

Antioch is a beautiful city with four great mountains within its walls and a wondrous citadel on the highest. It has three hundred and sixty monasteries, a patriarch with a hundred and fifty-three bishops, a double wall, and four hundred and fifty towers, with the Farfar flowing by. Seventy-five kings founded it; the Franks besieged it eight months, were besieged three weeks, and rested there five months.

Haec urbs Antiochia scilicet valde est pulchra et honorabilis,
this city Antioch namely very is beautiful and honorable
quia infra muros eius sunt IV montaneae maximae et nimis
because within walls its are four mountains very-great and very
altae. In altiori quoque est castellum aedificatum, mirabile et
high on the-higher also is a-citadel built wondrous and
nimis forte. De deorsum est civitas honorabilis et conveniens
very strong from below is the-city honorable and fitting
omnibusque ornata honoribus, quoniam multae ecclesiae sunt
and-with-all adorned honors since many churches are
in ea aedificatae; CCC et LX monasteria in se continet.
in it built three-hundred and sixty monasteries in itself it-holds

Sub suo iugo continet patriarcha CLIII episcopos.
under its yoke holds the-patriarch a-hundred-and-fifty-three bishops
Clauditur civitas duobus muris, maior quoque valde est altus
is-enclosed the-city by-two walls the-greater also very is high
et mirabiliter latus magnisque lapidibus compositus, in quo
and wondrously broad and-of-great stones composed in which
sunt ordinatae CCCCL turres; modisque omnibus est
are ordered four-hundred-and-fifty towers and-in-ways all is
civitas formosa; ab oriente clauditur IV magnis montaneis;
the-city beautiful from the-east it-is-enclosed by-four great mountains
ab occidente secus muros urbis fluit quoddam flumen,
on the-west along the-walls of-the-city flows a-certain river
cui nomen Farfar: et ita noluerunt stulte neque
to-which the-name Farfar and so they-were-unwilling foolishly nor
inane dimittere regalem civitatem Antiochiam, quae tantae
idly to-give-up the-royal city Antioch which of-such
auctoritatis fuit, quod eam prius LXXV reges constituerunt,
authority was that it before seventy-five kings established
quorum fuit caput Antiochus rex, a quo dicitur
of-whom was the-head Antiochus the-king from whom it-is-called
Antiochia. Istam civitatem tenuerunt Franci obsessam per
Antioch this city held the-Franks besieged for
VIII menses et unum diem, postea fuerunt intus inclusi per
eight months and one day afterward they-were inside shut-in for
III hebdomadas a Turcis et ab aliis paganis, quorum numero
three weeks by the-Turks and by other pagans than-whose number
nunquam fuit maior congregatio hominum vel Christianorum
never was a-greater gathering of-men either of-Christians
vel paganorum. Tamen adiutorio Dei et Sancti Sepulcri
or of-pagans yet with-the-help of-God and of-the-Holy Sepulcher

devictis illis a Christianis Dei, requievimus cum gaudio et
conquered them by the-Christians of-God we-rested with joy and
laetitia magna in Antiochia per V menses et VIII dies.
gladness great in Antioch for five months and eight days

XXXIII · THE SIEGE OF MARRA

In November Raymond besieges Marra, joined by Bohemond. Ladders fail, so Raymond builds a wooden tower on wheels from which William of Montpellier and others hurl stones. Gouffier of Lastours climbs the wall, the Saracens flee as the wall is undermined, and the city falls on December 11. Bohemond robs, kills, or sells those he promised to shelter, and the starving Franks eat the dead.

Quibus expletis, mense Novembrio discessit Raimundus
which completed in-the-month of-November departed Raymond
comes Sancti Egidii cum suo exercitu ab Antiochia,
count of-Saint Gilles with his army from Antioch
venitque per unam civitatem, quae vocatur Rugia, et
and-came through one city which is-called Rugia and
per aliam, quae dicitur Albaria. Quarto vero die exeunte
through another which is-called Albara on-the-fourth indeed day going-out-of
Novembrio pervenit ad Marram civitatem, in qua maxima
November he-came to Marra the-city in which the-greatest
multitudo Saracenorum et Turcorum et Arabum et aliorum
multitude of-Saracens and of-Turks and of-Arabs and of-other
paganorum erat congregata, ipseque comes in crastinum
pagans was gathered and-he the-count on the-morrow
invasit eam. Non post multum vero temporis Boamundus
attacked it not after much indeed of-time Bohemond
cum suo exercitu secutus est comites et applicatus est cum
with his army followed has the-counts and joined was with

eis in die dominica. Secunda vero feria nimis fortiter
them on the-day of-the-Lord on-the-second indeed weekday very strongly
invaserunt undique civitatem, et tam acriter tamque fortiter,
they-attacked on-all-sides the-city and so fiercely and-so strongly
ut scalae starent erectae ad murum. Sed tam maxima erat
that ladders stood raised to the-wall but so very-great was
virtus paganorum, quod illa die nihil eos offendere aut
the-power of-the-pagans that on-that day nothing them to-offend or
nocere potuerunt. Videntes autem seniores, quia nihil agere
to-harm they-could seeing moreover the-lords that nothing to-do
poterant et frustra laborabant, fecit Raimundus comes de
they-could and in-vain they-labored caused Raymond count of
Sancto Egidio fieri quoddam ligneum castrum forte et
Saint Gilles to-be-made a-certain wooden castle strong and
altum. Quod castrum ingeniatum et aedificatum erat super
high which castle contrived and built was upon
IV rotas, super quod stabant plures milites et Evrardus
four wheels upon which stood many knights and Everard
venator, tubam fortiter sonans; subter vero erant armati
the-huntsman the-trumpet strongly sounding beneath indeed were armed
milites, qui deduxerunt castrum usque prope urbis murum
knights who led the-castle up-to near of-the-city the-wall
iuxta turrim quamdam. Quod videns gens pagana, statim
beside a-tower certain which seeing the-people pagan at-once
fecerunt instrumentum, quo iactabant maximos lapides
made an-engine by-which they-hurled very-great stones
super castrum, ita ut paene nostros milites occiderent.
upon the-castle so that almost our knights they-killed
Iaciebant quoque graecos ignes super castrum, putantes
they-hurled also Greek fires upon the-castle thinking
illud ardere et devastari. Sed Deus omnipotens noluit,
it to-burn and to-be-laid-waste but God almighty was-unwilling

ut castrum arderet hac vice; supereminebat enim omnes
that the-castle should-burn this time it-towered-over for all
muros civitatis. Milites igitur nostri, qui erant in superiori
the-walls of-the-city the-knights therefore our who were in the-upper
solario, videlicet Willelmus de Monte Pislerio et alii multi,
story namely William of Mont Pellier and others many
iactabant immensos lapides super illos, qui stabant in muro
hurled immense stones upon those who stood on the-wall
urbis, et ita percutiebant eos super clipeos, ut clipeus
of-the-city and so struck them upon their-shields that shield
et inimicus caderent deorsum in civitatem in mortem. Ita
and enemy fell down into the-city to death so
faciebant isti; alii vero tenebant in hastis honorabilia signa
did these others but held on spears honorable standards
et cum lanceis et hamis ferreis putabant eos trahere ad
and with lances and hooks iron thought them to-drag to
se, et sic proeliati sunt usque ad vesperam. Retro
themselves and thus fought have all-the-way to evening behind
castrum stabant presbyteri, clerici, sacris vestibus induti,
the-castle stood presbyters clerics in-sacred vestments clothed
orantes et obsecrantes Deum, ut suum defenderet populum
praying and beseeching God that his he-should-defend people
et christianitatem exaltaret ac paganismum deponeret. In
and Christendom should-exalt and paganism should-put-down on
alia vero parte certabant nostri milites cotidie cum illis,
the-other indeed side contended our knights daily with them
erigentes scalas ad murum urbis, sed virtus paganorum erat
raising ladders to the-wall of-the-city but the-power of-the-pagans was
tanta, ut nihil proficere nostri possent. Tamen Gulferus de
so-great that nothing to-achieve our-men could yet Gouffier of
Daturre primus ascendit per scalam in murum, sed statim
Lastours first climbed by a-ladder onto the-wall but at-once

fuit fracta scala pro multitudine aliorum; tamen ascendit
was broken the-ladder for the-multitude of-the-others yet climbed
ipse cum aliquantis supra murum; illi autem, qui ascendebant,
he with some onto the-wall they moreover who climbed
expediebant circa illos murum. Alii quoque invenerunt
cleared around them the-wall others also found
aliam scalam erexeruntque eam festinanter ad murum, et
another ladder and-raised it hastily to the-wall and
ascenderunt per eam multi milites et pedites, statimque
climbed by it many knights and foot-soldiers and-at-once
ascenderunt super murum. Saraceni igitur tam robuste
climbed onto the-wall the-Saracens therefore so sturdily
invaserunt illos per murum et per terram sagittando et
attacked them along the-wall and along the-ground by-shooting-arrows and
spiculando comminus cum suis lanceis, ut multi ex nostris
by-spearing hand-to-hand with their lances that many of our-men
timore perterriti demitterent se per murum. Tamdiu vero
by-fear terrified let-down themselves over the-wall so-long indeed
illi prudentissimi viri, qui remanserant in muro, sufferebant
those most-prudent men who had-remained on the-wall endured
illorum persecutionem, quamdiu alii, qui subter castrum
their persecution as-long-as the-others who beneath the-castle
erant, foderunt murum urbis. Videntes vero Saraceni, quod
were dug-under the-wall of-the-city seeing indeed the-Saracens that
nostri fodissent murum, statim timore perterriti inierunt
our-men had-dug-under the-wall at-once by-fear terrified entered
fugam in civitatem. Hoc totum factum est in die
flight into the-city this all done was on the-day
sabbati ad horam vesperi, occidente sole, XI[a]. die
of-the-Sabbath at the-hour of-evening setting the-sun on-the-eleventh day
intrante Decembri. Boemundus igitur fecit per interpretem
entering December Bohemond therefore caused through an-interpreter

loqui Saracenis maioribus, ut ipsi cum suis mulieribus et
to-speak to-the-Saracen greater-men that they with their wives and
infantibus aliisque substantiis mitterent se in unum
children and-other goods should-put themselves into one
palatium, quod est supra portam, ipseque defenderet eos de
palace which is above the-gate and-he would-defend them from
mortali sententia. Intraverunt vero omnes nostri in civitatem
the-mortal sentence entered indeed all our-men into the-city
et quicquid boni invenerunt in domibus et in foveis, hoc
and whatever of-good they-found in the-houses and in the-pits this
unusquisque ad suum continebat proprium. Facto autem die
each to his kept own made moreover the-day
ubicunque reperiebant quemquam illorum, sive masculum
wherever they-found any of-them whether male
sive feminam, occidebant. Nullus angulus civitatis deerat
or female they-killed no corner of-the-city was-lacking
vacuus Saracenorum cadaveribus, vixque poterat aliquis per
empty of-Saracen corpses and-scarcely could anyone through
vias ire civitatis nisi calcando super Saracenorum cadavera.
the-streets go of-the-city except by-treading upon of-the-Saracens the-corpses
Boamundus denique illos, quos iusserat in palatium intrare,
Bohemond finally those whom he-had-ordered into the-palace to-enter
apprehendit, illisque abstulit omnia quae habebant, videlicet
seized and-from-them took-away all-things which they-had namely
aurum, argentum aliaque ornamenta; alios vero fecit occidi,
gold silver and-other furnishings others but he-caused to-be-killed
alios autem iussit conduci ad vendendum Antiochiae. Mora
others moreover he-ordered to-be-led for selling at-Antioch the-delay
autem Francorum fuit in illa urbe per unum mensem et IV
moreover of-the-Franks was in that city for one month and four
dies, in qua fuit mortuus Oriensis episcopus. Fuerunt ibi
days in which dead was of-Orange the-bishop there-were there

ex nostris, qui illic non invenerunt sicuti opus eis erat,
of our-men who there not found as need to-them was
tantum ex longa mora, quantum ex districtione famis,
as-much from the-long delay as from the-tightness of-hunger
quia foris nequiverant aliquid invenire ad capiendum; sed
because outside they-had-been-unable anything to-find for taking but
scindebant corpora mortuorum, eo quod in ventribus
they-cut-open the-bodies of-the-dead for-the-reason that in the-bellies
eorum inveniebant bisanteos reconditos, alii vero caedebant
their they-found bezants hidden others but cut
carnes eorum per frusta et coquebant ad manducandum.
the-flesh their into pieces and cooked-it for eating

XXXIV · RAYMOND MARCHES SOUTH

The princes fail to reconcile Bohemond and Raymond, who sets out barefoot from Marra in January and is joined at Kafartab by the count of Normandy. The king of Shaizar sends guides, the army plunders a valley and takes Kephalia and a castle in the valley of Desem, and keeps the Purification there. The kings of Homs and Tripoli seek peace; the army besieges Arqa and seizes Tortosa by a ruse of fires.

Boamundus autem non potuit apud comitem Sancti Egidii
Bohemond moreover not could with the-count of-Saint Gilles
concordari super id, quod petebat, iratusque reversus est
be-reconciled about that which he-sought and-angered returned has
Antiochiam. Comes igitur Raimundus non diu moratus
to-Antioch the-count therefore Raymond not long having-delayed
mandavit per suos legatos Antiochiae duci Godefrido et
sent-word through his envoys at-Antioch to-duke Godfrey and
Flandrensi comiti ac Rotberto Nortmanno et Boamundo, ut
to-the-Flemish count and to-Robert the-Norman and to-Bohemond that

ipsi venirent ad Rugiam civitatem loqui cum eo. Veneruntque
they should-come to Rugia the-city to-speak with him and-came
illuc omnes seniores et fecerunt concilium, quomodo honeste
thither all the-lords and held a-council how honorably
possent tenere viam Sancti Sepulchri, pro qua moti
they-might-be-able to-hold the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher for which moved
sunt et usque huc perventum sit. Nequiverunt concordare
were and up-to hither come it-has-been they-could-not to-reconcile
cum Raimundo Boamundum, nisi Raimundus comes redderet
with Raymond Bohemond unless Raymond the-count should-return
Antiochiam ei. Noluit comes ad hoc assentire pro
Antioch to-him was-unwilling the-count to this to-assent for
fiducia, quam fecerat imperatori. Comites denique et dux
the-fealty which he-had-made to-the-emperor the-counts finally and the-duke
reversi sunt in Antiochiam una cum Boamundo. Comes
returned have into Antioch together with Bohemond the-count
vero Raimundus reversus est ad Marram, ubi peregrini
but Raymond returned has to Marra where the-pilgrims
erant; mandavit quoque suis militibus honestare palatium et
were he-ordered also his knights to-equip the-palace and
castellum, quod erat supra portam pontis civitatis.
the-castle which was above the-gate of-the-bridge of-the-city
Videns autem Raimundus, quod nullus seniorum voluisset
seeing moreover Raymond that none of-the-lords had-wished
causa eius ire in viam Sancti Sepulcri, exivit nudis
on-account-of him to-go on the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher went-out with-bare
pedibus de Marra XIII[a] die intrante Januario et
feet from Marra on-the-thirteenth day entering January and
pervenit usque Capharda, fuitque ibi per III dies. Illic
came up-to Kafartab and-was there for three days there
adiunxit se comes Nortmanniae comiti Raimundo. Rex
joined himself the-count of-Normandy to-count Raymond the-king

autem Cesareae multotiens mandaverat per suos nuntios
moreover of-Shaizar many-times had-sent-word through his messengers
comiti Marrae et Caphardae, quod cum eo pacem vellet
to-the-count at-Marra and at-Kafartab that with him peace he-wished
habere et de suo pretium ei daret et Christianos
to-have and from his-own a-price to-him would-give and the-Christian
peregrinos diligeret fiduciamque faceret, quia quantum
pilgrims would-love and-fealty would-make that as-far-as
continet eius imperium peregrinis non esset offendiculum,
extends his empire to-the-pilgrims not there-would-be an-obstacle
et mercatum de equis et de corporalibus alimentis daret
and a-market of horses and of bodily nourishments he-would-give
gaudenter. Exierunt autem nostri et venerunt hospitari
gladly went-out moreover our-men and came to-lodge
iuxta Cesaream super fluvium Farfar. Cumque vidisset rex
beside Shaizar upon the-river Farfar and-when had-seen the-king
Cesareae contubernium Francorum tam prope civitatem
of-Shaizar the-company of-the-Franks so near the-city
hospitatum esse, doluit animo et iussit illis devetari
lodged to-be he-grieved in-mind and ordered to-them to-be-forbidden
mercatum, nisi discederent a civitatis confinio. Crastina
the-market unless they-should-depart from of-the-city the-border on-the-next
vero die misit cum illis duos Turcos, suos videlicet nuntios,
indeed day he-sent with them two Turks his namely messengers
qui eis monstrarent fluminis vadum eosque conducerent,
who to-them should-show of-the-river the-ford and-them should-lead
ubi invenire possent ad capiendum. Denique venerunt in
where to-find they-might-be-able for taking finally they-came into
vallem quandam subter quoddam castrum ibique depraedati
a-valley certain beneath a-certain castle and-there plundered
sunt plus quam quinque animalium milia et satis frumenti
have more than five of-animals thousand and enough of-grain

atque alia bona, unde valde fuit refecta tota Christi
and other goods whence greatly was refreshed the-whole of-Christ
militia. Tamen illud castrum reddidit se comiti eique
army yet that castle surrendered itself to-the-count and-to-him
dedit equos et aurum purissimum, et iuraverunt sua lege,
gave horses and gold most-pure and they-swore by-their law
quod peregrinis nil exinde fieret mali; fuimusque ibi
that to-the-pilgrims nothing thence would-be-done of-evil and-we-were there
per V dies. Egressi etenim inde pervenimus gaudentes
for five days having-gone-out indeed thence we-came rejoicing
hospitari ad quoddam Arabum castrum. Exivit igitur dominus
to-lodge at a-certain of-Arabs castle went-out therefore the-lord
castri et concordatus est cum comite. Exeuntes vero
of-the-castle and agreed has with the-count going-out indeed
inde pervenimus ad quandam civitatem pulcherrimam et
thence we-came to a-certain city most-beautiful and
omnibus bonis refertam, in quadam valle sitam, nomine
with-all goods crammed in a-certain valley situated by-name
Kephaliam. Habitatores vero illius audientes Francos venisse,
Kephalia the-inhabitants but of-it hearing the-Franks to-have-come
dimiserunt urbem et hortos plenos oleribus et domos
left the-city and the-gardens full of-vegetables and the-houses
plenas alimentis corporalibus et fugerunt. Tertia die
full of-nourishments bodily and fled on-the-third day
egressi ab illa urbe transivimus per altam et immensam
having-gone-out from that city we-crossed over a-high and immense
montaneam et intravimus in vallem Desem, in qua erat
mountain and we-entered into the-valley Desem in which was
maxima ubertas omnibus bonis; fuimusque ibi per dies fere
the-greatest plenty in-all goods and-we-were there for days about
quindecim. Hic prope nos erat quoddam castrum, in quo
fifteen here near us was a-certain castle in which

erat congregata maxima paganorum multitudo. Quod castrum
was gathered the-greatest of-pagans multitude which castle
aggressi sunt nostri, idque fortiter superassent, nisi
attacked have our-men and-it strongly they-would-have-overcome unless
Saraceni iactassent foras immensas turmas animalium; reversi
the-Saracens had-thrown outside immense herds of-animals returned
sunt nostri deferentes omnia bona ad sua tentoria. Summo
have our-men carrying all the-goods to their tents at-the-highest
autem diluculo collegerunt nostri suos papiliones et venerunt
moreover dawn gathered our-men their tents and came
obsidere idem castrum, ibique putabant extendere tentoria,
to-besiege the-same castle and-there they-thought to-stretch-out the-tents
sed gens pagana omnino dedit se fugae ac dimiserunt
but the-people pagan wholly gave itself to-flight and they-left
castrum vacuum. Intrantes autem nostri invenerunt ibi
the-castle empty entering moreover our-men found there
omnem abundantiam frumenti, vini, farinae, olei et quicquid
every abundance of-grain of-wine of-flour of-oil and whatever
eis opus erat. Illic devotissime celebravimus festivitatem
to-them need was there most-devoutly we-celebrated the-festival
Purificationis sanctae Mariae, veneruntque illuc nuntii de
of-the-Purification of-holy Mary and-came thither messengers from
Camela civitate. Rex namque illius mandavit comiti equos,
Homs the-city the-king for of-it sent to-the-count horses
aurum, et pactus est cum eo, quod Christianos nullo
gold and covenanted has with him that the-Christians in-no
modo offenderet, sed eos diligeret et honoraret. Rex autem
way he-would-offend but them would-love and would-honor the-king moreover
Tripolis mandavit comiti, quoniam cum eo fideliter pactum
of-Tripoli sent-word to-the-count that with him faithfully a-pact
iniret et amicitiam haberet, si ei placeret, misitque
he-would-enter and friendship would-have if to-him it-pleased and-he-sent

illi equos X, et IV mulas, et aurum. Sed comes ait nullo
to-him horses ten and four mules and gold but the-count said in-no
modo cum eo pacem se recipere, nisi ille Christianus
way with him peace himself to-accept unless he a-Christian
efficeretur. Exeuntes autem de optima valle pervenimus
should-become going-out moreover from the-most-excellent valley we-came
ad quoddam castrum, quod dicitur Archae, in die lunae,
to a-certain castle which is-called Arqa on the-day of-the-moon
scilicet IIª. feria, mediante februario, circa quod
namely the-second weekday midway-through February around which
tentoria tetendimus. Quod castrum plenum erat innumerabili
tents we-stretched which castle full was of-a-countless
gente paganorum, videlicet Turcorum, Saracenorum, Arabum,
people of-pagans namely of-Turks of-Saracens of-Arabs
Publicanorum, qui mirabiliter munierunt castrum illud et
of-Paulicians who wondrously fortified castle that and
defendebant se fortiter. Tunc exeuntes XIV ex nostris
defended themselves strongly then going-out fourteen of our
militibus ierunt contra Tripolim urbem, quae erat secus nos.
knights went toward Tripoli the-city which was beside us
Isti XIV invenerunt circa LX Turcos et alios quosdam, qui
these fourteen found about sixty Turks and others certain who
habebant ante se collectos homines et animalia plus quam
had before them gathered men and animals more than
MD. Qui signo crucis muniti invaserunt eos et
fifteen-hundred who with-the-sign of-the-cross fortified attacked them and
Deo iuvante mirabiliter superaverunt illos et occiderunt VI ex
God helping wondrously overcame them and killed six of
illis et apprehenderunt VI equos. De exercitu vero Raimundi
them and seized six horses from the-army indeed of-Raymond
comitis exierunt Raimundus Piletus et Raimundus, vicecomes
the-count went-out Raymond Pilet and Raymond the-viscount

de Tentoria, veneruntque ante Tortosam civitatem et fortiter
of Turenne and-came before Tortosa the-city and strongly
aggrediuntur illam, quae nimis erat munita multitudine
attack it which very was fortified by-a-multitude
paganorum. Sero autem iam facto secesserunt in quendam
of-pagans evening moreover now made they-withdrew into a-certain
angulum ibique hospitati sunt, feceruntque innumerabiles
corner and-there lodged have and-made countless
ignes, quasi tota hostis esset ibi. Pagani vero timore
fires as-if the-whole army were there the-pagans but by-fear
perterriti nocte latenter fugerunt et dimiserunt civitatem
terrified by-night secretly fled and left the-city
plenam omnibus bonis, quae etiam valde optimum portum
full of-all goods which also a-very most-excellent port
secus mare in se retinet. Crastina autem die venerunt
beside the-sea in itself holds on-the-next moreover day came
nostri, ut undique invaderent illam, inveneruntque illam
our-men that on-all-sides they-might-attack it and-they-found it
vacuam et intrantes habitaverunt in ea usque dum obsessio
empty and entering dwelt in it up-to while the-siege
esset ante urbem Archae. Est prope istam alia urbs, quae
was before the-city of-Arqa there-is near this another city which
dicitur Maraclea; admiralius, qui eam regebat, pactus est
is-called Maraclea the-emir who it ruled covenanted has
cum nostris et misit nostros in civitatem nostraque vexilla.
with our-men and put our-men into the-city and-our banners

Godfrey and the count of Flanders besiege Jabala, then make terms and join Raymond at Arqa against a rumored army that never comes. The Franks rout the men of Tripoli and plunder beasts beyond Desem. The siege lasts three months less a day, ships bring supplies, and Anselm of Ribemont dies. With new beans and grain ripening, they resolve to finish the journey.

Dux quoque Godefridus et Boamundus Flandrensisque
the-duke also Godfrey and Bohemond and-the-Flemish
comes venerunt usque ad Lichiam civitatem. Disseparavit
count came all-the-way to Latakia the-city separated
enim se Boamundus ab eis et reversus est Antiochiam.
for himself Bohemond from them and returned has to-Antioch
Illi vero venerunt et obsederunt quandam urbem, cui
they but came and besieged a-certain city to-which
nomen Gibellum. Audiens itaque Raimundus, comes de
the-name Jabala hearing and-so Raymond count of
Sancto Egidio, quod innumerabilis gens paganorum rueret
Saint Gilles that a-countless people of-pagans was-rushing
super nos ad certum bellum, ilico consilium habuit cum
upon us to sure battle at-once counsel had with
suis, ut mandet senioribus, qui sunt in obsidione Gibelli,
his-men that he-send-word to-the-lords who are at the-siege of-Jabala
quatinus eis subvenirent. Quod illi audientes statim
so-that to-them they-should-come-to-aid which they hearing at-once
pacti sunt cum ammiralio, facientes pacem cum eo, et
covenanted have with the-emir making peace with him and
acceperunt equos et aurum, dimiseruntque urbem venientes
received horses and gold and-left the-city coming
ad nos in adiutorium. Sed illi non venerunt ad bellum
to us in help but they not came to battle

contra nos. Itaque comites praedicti hospitati sunt ultra
against us and-so the-counts aforesaid lodged have beyond
flumen ibique obsederunt castrum illud. Non multo post
the-river and-there besieged castle that not much after
equitaverunt nostri contra Tripolim inveneruntque extra
rode our-men toward Tripoli and-found outside
civitatem Turcos, Arabes et Saracenos, quos invaserunt
the-city Turks Arabs and Saracens whom attacked
nostri et miserunt eos in fugam et occiderunt maximam
our-men and put them to flight and killed the-greatest
partem nobilium urbis. Tanta fuit paganorum occisio et
part of-the-nobles of-the-city so-great was of-the-pagans the-slaughter and
sanguinis effusio, ut etiam aqua, quae in civitate fluebat,
of-blood the-shedding that even the-water which in the-city flowed
videretur rubere et fluere in cisternas eorum, unde valde
seemed to-redden and to-flow into cisterns their whence greatly
fuerunt tristes alii dolentesque. Iam vero erant tanto
were sad the-others and-grieving now indeed they-were by-such
timore perterriti, ut nullus eorum auderet exire extra
fear terrified that none of-them dared to-go-out outside
civitatis portam. Alia vero die equitaverunt nostri ultra
of-the-city the-gate on-another indeed day rode our-men beyond
Desem et invenerunt boves et oves et asinos multaque
Desem and found oxen and sheep and asses and-many
animalia, camelos quoque depraedati sunt fere III milia.
animals camels also plundered have almost three thousand
Obsedimus vero castrum supradictum per III menses minus
we-besieged indeed the-castle aforesaid for three months less
una die; ibique Pascha Domini celebravimus IVº.
one day and-there the-Pasch of-the-Lord we-celebrated on-the-fourth-day-before
idus Aprilis. Naves quippe nostrae venerunt prope nos in
the-Ides of-April the-ships indeed our came near us into

quendam portum, quamdiu fuimus in illa obsidione, deferentes
a-certain port as-long-as we-were in that siege bringing
maximum mercatum, scilicet frumentum, vinum et carnem
a-very-great market namely grain wine and meat
et caseum et hordeum et oleum, unde maxima ubertas
and cheese and barley and oil whence the-greatest plenty
fuit in tota expeditione. In illa denique obsidione feliciter
was in the-whole expedition in that finally siege happily
acceperunt martyrium plures ex nostris, videlicet Anselmus de
received martyrdom many of our-men namely Anselm of
Ribomont, Willelmus Picardus et alii plures, quos ignoro.
Ribemont William the-Picard and others many whom I-know-not
Rex quoque Tripolis saepe nuntios mittebat senioribus, ut
the-king also of-Tripoli often messengers sent to-the-lords that
dimitterent castrum et cum eo concordarentur. Audientes
they-should-give-up the-castle and with him be-reconciled hearing
itaque nostri hoc, scilicet et dux Godefridus et Raimundus,
and-so our-men this namely both duke Godfrey and Raymond
comes S. Egidii, ac Rotbertus Nortmannus Flandrensisque
count of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman and-the-Flemish
comes, videntesque novos fructus properasse, quia in medio
count and-seeing the-new fruits to-have-hastened because in mid
Martio comedebamus novellas fabas, medio quoque Aprili
March we-ate new beans in-mid also April
frumentum, consiliati sunt nostri dicentes: Bonum valde esse
grain took-counsel have our-men saying good very to-be
Hierosolymitanum iter explere cum novis fructibus.
the-Jerusalem journey to-complete with the-new fruits

The king of Tripoli frees more than three hundred pilgrims, gives bezants and horses, and promises to become a Christian if they win. The army marches by the coast through Beirut, Sidon, Tyre, Acre, and Haifa, keeps Pentecost at Caesarea, and at Ramla, abandoned by its Saracens, sets a bishop over Saint George's church.

Discessimus igitur a castro et pervenimus Tripolim in VI[a].
we-departed therefore from the-castle and came to-Tripoli on the-sixth
feria, XIII[o]. die intrante Maio, ibique fuimus per III
weekday on-the-thirteenth day entering May and-there we-were for three
dies. Tandem concordatus est rex Tripolis cum senioribus,
days at-length reconciled was the-king of-Tripoli with the-lords
illisque continuo dissolvit plusquam CCC peregrinos, qui
and-to-them at-once he-released more-than three-hundred pilgrims who
illic capti erant, deditque XV milia bisanteos et XV equos
there captured had-been and-he-gave fifteen thousand bezants and fifteen horses
magni pretii; dedit etiam nobis magnum mercatum equorum,
of-great price he-gave also to-us a-great market of-horses
asinorum omniumque bonorum, unde nimis ditata est omnis
of-asses and-of-all goods whence very-much enriched was all
Christi militia. Pactus est vero cum illis, quia, si bellum,
of-Christ the-army covenanted has indeed with them that if the-battle
quod eis admiralius Babyloniae parabat, possent devincere
which for-them the-emir of-Babylon was-preparing they-could to-win
et Hierusalem apprehendere, ille Christianus efficeretur
and Jerusalem seize he a-Christian would-become
terramque ab eis recognosceret, atque tali modo factum est
and-the-land from them would-acknowledge and in-such way made was
placitum. Nos autem discessimus ab urbe in II[a]. feria
the-agreement we moreover departed from the-city on the-second weekday

mensis Maii, transivimusque per viam artam et arduam
of-the-month of-May and-we-crossed by a-road narrow and steep
tota die ac nocte et pervenimus ad castrum, cui nomen
the-whole day and night and came to a-castle to-which the-name
Bethelon, deinde ad urbem, quae dicitur Zebari secus mare,
Batrun then to the-city which is-called Jubail beside the-sea
in qua passi sumus nimiam sitim, et sic defessi pervenimus
in which suffered we-have excessive thirst and thus exhausted we-came
ad flumen, cui nomen Braym. Deinde transivimus nocte
to a-river to-which the-name Ibrahim then we-crossed by-night
ac die Ascensionis Domini per montem, in quo est via
and on-the-day of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord over a-mountain on which is a-road
nimis angusta, et illic putavimus inimicos insidiantes nobis
very narrow and there we-thought enemies lying-in-wait-for us
invenire, sed Deo annuente nullus eorum audebat properare
to-find but God nodding none of-them dared to-hasten
ante nos. Nostri denique milites, praecedentes nos, liberaverunt
before us our finally knights going-before us cleared
ante nos viam illam, et applicuimus ad civitatem iuxta
before us road that and we-arrived at a-city beside
mare, quae dicitur Baruth, et inde venimus ad aliam urbem,
the-sea which is-called Beirut and thence we-came to another city
quae vocatur Sagitta, dehinc ad aliam, quae dicitur Sur, et
which is-called Sidon thence to another which is-called Tyre and
de Sur ad Acram civitatem. De Acra vero venimus ad
from Tyre to Acre the-city from Acre indeed we-came to
castrum, cui nomen Cayphas, ac deinceps hospitati sumus
a-castle to-which the-name Haifa and thereafter lodged we-have
iuxta Caesaream ibique celebravimus Pentecosten III[a]. die
beside Caesarea and-there we-celebrated Pentecost on-the-third day
exeunte Maio. Deinde venimus ad urbem Ramola, quam
going-out-of May then we-came to the-city Ramla which

Saraceni dimiserant vacuam propter metum Francorum, iuxta
the-Saracens had-left empty for fear of-the-Franks beside
quam erat honorabilis ecclesia, in qua requievit pretiosissimum
which was an-honorable church in which rested the-most-precious
sancti Georgii corpus, quia illic a perfidis paganis pro
of-Saint George body because there by faithless pagans for
Christi nomine feliciter martyrium suscepit. Ibi consiliati
of-Christ the-name happily martyrdom he-received there took-counsel
sunt nostri maiores, ut illic eligerent episcopum, qui
have greater-men our that there they-should-choose a-bishop who
hanc custodiret et erigeret ecclesiam, cui suas dederunt
this should-guard and should-raise church to-which their they-gave
decimas, et auro argentoque ditaverunt, et equis ac
tithes and with-gold and-silver enriched-it and with-horses and
animalibus aliis, quo devote et honeste viveret cum illis,
animals other that devoutly and honorably he-might-live with those
qui cum eo essent. Remansit ipse illic cum gaudio.
who with him should-be remained he there with joy

XXXVII · THE SIEGE OF JERUSALEM BEGINS

On June 6 the army reaches Jerusalem and invests it on three sides. Raymond Pilet's knights defeat a band of Arabs. A first assault fails for want of ladders, and the army suffers thirst, watering beasts six miles off. Of a hundred knights sent to guard the ships at Jaffa, thirty are surrounded and Achard of Montmerle is killed before Raymond Pilet rides to their aid and routs the enemy.

Nos autem laetantes et exsultantes usque ad civitatem
we moreover rejoicing and exulting all-the-way to the-city
Hierusalem pervenimus feria tertia, VIII°
Jerusalem came on-the-weekday third on-the-eighth-day-before

idus Junii, eamque mirabiliter obsedimus. Robertus namque
the-Ides of-June and-it wondrously we-besieged Robert for
Normannus eam obsedit a septentrione iuxta sancti Stephani
the-Norman it besieged from the-north beside of-Saint Stephen
protomartyris ecclesiam, ubi gaudenter lapidatus est pro
the-protomartyr the-church where joyfully stoned he-was for
nomine Christi; iuxta eum Robertus Flandrensis comes. Ab
the-name of-Christ beside him Robert the-Flemish count from
occidente vero obsedit eam dux Godefridus et Tancredus. A
the-west indeed besieged it duke Godfrey and Tancred from
meridie obsedit eam comes Sancti Egidii, scilicet in monte
the-south besieged it the-count of-Saint Gilles namely on mount
Sion, circa ecclesiam sanctae Mariae, matris Domini, ubi
Zion around the-church of-holy Mary the-mother of-the-Lord where
Dominus cum suis cenavit discipulis. Tertia vero die ex
the-Lord with his supped disciples on-the-third indeed day of
nostris, scilicet Raimundus Piletus et Raimundus de Taurina
our-men namely Raymond Pilet and Raymond of Turenne
et alii plures causa proeliandi invenerunt CC Arabes
and others many for-the-sake of-fighting found two-hundred Arabs
et proeliati sunt Christi milites contra illos incredulos et
and fought have of-Christ the-knights against those unbelievers and
Deo adiuvante fortiter illos superaverunt et occiderunt multos
God helping strongly them overcame and killed many
ex eis et apprehenderunt XXX equos. Secunda vero veniente
of them and seized thirty horses on-the-second indeed coming
feria aggredimur fortissime civitatem tam mirabiliter, ut,
weekday we-attack most-strongly the-city so wondrously that
si scalae fuissent paratae, in nostra fuisset civitas manu.
if ladders had-been prepared in our would-have-been the-city hand
Tamen minorem stravimus murum, et unam scalam ereximus
yet the-lesser we-laid-low wall and one ladder we-raised

ad maiorem murum, super quam ascendebant nostri milites
to the-greater wall upon which climbed our knights
et comminus percutiebant Saracenos suis ensibus et lanceis
and hand-to-hand struck the-Saracens with-their swords and lances
et defensores civitatis. Fueruntque mortui multi ex nostris,
and the-defenders of-the-city and-there-were dead many of our-men
sed plures ex illis. In illa autem obsidione panes ad emendum
but more of them in that moreover siege loaves for buying
invenire non poteramus fere per spatium dierum X, donec
to-find not we-could almost for the-space of-days ten until
venit nuntius nostrarum navium, et in nimia pressura sitis
came a-messenger of-our ships and in excessive pressure of-thirst
detenti fuimus, ita ut per nimium terrorem et pavorem
held we-were so that through excessive terror and fear
per VI milia nostros potaremus equos et alia animalia. Siloa
for six miles our we-watered horses and other animals Siloam
namque fons, qui est ad radicem montis Sion, sustinebat
for the-spring which is at the-root of-mount Zion sustained
nos, sed tamen cara vendebatur aqua inter nos. Postquam
us but yet dear was-sold the-water among us after
enim venit nuntius nostrarum navium, acceperunt inter
for came the-messenger of-our ships took among
se nostri seniores consilium, quemadmodum mitterent
themselves our lords counsel how they-should-send
milites, qui fideliter custodirent homines et naves in portu
knights who faithfully should-guard the-men and ships in the-port
Japhiae. Summo autem diluculo exierunt C milites de
of-Jaffa at-the-highest moreover dawn went-out a-hundred knights from
exercitu Raimundi, comitis S. Egidii, Raimundus Piletus
the-army of-Raymond the-count of-Saint Gilles Raymond Pilet
et Achardus de Mommellou et Willelmus de Sabra, et
and Achard of Montmerle and William of Sabran and

ibant cum fiducia ad portum. Diviserunt se denique
went with confidence to the-port divided themselves finally
XXX milites ex nostris ab aliis et invenerunt DCC
thirty knights of ours from the-others and found seven-hundred
Arabes et Turcos et Saracenos de exercitu amiravisi, quos
Arabs and Turks and Saracens from the-army of-the-emir whom
invaserunt fortiter Christi milites; sed tam magna fuit virtus
attacked strongly of-Christ the-knights but so great was the-power
illorum super nostros, ut undique circumcingerent illos, et
of-them over our-men that on-all-sides they-surrounded them and
occiderunt Achardum de Mommellou et pauperes homines
killed Achard of Montmerle and poor men
pedites. Cum autem tenerent nostros iam inclusos, qui
foot-soldiers when moreover they-held our-men now shut-in who
omnes putabant mori, venit alius quidam nuntius, dicens
all thought to-die came another certain messenger saying
Raimundo Pileto: Quid hic astas cum his militibus? Ecce
to-Raymond Pilet why here do-you-stand with these knights behold
omnes nostri in nimia districtione Arabum et Turcorum
all our-men in excessive tightness of-Arabs and of-Turks
et Saracenorum sunt et forsitan in hac hora omnes mortui
and of-Saracens are and perhaps in this hour all dead
sunt: succurrite ergo illis, succurrite! Audientes nostri haec,
are come-to-aid therefore them come-to-aid hearing our-men this
statim cuccurrerunt celeri cursu et festinanter pervenerunt
at-once ran with-swift course and hastily came
usque ad illos proeliando. Paganorum vero gens, videns
all-the-way to them fighting of-the-pagans but the-people seeing
Christi milites, divisit se et fecerunt duo agmina. Nostri
of-Christ the-knights divided itself and made two columns our-men
autem, invocato Christi nomine, tam acriter invaserunt illos
moreover invoked of-Christ the-name so fiercely attacked those

incredulos, ut quisque miles prosterneret suum. Videntes vero
unbelievers that each knight laid-low his-man seeing indeed
illi, quod non possent stare ante Francorum fortitudinem,
they that not they-could to-stand before of-the-Franks the-strength
timore nimio perterriti, verterunt scapulas retro, quos nostri
by-fear excessive terrified turned shoulders back whom our-men
persequentes fere per spatia IV milium occiderunt multos
pursuing almost for the-spaces of-four miles killed many
ex eis; unumque retinuerunt vivum, qui nova eis per
of them and-one kept alive who news to-them in
ordinem diceret; retinuerunt quoque CIII equos.
order might-tell they-kept also a-hundred-and-three horses
In eadem obsidione tanta oppressione sitis fuimus gravati,
in the-same siege by-such oppression of-thirst we-were weighed-down
ut sueremus coria boum et bufalorum, in quibus deferebamus
that we-sewed the-hides of-oxen and of-buffaloes in which we-carried
aquas fere per spatium VI miliariorum; ex illis quippe vasculis
waters almost for the-space of-six miles from those indeed little-vessels
fetida utebamur aqua, et quantum ex olida aqua et hordeaceo
stinking we-used water and as-much-as from foul water and barley
pane in nimia districtione et afflictione eramus cotidie. Saraceni
bread in excessive tightness and affliction we-were daily the-Saracens
namque in cunctis fontibus et aquis latentes insidiabantur
for in all springs and waters lurking lay-in-wait-for
nostris eosque ubique occidebant et dilaniabant; animalia
our-men and-them everywhere killed and tore-to-pieces the-animals
quoque secum in suas cavernas et speluncas deducebant.
also with-them into their caverns and caves they-led

Godfrey and Raymond build wooden castles; after a procession round the city, the assault comes on Friday. Letold climbs the wall while Godfrey fights from his castle, and the Franks slaughter the fleeing defenders in Solomon's Temple ankle-deep in blood. Raymond, his ditch filled, hears the news; the emir in the Tower of David yields to him, the pilgrims weep at the Sepulcher, and next morning the Saracens on the Temple roof are beheaded, angering Tancred.

Tunc seniores nostri ordinaverunt, quomodo ingeniare
then lords our ordained how to-contrive
possent civitatem, ut ad adorandum nostri Salvatoris
they-might-be-able the-city that for worshiping of-our Savior
intrarent Sepulcrum. Feceruntque duo lignea castra et
they-might-enter the-Sepulcher and-they-made two wooden castles and
alia plura machinamenta. Dux Godefridus suum fecit
other many engines the-duke Godfrey his made
castrum cum machinis, et Raimundus comes similiter,
castle with engines and Raymond the-count likewise
quibus de longinquis terris attrahebant ligna. Saraceni
for-which from distant lands they-dragged timber the-Saracens
igitur, videntes nostros facientes has machinas, mirabiliter
therefore seeing our-men making these engines wondrously
muniebant civitatem et turres nocte accrescebant. Videntes
fortified the-city and the-towers by-night they-raised seeing
autem nostri seniores, ex qua parte esset civitas magis
moreover our lords from which side was the-city more
languida, illuc in quadam nocte sabbati deportaverunt
weak thither on a-certain night of-the-Sabbath they-carried
nostram machinam et ligneum castrum in orientalem partem.
our engine and the-wooden castle to the-eastern part
Summo autem diluculo erexerunt ea et aptaverunt et
at-the-highest moreover dawn they-raised them and fitted and

ornaverunt castrum in Ima. et IIa. et IIIa. feria. Comes
equipped the-castle on the-first and second and third weekday the-count
namque S. Egidii a meridiana plaga reficiebat suam
for of-Saint Gilles from the-southern quarter was-repairing his
machinam. Interea in tanta pressura sitis fuimus districti,
engine meanwhile in such pressure of-thirst we-were constrained
ut unus homo non posset pro uno denario ad sufficientiam
that one man not could for one penny to sufficiency
habere aquam aut exstinguere sitim suam. Nocte vero ac
have water or quench thirst his by-night indeed and
die, in IVa. et Va. feria, mirabiliter aggredimur civitatem
by-day on the-fourth and fifth weekday wondrously we-attack the-city
ex omni parte. Sed antequam invaderemus eam, ordinaverunt
from every side but before we-attacked it ordained
episcopi et sacerdotes praedicando et commonendo omnes,
the-bishops and priests by-preaching and by-admonishing all
ut processionem Deo in circuitu Hierusalem celebrarent
that a-procession to-God in the-circuit of-Jerusalem they-should-celebrate
et orationes atque eleemosynas et ieiunia fideliter facerent.
and prayers and alms and fasts faithfully should-make
Sexta vero feria, summo mane, undique aggredimur urbem
on-the-sixth indeed weekday at-highest morning on-all-sides we-attack the-city
et nihil ei nocere potuimus, eramusque omnes stupefacti
and nothing it to-harm we-could and-we-were all stupefied
ac in nimio pavore. Appropinquante autem hora, scilicet in
and in excessive fear drawing-near moreover the-hour namely in
qua Dominus noster Iesus Christus dignatus est pro nobis
which Lord our Jesus Christ deigned has for us
sufferre patibulum crucis, nostri milites fortiter pugnabant
to-bear the-gibbet of-the-cross our knights strongly fought
in castello, videlicet dux Godefridus et comes Eustachius,
in the-castle namely duke Godfrey and count Eustace

frater eius. Tunc ascendit quidam miles ex nostris, Letholdus
brother his then climbed a-certain knight of ours Letold
nomine, super murum urbis. Mox vero, ut ascendit,
by-name onto the-wall of-the-city soon indeed as he-climbed
omnes defensores civitatis fugerunt per muros et per
all the-defenders of-the-city fled along the-walls and through
civitatem, nostrique subsecuti persequebantur eos occidendo
the-city and-our-men having-followed pursued them killing
et detruncando usque ad templum Salomonis; ibique talis
and cutting-down all-the-way to the-temple of-Solomon and-there such
occisio fuit, ut nostri in sanguine illorum pedes usque ad
slaughter was that our-men in the-blood of-them feet all-the-way to
cavillas mitterent. At Raimundus comes a meridie conduxit
the-ankles put but Raymond the-count from the-south led
suum exercitum et castellum usque prope murum; sed inter
his army and castle all-the-way near the-wall but between
castellum et murum erat quaedam fovea nimis profunda.
the-castle and the-wall was a-certain ditch very deep
Tunc consiliati sunt nostri, ut implerent foveam, feceruntque
then took-counsel have our-men that they-should-fill the-ditch and-they-caused
praeconari, ut, si aliquis in illam foveam portasset III petras,
to-be-proclaimed that if anyone into that ditch had-carried three stones
unum haberet denarium. Perduravit vero haec impletio
one he-should-have penny lasted indeed this filling
per III dies et noctes. Tandem plena fovea conduxerunt
for three days and nights at-length filled the-ditch they-led
castellum iuxta murum. Illi autem, qui intus erant, mirabiliter
the-castle beside the-wall they moreover who inside were wondrously
proeliabantur cum nostris igne et lapidibus. Audiens itaque
fought with our-men with-fire and stones hearing and-so

comes, quod Franci essent in urbe, suis dixit hominibus:
the-count that the-Franks were in the-city to-his said men
Quid tardatis? Ecce omnes Francigenae sunt iam in urbe!
why do-you-delay behold all the-French-born are now in the-city
Ammiralius itaque, qui erat in Turri David, reddidit se
the-emir and-so who was in the-Tower of-David surrendered himself
comiti, eique aperuit portam, ubi peregrini persolvere
to-the-count and-to-him opened the-gate where the-pilgrims to-pay
solebant tributa. Intrantes autem civitatem nostri peregrini
were-wont tributes entering moreover the-city our pilgrims
persequebantur et occidebant Saracenos usque ad templum
pursued and killed the-Saracens all-the-way to the-temple
Salomonis, in quo congregati dederunt nostris maximum
of-Solomon in which gathered they-gave to-our-men a-very-great
bellum per totum diem, ita ut sanguis illorum per totum
battle through the-whole day so that the-blood of-them through the-whole
templum flueret. Tandem superatis paganis apprehenderunt
temple flowed at-length overcome the-pagans seized
nostri masculos et feminas sat in templo, et occiderunt
our-men males and females enough in the-temple and killed
quos voluerunt, et quos voluerunt retinuerunt vivos. Super
whom they-wished and whom they-wished they-kept alive upon
templum vero Salomonis erat maxima paganorum congregatio
the-temple indeed of-Solomon was a-very-great of-pagans gathering
utriusque sexus, quibus Tancredus et Gaston de Beert
of-both sex to-whom Tancred and Gaston of Béarn
dederunt sua vexilla. Mox cucurrerunt per universam urbem,
gave their banners soon they-ran through all the-city
capientes aurum et argentum, equos et mulos domosque
seizing gold and silver horses and mules and-houses
plenas omnibus bonis. Venerunt autem omnes nostri gaudentes
full of-all goods came moreover all our-men rejoicing

et prae nimio gaudio plorantes ad nostri Salvatoris Jesu
and for excessive joy weeping to of-our Savior Jesus
Sepulcrum adorandum et reddiderunt ei capitale debitum.
the-Sepulcher to-be-worshiped and paid to-him the-capital debt
Mane autem facto ascenderunt nostri caute supra tectum
morning moreover made climbed our-men warily onto the-roof
templi et invaserunt Saracenos masculos et feminas,
of-the-temple and attacked the-Saracens males and females
decollantes eos nudis ensibus; alii vero dabant se
beheading them with-bare swords others but gave themselves
praecipites e templo. Hoc videns Tancredus iratus est nimis.
headlong from the-temple this seeing Tancred angered was very-much

XXXIX · GODFREY CHOSEN AND THE BATTLE OF ASCALON

The dead are piled outside the walls, and eight days after the city falls on July 15 Godfrey is chosen prince of the city, and on August 1 Arnulf patriarch. Hearing that the emir of Babylon comes, the army marches to Ascalon, and on August 12 it routs his host. The emir laments his defeat by a beggarly people, and the Franks return with countless spoils.

Tunc nostri tenuerunt consilium, ut unusquisque faceret
then our-men held a-council that each should-make
eleemosynas cum orationibus, quatinus sibi Deus eligeret
alms with prayers so-that for-himself God might-choose
quem vellet regnare super alios et regere civitatem.
whom he-wished to-reign over the-others and to-rule the-city
Iusserunt quoque Saracenos mortuos omnes eiici foras prae
they-ordered also the-Saracens dead all to-be-thrown outside for
nimio fetore, quia omnis urbs plena erat illorum cadaveribus,
excessive stench because all the-city full was of-their corpses

et vivi Saraceni trahebant mortuos ante portarum exitus et
and living Saracens dragged the-dead before of-the-gates the-exits and
ordinabant montes ex eis quasi essent domus. Tales occisiones
arranged mountains of them as-if they-were houses such slaughters
de paganorum gente nullus unquam audivit nec vidit, quoniam
of of-the-pagans the-people no-one ever heard nor saw since
pyrae erant ordinatae ex eis sicut metae, et nemo scit
pyres were arranged of them like ricks and no-one knows
numerum eorum nisi solus Deus. Fecit vero comes Raimundus
the-number of-them except alone God caused indeed count Raymond
conduci ammiralium et alios, qui cum eo erant, usque Scalonem
to-be-led the-emir and others who with him were up-to Ascalon
sanos et illaesos. Octavo autem die, quo civitas fuit capta,
sound and unharmed on-the-eighth moreover day on-which the-city was taken
elegerunt ducem Godefridum principem civitatis, qui debellaret
they-chose duke Godfrey prince of-the-city who should-war-down
paganos et custodiret Christianos. Similiter elegerunt
the-pagans and should-guard the-Christians likewise they-chose
patriarcham quendam sapientissimum et honorabilem virum,
as-patriarch a-certain most-wise and honorable man
nomine Arnulfum, in die Sancti Petri ad Vincula. Haec civitas
by-name Arnulf on the-day of-Saint Peter in Chains this city
fuit capta a Christianis Dei XV°. die Julii, in VI^{a}. feria.
was taken by the-Christians of-God on-the-fifteenth day of-July on the-sixth weekday
Interea nuntius venit Tancredo et comiti Eustachio, ut
meanwhile a-messenger came to-Tancred and to-count Eustace that
praepararent se et pergerent ad recipiendam Neopolitanam
they-should-prepare themselves and should-go-on for receiving the-Neapolitan
urbem. Exierunt illi et duxerunt secum multos milites et
city went-out they and led with-them many knights and
pedones, et pervenerunt ad urbem, habitatores vero illius
foot-soldiers and came to the-city the-inhabitants but of-it

reddiderunt se ilico. Denuo mandavit illis dux, ut
surrendered themselves at-once again sent-word to-them the-duke that
cito venirent ad bellum, quod admiravisus Babyloniae
quickly they-should-come to the-battle which the-emir of-Babylon
praeparat urbi Scaloniae. Illi autem festinando intraverunt
prepares for-the-city of-Ascalon they moreover hastening entered
montaneam, quaerentes Saracenorum bella, et venerunt
the-mountain seeking of-the-Saracens battles and came
Caesaream. Itaque venientes illi iuxta mare ad urbem Ramore;
to-Caesarea and-so coming they beside the-sea to the-city Ramore
illic invenerunt multos Arabes, qui praecursores erant belli.
there they-found many Arabs who forerunners were of-the-battle
Quos nostri persequentes, apprehenderunt plures ex eis, qui
whom our-men pursuing seized many of them who
dixerunt omnia belli nova, ubi essent et quot essent
told all of-the-battle the-news where they-were and how-many they-were
aut ubi bellare disponerent contra Christianos. Quod
or where to-make-war they-were-arranging against the-Christians which
audiens Tancredus, statim misit nuntium Hierusalem duci
hearing Tancred at-once sent a-messenger to-Jerusalem to-duke
Godefrido et patriarchae omnibusque principibus, dicens:
Godfrey and to-the-patriarch and-to-all the-princes saying
Sciatis, quod nobis paratum est bellum Scalonae; venite
know that for-us prepared is battle at-Ascalon come
ergo festinanter cum omni virtute quam habere poteritis!
therefore hastily with all the-strength which to-have you-shall-be-able
Tunc iussit dux submoneri omnes, ut fideliter irent
then ordered the-duke to-be-summoned all that faithfully they-should-go
praeparati Scalonam obviam inimicis nostris. Ipse vero cum
prepared to-Ascalon to-meet enemies our he but with
patriarcha et Rotberto, Flandrensi comite, exivit de urbe
the-patriarch and Robert the-Flemish count went-out from the-city

in feria IIIª., et Marturanensis episcopus cum eis. Comes
on the-weekday third and the-Martirano bishop with them the-count
vero Sancti Egidii ac Rotbertus Nortmannus dixerunt se
but of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman said themselves
non exituros, nisi certum bellum scirent. Iusserunt
not about-to-go-out unless a-sure battle they-should-know they-ordered
ergo militibus suis, ut pergerent videre, si bellum vere
therefore knights their that they-should-go-on to-see whether the-battle truly
esset, et reverterentur quantocius, quia ipsi mox essent parati
was and should-return with-all-speed because they soon would-be ready
ire. Ierunt illi et viderunt bellum et cito renuntiaverunt
to-go went they and saw the-battle and quickly reported
se vidisse oculis suis. Continuo dux, apprehenso
themselves to-have-seen-it with-eyes their at-once the-duke taken-hold-of
Marturanensi episcopo, mandavit Hierusalem, quo milites, qui
the-Martirano bishop sent-word to-Jerusalem that the-knights who
ibi erant, praeparent se et veniant ad bellum. Quarta
there were should-prepare themselves and come to the-battle on-the-fourth
vero feria illi principes exierunt et militaverunt ad bellum.
indeed weekday those princes went-out and marched to battle
Episcopus vero Marturanensis rediit, reportans verba missa
the-bishop but of-Martirano returned carrying-back the-words sent
patriarchae et duci, exieruntque Saraceni obviam ei et
to-the-patriarch and to-the-duke and-went-out the-Saracens to-meet him and
apprehensum secum duxerunt. Petrus vero heremita remansit
seized-him with-them led-away Peter but the-hermit remained
Hierusalem ordinando et praecipiendo Graecis et Latinis
at-Jerusalem ordaining and commanding the-Greeks and Latins
atque clericis, ut fideliter Deo processionem celebrarent
and clerics that faithfully to-God a-procession they-should-celebrate
et orationes eleemosynasque facerent, ut Deus populo suo
and prayers and-alms should-make that God to-people his

victoriam daret. Clerici namque et presbyteri, induti sacris
victory might-give the-clerics for and presbyters clothed in-sacred
vestibus, ad templum Domini conduxere processionem, missas
vestments to the-temple of-the-Lord led a-procession masses
et orationes decantantes, ut suum defenderet populum.
and prayers singing that his he-should-defend people
Denique patriarcha et episcopi aliique seniores congregati
finally the-patriarch and the-bishops and-other lords gathered
sunt ad flumen, quod est ex hac parte Scalonae. Illic multa
were at the-river which is on this side of-Ascalon there many
animalia boum, camelorum, ovium atque omnium bonorum
animals of-oxen of-camels of-sheep and of-all goods
depraedati sunt. Venerunt autem Arabes fere CCC,
plundered have came moreover Arabs about three-hundred
irrueruntque nostri super illos et apprehenderunt duos
and-rushed our-men upon them and seized two
ex eis, persequentes alios usque ad eorum exercitum.
of them pursuing the-others all-the-way to their army
Sero autem facto patriarcha fecit praeconari per omnem
evening moreover made the-patriarch caused to-be-proclaimed through all
hostem, ut in summo mane cras essent omnes parati
the-camp that at the-highest morning tomorrow they-should-be all ready
ad bellum, excommunicans, ne ullus homo intenderet
for battle excommunicating lest any man should-turn-his-mind
ad ulla spolia, donec bellum esset factum; sed eo facto
to any spoils until the-battle should-be done but it done
reverterentur cum felici gaudio ad capiendum quicquid eis
they-should-return with happy joy for taking whatever to-them
praedestinatum esset a Domino.
foreordained might-be by the-Lord

Summo vero diluculo, in VI[a]. feria, intraverunt in
at-the-highest indeed dawn on the-sixth weekday they-entered into
vallem nimis pulchram secus litus maris, in qua suas
a-valley very beautiful beside the-shore of-the-sea in which their
ordinaverunt acies. Dux instruxit suam aciem et comes
they-ordered battle-lines the-duke drew-up his battle-line and the-count
Nortmanniae suam, comes Sancti Egidii suam, comes
of-Normandy his the-count of-Saint Gilles his the-count
Flandrensis suam, comes Eustachius suam, Tancredus et
of-Flanders his count Eustace his Tancred and
Gaston suam; ordinaverunt quoque pedites et sagittarios,
Gaston their they-ordered also the-foot-soldiers and archers
qui praecederent milites, et sic ordinaverunt omnia; statimque
who should-go-before the-knights and so they-ordered all-things and-at-once
coeperunt militare in nomine Domini Jesu Christi. In
began to-march in the-name of-the-Lord Jesus Christ on
sinistra vero parte fuit dux Godefridus cum sua acie,
the-left indeed side was duke Godfrey with his battle-line
comesque Sancti Egidii equitavit iuxta mare in dextra parte.
and-the-count of-Saint Gilles rode beside the-sea on the-right side
Comes Nortmanniae et comes Flandrensis et Tancredus
the-count of-Normandy and the-count of-Flanders and Tancred
omnesque alii equitabant in medio. Tunc nostri coeperunt
and-all the-others rode in the-middle then our-men began
paulatim ambulare. Pagani vero stabant parati ad bellum.
little-by-little to-walk the-pagans but stood ready for battle
Unusquisque suum habebat vasculum pendens collo, ex
each his had little-vessel hanging from-the-neck from
quibus potarent persequentes nos; sed illis non licuit
which they-might-drink pursuing us but to-them not it-was-allowed
gratia Dei. Comes autem de Nortmannia cernens ammiravisi
by-the-grace of-God the-count moreover of Normandy seeing of-the-emir

stantarum habere quoddam pomum aureum in summitate
the-standard to-have a-certain apple golden on the-top
hastae, quae erat cooperta argento, ruit vehementer super
of-the-spear which was covered with-silver rushed vehemently upon
illum eumque vulneravit usque ad mortem. Ex alia parte
him and-him wounded all-the-way to death from the-other side
comes Flandrensis nimis acriter illos invasit. Tancredus igitur
the-count of-Flanders very fiercely them attacked Tancred therefore
impetum fecit per medium tentorium eorum, quod videntes
an-onset made through the-middle-of camp their which seeing
pagani continuo inierunt fugam. Paganorum multitudo erat
the-pagans at-once entered flight of-the-pagans the-multitude was
innumerabilis, numerumque eorum nemo scit nisi solus Deus;
countless and-the-number of-them no-one knows except alone God
bella vero erant immensa, sed virtus divina comitabatur
the-battles but were immense but the-power divine accompanied
nobiscum tam magna, tam fortis, quod statim superavimus
with-us so great so strong that at-once we-overcame
illos. Stabant autem inimici Dei excaecati et stupefacti,
them stood moreover the-enemies of-God blinded and stupefied
ac videntes Christi milites apertis oculis nil videbant
and seeing of-Christ the-knights with-open eyes nothing they-saw
et contra Christianos erigere se non audebant, virtute
and against the-Christians to-raise themselves not they-dared by-the-power
Dei tremefacti. Prae nimio timore ascendebant in arbores, in
of-God terrified for excessive fear they-climbed into trees in
quibus putabant se abscondere; at nostri sagittando et
which they-thought themselves to-hide but our-men by-shooting-arrows and
cum lanceis et ensibus occidendo eos ad terram praecipitabant.
with lances and swords by-killing them to the-earth threw-headlong
Alii autem iactabant se in terram, non audentes se
others moreover threw themselves on the-ground not daring themselves

erigere contra nos. Nostri igitur illos detruncabant, sicut
to-raise against us our-men therefore them cut-down as
aliquis detruncat animalia ad macellum. Comes Sancti
anyone cuts-down animals at the-slaughterhouse the-count of-Saint
Egidii iuxta mare occidit ex eis sine numero; alii vero
Gilles beside the-sea killed of them without number others but
se praecipitabant in mare, alii fugiebant huc illucque.
themselves threw-headlong into the-sea others fled hither and-thither
Veniens itaque ammiravissus ante civitatem, dolens et
coming and-so the-emir before the-city grieving and
maerens lacrimando dixit: O Deorum spiritus! Quis unquam
mourning weeping said O of-the-Gods spirits who ever
vidit vel audivit talia! Tanta potestas, tanta virtus, tanta
saw or heard such-things so-great a-power so-great a-strength so-great
militia, quae nunquam ab ulla gente fuit superata, modo
an-army which never by any people was overcome now
a tantilla gente Christianorum, quod in pugillo potest
by so-tiny a-people of-Christians which in a-fist can
claudi, est devicta! Heu mihi tristis ac dolens! Quid
to-be-enclosed is conquered alas for-me sad and grieving what
amplius dicam? Superatus sum a gente mendica, inermi et
further shall-I-say overcome I-am by a-people beggarly unarmed and
pauperrima, quae non habet nisi saccum et peram. Ipsa
most-poor which not has except a-sack and a-wallet it
modo persequitur gentem Aegyptiacam, quae illi plerumque
now pursues the-people Egyptian which to-it often
suas largita est eleemosynas, dum olim per omnem nostram
its bestowed has alms when once through all our
patriam mendicarent. Huc conduxi ad conventionem CC
fatherland they-begged hither I-led for the-covenant two-hundred
milia militum et video ipsos laxis frenis fugientes per
thousand of-knights and I-see them with-loosened bridles fleeing along

viam Babylonicam, et non audent reverti adversus gentem
the-road of-Babylon and not they-dare to-return against the-people
Francigenam. Iuro per Machumet et per omnia Deorum
French-born I-swear by Muhammad and by all of-the-Gods
numina, quod ulterius non retinebo milites conventione
the-powers that further not I-shall-retain knights by-covenant
aliqua, quia expulsus sum a gente advena. Conduxi omnia
any because driven-out I-am by a-people stranger I-led all
armorum genera et omnia instrumenta sive machinamenta,
of-arms the-kinds and all implements or engines
ut eos obsiderem in Hierusalem, et ipsi praevenerunt me ad
that them I-might-besiege in Jerusalem and they forestalled me for
bellum itinere dierum duorum. Vech! Quid mihi esset, si
battle by-a-journey of-days two woe what to-me would-be if
illius gentem conduxissem meam? Heu mihi! Quid amplius
of-that-one the-people I-had-led mine alas for-me what further
dicam? Inhonoratus ero semper in terra Babylonica.
shall-I-say dishonored I-shall-be always in the-land of-Babylon
Nostri autem acceperunt eius stantarum, quod comparavit
our-men moreover took his standard which bought
comes de Nortmannia XX marchas argenti et dedit
the-count of Normandy for-twenty marks of-silver and gave-it
patriarchae in Dei honorem et Sancti Sepulcri; ensem vero
to-the-patriarch in of-God honor and of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-sword but
emit quidam LX bisanteis. Superati sunt itaque inimici
bought a-certain-man for-sixty bezants overcome were and-so enemies
nostri, Deo annuente. Omnes naves terrarum paganorum ibi
our God nodding all the-ships of-the-lands of-the-pagans there
aderant; homines vero, qui intus erant, videntes ammiravissum
were-present the-men but who inside were seeing the-emir
fugientem cum suo exercitu, statim suspenderunt vela et
fleeing with his army at-once hoisted the-sails and

impulerunt se in alta maria. Reversi sunt nostri ad
drove themselves into the-high seas returned have our-men to
tentoria eorum, acceperuntque innumera spolia auri, argenti
the-tents their and-received countless spoils of-gold of-silver
omniumque bonorum cumula, equos et mulos, asinos et
and-of-all goods heaps horses and mules asses and
camelos, innumerabiles oves et boves et instrumenta. Omnes
camels countless sheep and oxen and implements all
namque montes et colles et omnia plana stabant
for the-mountains and hills and all the-plains stood
cooperta de multitudine illorum animalium, et invenerunt
covered with the-multitude of-those animals and they-found
armorum cumula, quae voluerunt deportaverunt, reliqua igne
of-arms heaps which they-wished they-carried-off the-rest by-fire
consumpserunt. Reversi sunt nostri cum gaudio Hierusalem,
they-consumed returned have our-men with joy to-Jerusalem
deferentes secum omnia bona, scilicet camelos et asinos
carrying with-them all goods namely camels and asses
onustos pane, biscocto et farina et frumento et caseo et
laden with-bread twice-baked and flour and grain and cheese and
pane et oleo et omnibus bonis, quae illis necesse erant. Hoc
bread and oil and all goods which to-them necessary were this
bellum factum est pridie idus Augusti, largiente hoc
battle done was on-the-day-before the-Ides of-August granting this
Domino nostro Jesu Christo, cui est honor et gloria nunc et
Lord our Jesus Christ to-whom is honor and glory now and
semper et in saecula saeculorum. Dicat omnis spiritus Amen.
always and into the-ages of-ages let-say every spirit amen

FULCHER OF CHARTRES

Historia Hierosolymitana

The History of Jerusalem, Book I

Prologus

PROLOGUE

The deeds of brave men please the living and help the dead, for whom the faithful pray when they hear them. Urged by companions, Fulcher sets down what he saw on the journey in a rustic but truthful style. The Franks' deeds are not far below those of the Israelites and Maccabees, for he saw or heard of many martyred for Christ, and a small people survived among so many enemies.

Placet equidem vivis, prodest etiam mortuis, cum gesta
it-pleases indeed to-the-living it-profits also to-the-dead when the-deeds
virorum fortium, praesertim Deo militantium, vel scripta
of-men brave especially for-God soldiering either written
leguntur vel in mentis armariolo memoriter retenta inter
are-read or in of-the-mind the-little-cabinet by-memory retained among
fideles sobrie recitantur. nam qui vivunt in mundo, audita
the-faithful soberly are-recited for those-who live in the-world heard
intentione pia praedecessorum fidelium, quomodo mundi
the-intent pious of-predecessors faithful how of-the-world
flore spreto Deo adhaeserunt et parentes uxoresque
the-flower spurned to-God they-clung and parents and-wives
suas, possessiones quoque quantaslibet relinquentes iuxta
their possessions also however-great leaving according-to
praeceptum evangelicum Deum secuti sunt, ad diligendum
the-precept of-the-Gospel God followed have for loving
eum ardentius compuncti, ipso inspirante, animantur. mortuis
him more-ardently pricked he inspiring are-quickened to-the-dead
siquidem in Domino valde prodest, cum, auditis operibus
indeed in the-Lord greatly it-profits when heard the-works
eorum bonis et devotis, fideles animas eorum proinde
their good and devout the-faithful souls their accordingly

benedicunt et eleemosynas cum orationibus tam cogniti
bless and alms with prayers as-well known
quam ignoti pro eis caritative impendunt. unde comparium
as unknown for them charitably they-bestow whence of-companions
meorum quorundam pulsatibus aliquotiens motus, Francorum
my certain by-the-urgings at-times moved of-the-Franks
gesta in Domino clarissima qui Dei ordinatione cum armis
the-deeds in the-Lord most-illustrious who of-God by-ordinance with arms
Iherusalem peregrinati sunt, stilo rusticano, tamen veraci,
to-Jerusalem made-pilgrimage have in-style rustic yet truthful
dignum ducens memoriae commendandum, prout valui et
worthy deeming to-memory to-be-committed as I-was-able and
oculis meis in ipso itinere perspexi, diligenter digessi. licet
with-eyes my on that-very journey I-saw diligently I-arranged although
autem nec Israeliticae plebis nec Machabaeorum aut aliorum
moreover neither of-the-Israelite people nor of-the-Maccabees or of-others
plurium praerogativae, quos Deus tam crebris et magnificis
many the-prerogatives whom God with-so frequent and magnificent
miraculis inlustravit, hoc opus praelibatum aequiparare non
miracles illumined this work aforesaid to-equal not
audeam, tamen haut longe ab illis gestis inferius aestimatum,
I-dare yet not far from those deeds lower esteemed
quoniam Dei miracula in eo noscuntur multipliciter
since of-God the-miracles in it are-known manifoldly
perpetrata, scriptis commendare curavi; quin immo in
performed to-writings to-commit I-have-taken-care nay rather in
quo disparantur hi postremi ab illis primis vel Israeliticis
what are-different these last-ones from those first either Israelites
vel Machabaeis, quos quidem vidimus in regionibus eorum
or Maccabees whom indeed we-saw in the-regions their
saepe apud nos aut audivimus longe a nobis positos, pro
often among us or we-heard far from us placed for

amore Christi emembrari, crucifigi, excoriari, sagittari,
the-love of-Christ to-be-dismembered to-be-crucified to-be-flayed to-be-shot-with-arrows
secari et diverso martyrii genere consummari, nec minis
to-be-cut and by-diverse of-martyrdom kind to-be-finished neither by-threats
nec blanditiis aliquibus posse superari; quin potius, si
nor by-blandishments any to-be-able to-be-overcome nay rather if
non deesset percussoris gladius, multi nostrum pro Christi
not had-been-lacking of-the-striker the-sword many of-us for of-Christ
amore perimi non recusassent. o quot milia martyrum in
love to-be-slain not would-have-refused O how-many thousands of-martyrs in
hac expeditione beata morte finierunt! sed quis tam saxei
this expedition by-a-blessed death ended but who of-so stony
est cordis, qui haec Dei facta audiat et pietatis visceribus
is heart who these of-God deeds may-hear and of-pity with-bowels
commotus in laudes Dei non erumpat? quis potest non
moved into praises of-God not may-burst-out who can not
mirari, quomodo nos, exiguus populus inter tot hostium
marvel how we a-tiny people among so-many of-enemies
nostrorum regna, non solum resistere, sed etiam vivere
our kingdoms not only to-resist but also to-live
poteramus? quis audivit unquam talia? hinc Aegyptus
could who has-heard ever such-things on-this-side Egypt
et Aethiopia, hinc Arabia et Chaldaea atque Syria,
and Ethiopia on-this-side Arabia and Chaldaea and Syria
hinc Assyria et Media, hinc Parthia et Mesopotamia,
on-this-side Assyria and Media on-this-side Parthia and Mesopotamia
hinc Persida et Scythia; mare etiam magnum a
on-this-side Persia and Scythia the-sea also great from
Christianismo nos excludebat et inter manus nos laniantium,
Christendom us shut-out and among the-hands us of-those-tearing
sicut permittebat Deus, concludebat. ipse autem in brachio
as permitted God shut-in he moreover with arm

forti nos pie protegebat. beata enim gens cuius est
strong us piously protected blessed for the-people whose is
Dominus Deus eius! modum autem huius operis et inceptum
the-Lord God its the-manner moreover of-this work and the-beginning
et quomodo ad tantum iter agendum omnis populus
and how for so-great a-journey to-be-made all the-people
occidentalis concussus et mentes et manus in id extenderit
western shaken both minds and hands to it stretched
voluntarius, verba historica quae sequuntur declarabunt.
willing the-words historical which follow shall-declare

De concilio apud Clarummontem constituto

I · THE COUNCIL AT CLERMONT

In 1095, under Henry in Germany and Philip in France, Pope Urban II sees the faith trampled, the princes at war, the goods of the land plundered, and holy places violated, and hears that the Turks are subjecting Romania. He crosses the Alps and assembles a council of three hundred and ten bishops and abbots at Clermont, where he laments the Church's state and urges them to restore it.

Anno igitur ab incarnatione Domini MºXCºVº regnante in
in-the-year therefore from the-incarnation of-Lord the-1095th reigning in
Alemannia Henrico imperatore dicto, in Francia rege Philippo,
Germany Henry emperor called in France king Philip
cum in universis Europae partibus mala multimoda vacillante
when in all of-Europe parts evils manifold wavering
fide inolescerent, praeerat urbi Romae papa secundus
the-faith were-growing presided over-the-city of-Rome pope the-second
Urbanus, vir egregius vita et moribus, qui ecclesiae sanctae
Urban a-man excellent in-life and manners who of-the-church holy
statum semper sublimius provehendum super omnia consulte
the-state always more-loftily to-be-advanced above all-things deliberately

ac strenue moderari sategit. videns autem Christianitatis fidem
and vigorously to-govern strove seeing moreover of-Christendom the-faith
enormiter ab omnibus, tam clero quam populo, pessundari et
enormously by all as-well clergy as people to-be-trampled and
terrarum principibus incessanter certamine bellico nunc istis
of-the-lands by-the-princes unceasingly in-contest warlike now these
nunc illis inter se dissidentibus pacem omnino postponi,
now those among themselves quarreling peace wholly to-be-set-aside
bona terrae alternatim diripi, multos iniuriose vinctos
the-goods of-the-land in-turn to-be-plundered many wrongfully bound
captivari et in carceres teterrimos truculentissime subrui,
to-be-taken-captive and into prisons most-foul most-savagely to-be-thrust
supra modum redimi vel intus trifariam angariatos, scilicet
beyond measure to-be-ransomed or inside in-three-ways tormented namely
inedia, siti, algore, obitu clandestino exstingui, loca sancta
by-starvation thirst cold by-death secret to-be-extinguished places holy
violari, monasteria villasque igni cremari, nulli mortalium
to-be-violated monasteries and-villages by-fire to-be-burned none of-mortals
parci, divina et humana ludibriis haberi. audiens etiam
to-be-spared divine-things and human as-mockeries to-be-held hearing also
interiores Romaniae partes, a Turcis super Christianos
the-inner of-Romania parts by the-Turks over the-Christians
occupatas, impetu feroci perniciose subdi, pietate
seized with-onslaught fierce ruinously to-be-subjected by-pity
compatienti dilectionisque Dei nutu permotus, montes
compassionate and-of-love of-God by-the-nod moved the-mountains
transmeando in Gallias descendit atque in Alvernia, concilium
crossing into the-Gauls he-came-down and in Auvergne a-council
legationibus competenter undique praemonitum, apud
by-embassies fittingly from-everywhere forewarned at
Clarummontem, quae civitas sic vocatur, coadunari fecit,
Clermont which city so is-called to-be-assembled he-caused

CCCX tam episcoporum quam abbatum adsistentium
three-hundred-and-ten as-well of-bishops as of-abbots being-present
cambutis deputatis. his itaque die ad haec praenominato
with-croziers deputed these and-so on-the-day for this appointed
ad se convocatis adlocutione dulciflua diligenter conventus
to himself called-together with-address sweet-flowing diligently of-the-assembly
causam innotuit. nam sub ecclesiae lugentis voce querula
the-cause he-made-known for under of-the-church mourning with-voice plaintive
planctum non minimum expressit et de mundi fluctuantis
a-lament not the-least he-expressed and about of-the-world fluctuating
tempestatibus tantimodis, ut superius praefatum est, fide
the-storms in-so-many-ways as above foresaid it-is the-faith
subruta, sermonem prolixum cum eis tenuit. deinceps
undermined a-speech long with them he-held thereafter
rogitatu supplici cunctos exhortatus est, ut, resumptis fidei
with-entreaty suppliant all exhorted has that taken-up-again of-faith
viribus, cum ingenti sollicitatione ad expugnandas diaboli
the-strength with huge solicitude for overcoming of-the-devil
machinationes viriliter se animarent et ecclesiae
the-machinations manfully themselves they-should-quicken and of-the-church
sanctae statum, crudelissime a nefandis debilitatum, in
holy the-state most-cruelly by the-wicked weakened into
honorem pristinum competenter erigere conarentur.
honor former fittingly to-raise they-should-try

Decretum Urbani papae in eodem concilio

II · URBAN'S DECREE AT THE COUNCIL

Urban tells the clergy they are stewards and shepherds and the salt of the earth, who must salt the ignorant people and correct themselves first. He condemns simony, demands that the Church be free of secular power and tithes paid, declares whoever seizes a bishop an outlaw, anathematizes those who seize monks, clerics, nuns, pilgrims, or merchants, and orders the truce of God kept in every diocese.

Dilectissimi fratres, inquit, apostolatus apice, Dei
most-beloved brothers he-said of-the-apostolate at-the-summit of-God
permissu orbi terrae praelatus, occasione necessaria
by-permission over-the-world of-the-earth set-over by-occasion necessary
supereminente, tamquam monitionis divinae legatus, ad vos
pressing as of-admonition divine an-envoy to you
Dei servos has in partes condescendi Vrbanus. et quos
of-God servants these into parts I-have-come-down Urban and those-whom
dispensatores ministeriorum Dei esse aestimavi, tales et
stewards of-the-ministries of-God to-be I-have-judged such and
fideles, simulationis explosa luvione reperiri optavi. quod si
faithful of-pretense driven-out the-filth to-be-found I-have-wished that if
aliquid gibbosum vel tortuosum, modestia rationis iustitiae
anything humped or crooked the-moderation of-reason of-justice
semota, contra legem Dei obsistat, praesente subfragamine
removed against the-law of-God may-stand present the-support
divino, diligenter exspolire satagam. Dominus enim supra
divine diligently to-strip-away I-shall-strive the-Lord for over
familiam suam, ut ei pro tempore pabula modesto
household his that to-it in time food with-moderate
sapore condita ministretis, vos dispensatores constituit. beati
savor seasoned you-may-minister you as-stewards has-appointed blessed

autem eritis, si fideles tandem dispensationis exactor
moreover you-shall-be if faithful at-length of-the-stewardship the-demander
vos invenerit. pastores etiam nuncupamini; videte autem
you shall-have-found shepherds also you-are-called see moreover
ne mercennarii more fungamini. veri ergo pastores et
lest of-a-hireling in-the-manner you-act true therefore shepherds and
baculos semper in manibus habentes estote; nec dormitantes
staffs always in hands having be nor dozing
gregem vobis commissum undique conservate. nam si
the-flock to-you committed on-all-sides keep for if
per incuriam vestram aut negligentiam ovem quivis lupus
through carelessness your or negligence a-sheep any wolf
abripuerit, mercedem nimirum vobis paratam apud
shall-have-snatched-away the-reward doubtless for-you prepared with
Dominum nostrum amittetis. sed et lictorum flagris
Lord our you-shall-lose but also of-the-lictors with-the-scourges
primitus asperrime caesi, postmodum vero in custodiam
first most-harshly beaten afterward indeed into the-custody
funestae conversationis truculenter subruemini. vos quidem
of-a-deadly way-of-life savagely you-shall-be-thrust you indeed
iuxta sermonem evangelicum „sal estis terrae." quod si
according-to the-word of-the-Gospel the-salt are of-the-earth which if
defeceritis, ambigitur quomodo salliatur. o quanta sallitio!
you-shall-have-failed it-is-doubted how it-may-be-salted O how-great a-salting
vere necesse est vos plebem idiotam et mundi lasciviae
truly necessary is you the-people ignorant and of-the-world for-the-wantonness
supra modum inhiantem sapientiae sale corrigendo sallire, ne
beyond measure gaping of-wisdom with-salt by-correcting to-salt lest
delictis putrefacta, dum eam adloqui voluerit quandoque
by-offenses putrefied when it to-address shall-have-wished sometime
Dominus, insulsa puteat. nam si vermes, hoc est peccata,
the-Lord unsalted it-may-stink for if worms that is sins

causa desidiae procurationis vestrae, in ea reppererit,
by-reason of-the-sloth of-administration your in it he-shall-have-found
ilico vilipensam in praecipitium spurcitiarum eam subigi
at-once despised into the-precipice of-filths it to-be-thrust
praecipiet. et quia tantum perditum ei restaurare
he-shall-command and because so-much lost to-him to-restore
nequiveritis, vos in iudicio damnatos a familiaritate
you-shall-have-been-unable you in judgment condemned from the-familiarity
dilectionis suae prorsus exterminabit. sed huiusmodi sallitorem
of-love his utterly he-shall-banish but of-this-kind a-salter
oportet esse prudentem, provisorem, modestum, edoctum,
it-behooves to-be prudent a-provider modest learned
pacificum, scrutatorem, pium, iustum, aequum, mundum. nam
peaceable a-searcher pious just fair clean for
quomodo indoctus doctos, inmodestus modestos, inmundus
how the-unlearned the-learned the-immodest the-modest the-unclean
mundos efficere valebit? quod si pacem oderit,
the-clean to-make shall-be-able which if peace he-shall-have-hated
quomodo pacificabit? aut si quis habuerit manus
how shall-be-make-peace or if anyone shall-have-had hands
sordidatas, quomodo sordes alterius coinquinationis tergere
soiled how the-filth of-another defilement to-wipe
poterit? lectum est etiam, quia „si caecus caecum
shall-be-be-able read it-is also that if a-blind-man a-blind-man
duxerit, ambobus cavea patebit“. ceterum vos ipsos prius
shall-have-led to-both the-pit shall-lie-open for-the-rest you yourselves first
corrigite, ut inreprehensibiliter subditos vestros queatis
correct that irreproachably subjects your you-may-be-able
emendare. si quidem amici Dei esse vultis, libenter exercete
to-amend if indeed friends of-God to-be you-wish willingly practice
quae ei placere sentitis. res ecclesiasticas praecipue
what-things him to-please you-perceive the-things ecclesiastical especially

in suo iure constare facite, ut et simoniaca haeresis
in their-own right to-stand make that also the-simoniac heresy
nullatenus apud vos radicet; cavete ne vendentes ac ementes
in-no-way among you take-root beware lest selling and buying
flagris flagellati dominicis per angiportus in exterminium
with-scourges scourged of-the-Lord through the-alleys into the-destruction
confusionis miserabiliter propellantur. ecclesiam suis ordinibus
of-confusion wretchedly they-be-driven the-church in-its orders
omnimode liberam ab omni saeculari potestate sustentate,
in-every-way free from every secular power uphold
decimas Deo de omnibus terrae cultibus fideliter dari
tithes to-God from all of-the-earth the-tillings faithfully to-be-given
facite, ne vendantur aut retineantur. qui igitur episcopum
make lest they-be-sold or be-withheld who therefore a-bishop
ceperit, omnino exlex habeatur. qui monachos vel
shall-have-seized wholly outlaw let-be-held who monks or
clericos aut sanctimoniales et eorum famulos ceperit aut
clerics or nuns and their servants shall-have-seized or
exspoliaverit, vel peregrinos vel mercatores, anathema sit.
shall-have-despoiled or pilgrims or merchants anathema let-him-be
raptores et domorum combustores et eorum consentientes,
robbers and of-houses burners and their abettors
ab ecclesia extorres, anathemate feriantur. „summopere igitur
from the-church exiled with-anathema let-be-struck above-all therefore
considerandum est“, ut dicit Gregorius, „qua multandus
to-be-considered it-is as says Gregory with-what to-be-fined
sit poena qui aliena diripit, si inferni damnatione
may-be penalty he-who another's-things plunders if of-hell with-damnation
percutitur qui propria non largitur“. sic enim diviti
is-struck he-who his-own not bestows so for to-the-rich-man
in Evangelio memorato contigit, qui „non idcirco punitus
in the-Gospel mentioned it-happened who not for-that punished

est quod aliena abstulisset, sed quia rebus acceptis
was that another's-things he-had-taken-away but because the-things received
seipsum male dereliquit". his itaque iniquitatibus, ut
himself badly abandoned with-these and-so iniquities as
dictum est, carissimi, mundum vidistis diu confusum
said it-is dearest the-world you-have-seen long confounded
fuisse, adeo ut in aliquibus provinciarum vestrarum locis,
to-have-been so-much that in some of-provinces your places
ut nobis a referentibus intimatum est, per inbecillitatem
as to-us by those-reporting made-known it-has-been through the-weakness
forsitan iustificationis vestrae, vix tute per viam quis gradi
perhaps of-justice your scarcely safely along the-road anyone to-step
audeat, quin vel die a praedonibus vel nocte a latronibus
may-dare but-that either by-day by robbers or by-night by thieves
aut vi aut ingenio maligno in domo vel extra subripiatur.
either by-force or by-cunning malign in the-house or outside he-be-snatched
quapropter treviam, sic vulgariter dictam, iam dudum a
wherefore the-truce so commonly called now long-since by
sanctis patribus determinatam, reformari oportet, quod ut
the-holy fathers determined to-be-restored it-behooves which that
firmissime in episcopatu suo unusquisque vestrum teneri
most-firmly in bishopric his each of-you to-be-held
faciat, monendo flagito. quod si aliquis sive aviditate sive
may-cause by-admonishing I-demand that if anyone either by-greed or
superbia tactus eam sponte infregerit, Dei auctoritate et
by-pride touched it willingly shall-have-broken of-God by-authority and
huius sancti concilii decretorum sanctione anathematizetur.
of-this holy council of-the-decrees by-the-sanction let-him-be-anathematized

Item exhortatio ipsius de itinere Hierosolymitano

III · URBAN'S CALL TO THE JOURNEY

Urban adds a greater matter: the Turks have overrun the eastern Christians as far as the Arm of Saint George. He bids the clergy urge all ranks, rich and poor, to go to their help, promising remission of sins to all who die on the way. Those who fought private wars and served for pay should now fight the barbarians for eternal reward, setting out when winter ends.

His et aliis pluribus competenter dispositis, cuncti adsistentes,
these and others many fittingly arranged all those-present
tam clerus quam populus, Deo gratias agendo, dictis
as-well clergy as people to-God thanks giving to-the-words
domni Urbani papae voluntarie adspiraverunt et fideli
of-lord Urban the-pope willingly assented and with-faithful
pollicitatione decreta illius bene tenenda confirmaverunt. sed
promise the-decrees his well to-be-kept confirmed but
et aliud ilico, non minus tribulationis iam dictae,
also another-thing at-once not less than-the-tribulation already spoken
sed et maius aut pessimum ex altero mundi climate
but also greater or worst from another of-the-world region
Christianitati obesse adiecit, inquiens: quoniam, o filii Dei,
to-Christendom to-be-harmful he-added saying since O sons of-God
si pacem apud vos tenendam et ecclesiae iura conservanda
if peace among you to-be-kept and of-the-church the-rights to-be-preserved
fideliter sustentare virilius solito polliciti Deo estis,
faithfully to-uphold more-manfully than-usual promised to-God you-have
exstat operae pretium ut insuper ad quoddam aliud Dei
it-stands worth the-while that besides to a-certain other of-God
negotium et vestrum, emendatione deifica nuper vegetati,
business and yours by-amendment divine lately quickened

probitatis vestrae valetudinem versetis. necesse est enim,
of-prowess your the-vigor you-turn necessary it-is for
quatinus confratribus vestris in Orientali plaga conversantibus,
so-that to-brothers your in the-Eastern region dwelling
auxilio vestro iam saepe acclamato indigis, accelerato itinere
with-help your already often cried-out-for needy with-hastened journey
succurratis. invaserunt enim eos, sicuti plerisque vestrum
you-should-come-to-aid have-attacked for them as to-most of-you
iam dictum est, usque mare Mediterraneum, ad illud
already said it-has-been up-to the-sea Mediterranean to that
scilicet quod dicunt Brachium S. Georgii, Turci, gens
namely which they-call the-Arm of-Saint George the-Turks a-people
Persica, qui apud Romaniae fines terras Christianorum
Persian who at of-Romania the-borders the-lands of-the-Christians
magis magisque occupando, lite bellica iam septuplicata
more and-more by-occupying in-strife warlike now sevenfold
victos superaverunt, multos occidendo vel captivando,
the-conquered have-overcome many by-killing or by-taking-captive
ecclesias subvertendo, regnum Dei vastando. quos quidem si
churches by-overturning the-kingdom of-God by-laying-waste whom indeed if
sic aliquandiu in quiete siveritis, multo latius fideles
so for-some-time in quiet you-shall-have-allowed much more-widely the-faithful
Dei supergredientur. qua de re supplici prece hortor, non
of-God they-shall-overrun which for thing with-suppliant prayer I-exhort not
ego, sed Dominus, ut cunctis cuiuslibet ordinis tam equitibus
I but the-Lord that all of-whatever rank as-well horsemen
quam peditibus, tam divitibus quam pauperibus, edicto
as foot-soldiers as-well rich as poor by-edict
frequenti vos, Christi praecones, suadeatis, ut ad id genus
frequent you of-Christ heralds may-persuade that for that race
nequam de regionibus nostrorum exterminandum tempestive
wicked from the-regions of-ours to-be-exterminated in-good-time

Christicolis opitulari satagant. praesentibus dico, absentibus
the-Christians to-aid they-strive to-those-present I-say to-those-absent
mando, Christus autem imperat. cunctis autem illuc euntibus,
I-command Christ moreover orders to-all moreover thither going
si aut gradiendo aut transfretando, sive contra paganos
if either by-marching or by-crossing or against the-pagans
dimicando, vitam morte praepeditam finierint, remissio
by-fighting life by-death hindered they-shall-have-ended the-remission
peccatorum praesens aderit. quod ituris adnuo,
of-sins present shall-be-at-hand which to-those-about-to-go I-grant
dono isto investitus a Deo. o quantum dedecus, si gens tam
by-gift this invested by God O how-great a-disgrace if a-people so
spreta, degener et daemonum ancilla, gentem omnipotentis
despised degenerate and of-demons the-handmaid the-people of-almighty
Dei fide praeditam et Christi nomine fulgidam sic
God with-faith endowed and of-Christ with-name shining so
superaverit! o quanta improperia vobis ab ipso Domino
shall-have-overcome O how-great reproaches to-you by the-very Lord
imputabuntur, si eos non iuveritis qui professione
shall-be-imputed if them not you-shall-have-helped who in-profession
Christiana censentur, sicut et vos. procedant, inquit, contra
Christian are-reckoned as also you let-them-go-forth he-says against
infideles ad pugnam iam incipi dignam et trophaeo
the-infidels to a-fight now to-be-begun worthy and with-a-trophy
explendam, qui abusive privatum certamen contra fideles
to-be-completed who wrongly private warfare against the-faithful
etiam consuescebant distendere quondam. nunc fiant
even were-accustomed to-extend once now let-them-become
Christi milites, qui dudum exstiterunt raptores; nunc iure
of-Christ knights who long-since were robbers now by-right
contra barbaros pugnent, qui olim adversus fratres et
against the-barbarians let-them-fight who once against brothers and

consanguineos dimicabant; nunc aeterna praemia nanciscantur,
kinsmen fought now eternal rewards let-them-obtain
qui dudum pro solidis paucis mercennarii fuerunt. pro honore
who long-since for shillings few hirelings were for honor
duplici laborent, qui ad detrimentum corporis et animae
double let-them-labor who to the-detriment of-body and soul
se fatigabant. quinimmo hic tristes, hic pauperes, illic
themselves wearied nay-rather here sad here poor there
autem laeti et locupletes, hic inimici Domini, illic autem amici
moreover glad and rich here enemies of-the-Lord there moreover friends
eius erunt. ituris autem mora non differat iter,
his they-shall-be to-those-about-to-go moreover delay not let-defer the-journey
sed propriis locatis sumptibusque collectis, cessante bruma
but their-own leased and-expenses gathered ceasing the-winter
vernoque sequente, Domino praevio tramitem acriter intrent.
and-the-spring following the-Lord going-before the-path keenly let-them-enter

De episcopo Podiensi et de his quae postea gesta sunt

IV · ADHEMAR AND THE TAKING OF THE CROSS

Many vow to go, among them Adhemar, bishop of Le Puy, who later leads the army as the pope's vicar. The council's peace is sworn, and many of every craft vow the journey for the remission of sins, sewing crosses of silk or gold on their cloaks. Fulcher reflects that a good thought leads to a good work, and praises Urban in verse.

His dictis et audientibus gratanter ad hoc animatis, nihil
these said and the-hearers gladly to this quickened nothing
tali actu dignius aestimantes, statim plures audientium
than-such an-act more-worthy esteeming at-once many of-the-hearers
se ituros et alios absentes inde diligenter exhortaturos
themselves about-to-go and others absent thereupon diligently about-to-exhort

se spoponderunt. de quibus fuit unus episcopus Podiensis,
themselves pledged of whom was one the-bishop of-Le-Puy
nomine Ademarus, qui postea vice fungens apostolica
by-name Adhemar who afterward the-office discharging apostolic
cunctum Dei exercitum prudenter et consulte rexit
all of-God the-army prudently and deliberately ruled
et ad negotia peragenda vivaciter animavit. taliter in
and to the-business to-be-accomplished vigorously quickened thus in
concilio quae diximus stabilitis et ab omnibus bene
the-council the-things-which we-have-said established and by all well
confirmatis, absolutionis benedictione data, discesserunt; et
confirmed of-absolution the-blessing given they-departed and
hoc nescientibus, postmodum ad mansiones suas regressi,
this to-those-not-knowing afterward to dwellings their having-returned
prout gestum fuerat, divulgaverunt. quod ut passim per
as done it-had-been they-spread-abroad which as everywhere through
provincias edictum est iurisiurandi firmitudine pacem, quam
the-provinces proclaimed it-was of-an-oath with-firmness the-peace which
dicunt treviam, invicem tenendam constituerunt. deinceps vero
they-call the-truce mutually to-be-kept they-established thereafter indeed
multi cuiuslibet artis officio fungentes, comperta remissione
many of-whatever craft the-office discharging learned the-remission
peccatorum, se profecturos defaecatae mentis intentione
of-sins themselves about-to-set-out of-cleansed mind with-intent
devoverunt, quorsum ire iussum fuerat. o quam dignum erat
vowed whither to-go ordered it-had-been O how worthy was-it
et amoenum nobis omnibus cruces illas cernentibus, vel sericas
and pleasant to-us all crosses those seeing either silken
vel auro textas aut quolibet genere pallii decoras, quas in
or with-gold woven or of-whatever kind of-cloth seemly which on
chlamydibus suis aut birris aut tunicis iussu praedicti papae
cloaks their or capes or tunics by-the-order of-the-aforesaid pope

post votum eundi super humeros suos peregrini consuebant!
after the-vow of-going upon shoulders their the-pilgrims sewed
sane pugnatores Dei merito victoriae signo insigniri et
surely the-fighters of-God deservedly of-victory with-the-sign to-be-marked and
muniri debebant, qui ob honorem eius ad proeliandum se
to-be-fortified ought who for the-honor his for fighting themselves
praeparabant. et quoniam significans sub agnitione fidei
prepared and since the-signifying under the-acknowledgment of-faith
circa se sic pinxerunt, denique significatum derivativum
around themselves so they-painted finally the-signified derivative
verius adepti sunt. speciem insignierunt, ut rem
more-truly obtained have the-appearance they-bore that the-thing
speciei consequerentur. patet equidem, quia meditatio
of-the-appearance they-might-attain it-is-plain indeed that meditation
bona bonum opus agendum machinatur, opus vero bonum
good a-good work to-be-done contrives the-work but good
salutem animae lucratur. quod si bonum est bene meditari,
the-salvation of-the-soul gains which if good it-is well to-meditate
melius autem post cogitatum opus iustum patrari.
better moreover after the-thought a-work just to-be-accomplished
optimum ergo est compendium salutare, quod per dignam
best therefore is the-saving profit which through worthy
actionem animae victui adquiritur. unusquisque ergo bonum
action of-the-soul for-sustenance is-acquired each therefore good

cogitet, quod opere digno meliorando compleat, ut optimum,
let-think which by-work worthy by-bettering he-may-fulfill that the-best
quod non deficiet in aeternum, emeritus tandem accipiat.
which not shall-fail into eternity having-served at-length he-may-receive

Taliter Urbanus, vir prudens et venerandus,
thus Urban a-man prudent and venerable
Est meditatus opus, quo postea floruit orbis.
has meditated a-work by-which afterward flourished the-world

nam pacem renovavit ecclesiaeque iura in modos pristinos
for peace he-renewed and-of-the-church the-rights to ways former
restituit; sed et paganos de terris Christianorum instinctu
restored but also the-pagans from the-lands of-the-Christians with-impulse
vivaci effugare conatus est. et quoniam cuncta quae Dei
vigorous to-put-to-flight tried has and since all-things which of-God
sunt exaltare omnimode studebat, omnes fere paternitati
are to-exalt in-every-way he-was-eager all almost to-fatherhood
suae oboediendo libenter se dederunt.
his by-obeying willingly themselves gave

De dissensione Urbani papae atque Guidberti

V · URBAN AND THE ANTIPOPE GUIBERT

The devil raises Guibert of Ravenna, backed by the emperor, to usurp the papacy against Gregory and then against Urban, who wins full power only in the year the Franks pass through Rome, with Matilda's help. With two popes, very many do not know whom to obey; the head being sick, the members ache, so Urban turns the princes' wars against the pagans. Fulcher turns to his history.

Sed diabolus, qui ad detrimentum hominum semper insistere
but the-devil who for the-detriment of-men always to-press-on
nititur et veluti leo quaerit circumeundo quem devoret,
strives and like a-lion seeks by-going-around whom he-may-devour
huic adversarium quendam nomine Guidbertum, superbiae
against-this-one an-adversary certain by-name Guibert of-pride
stimulis inritatum, ad confusionem populi concitavit. qui
by-goads stirred for the-confusion of-the-people roused who
dudum imperatoris praefati Baioariorum protervitate suffultus,
long-since of-the-emperor aforesaid of-the-Bavarians by-the-insolence supported
dum praedecessor Gregorius, qui et Hildebrandus, in sede
while the-predecessor Gregory who also Hildebrand in the-see
iure habebatur, apostolatus officium usurpare coepit, ipso
by-right was-held of-the-apostolate the-office to-usurp began that-very
Gregorio a liminibus basilicae S. Petri excluso. et
Gregory from the-thresholds of-the-basilica of-Saint Peter shut-out and
quia sic perverse egit, populus melior eum cognoscere
because so perversely he-acted the-people better him to-recognize
noluit, Urbano autem iure electo et ab episcopis
was-unwilling Urban moreover by-right elected and by the-bishops
cardinalibus consecrato, maior et sanctior pars populi post
cardinal consecrated the-greater and holier part of-the-people after

Hildebrandi excessum oboediendo aspiravit. Guidbertus vero
of-Hildebrand the-departure by-obeying assented Guibert but
sustentamine imperatoris praedicti et plerorumque civium
by-the-support of-the-emperor aforesaid and of-very-many citizens
Romanorum inritamento animatus, Urbanum quamdiu potuit
Roman by-the-incitement quickened Urban as-long-as he-could
a monasterio beati Petri alienum fecit. sed dum ab
from the-monastery of-blessed Peter estranged made but while from
ecclesia sic eliminatus erat, per regiones incedens, populum
the-church so cast-out he-was through the-regions going the-people
in aliquantis devium Deo conciliabat. Guidbertus autem
in some-places straying to-God he-reconciled Guibert moreover
ob ecclesiae principatum turgidus papam proclivem
on-account-of of-the-church the-principate swollen as-pope well-disposed
oberrantibus se ostentabat et apostolatus officium, licet
to-those-straying himself displayed and of-the-apostolate the-office although
iniuste, inter consentientes exercebat et Urbani facta tamquam
unjustly among those-consenting he-exercised and of-Urban the-acts as
inrita vilipendebat. Urbanus autem eo anno, quo Franci
void he-disparaged Urban moreover in-that year in-which the-Franks
primitus Iherusalem euntes per Romam transierunt,
first to-Jerusalem going through Rome passed
totam omnino potestatem apostolicam adeptus est, auxilio
the-whole altogether power apostolic obtained has with-the-help
cuiusdam nobilissimae matronae, Mathildis nomine, quae in
of-a-certain most-noble matron Matilda by-name who in
Romana patria potestate multa tunc vigebat. Guidbertus vero
the-Roman fatherland in-power great then flourished Guibert but
tunc in Alemannia erat. itaque duo papae Romae praeerant;
then in Germany was and-so two popes at-Rome presided
sed cui oboediretur, a quamplurimis ignorabatur, vel a
but which should-be-obeyed by very-many was-not-known or from

quo consilium posceretur, vel quis aegrotis mederetur. alii
whom counsel should-be-asked or who the-sick should-heal some
huic, alii alteri favebant. Prout intellectibus hominum
this-one others the-other favored as to-the-understandings of-men
patebat, Urbanus iustior erat: putandus est recte melior
lay-plain Urban more-just was to-be-thought he-is rightly better
qui cupiditates tamquam hostes subiicit. Ravennae urbis
who desires as enemies subjects of-Ravenna of-the-city
archiepiscopus Guidbertus erat, honore et divitiis opulentus
archbishop Guibert was with-honor and riches wealthy
valde splendebat. mirandum, quare sibi tam locupleti
greatly he-shone to-be-wondered why for-himself so rich
tantum non sufficiebat. qui etiam iustae actionis exemplar
so-much not sufficed who also of-just action an-example
omnibus considerari debebat, cur temere philopompus invadere
by-all to-be-regarded ought why rashly pomp-loving to-seize
praesumpsit sceptrum imperii Dei? sane non est vi
did-he-presume the-scepter of-the-empire of-God surely not it-is by-force
rapiendum, verum cum timore et devotione suscipiendum.
to-be-seized but with fear and devotion to-be-received
nec mirum si mundus inquietabatur totus et conturbabatur,
nor wonder if the-world was-disquieted wholly and was-troubled
quoniam si Romana ecclesia, in qua principalitas correctionis
since if the-Roman church in which the-principality of-correction
universae Christianitatis obtinetur, quolibet turbine confunditur,
of-universal Christendom is-held by-any whirlwind is-confounded
confestim accidit membra sibi subdita, a capitaneis fibris
at-once it-happens the-members to-it subject from the-head nerves
dolore derivante, compassibiliter debilitari. ea enimvero
the-pain flowing-down sympathetically to-be-weakened that for
ecclesia, mater nostra scilicet, lacte cuius educabamur,
church mother our namely with-the-milk of-which we-were-reared

documento instrui valebamus, consilio muniebamus, ab
by-the-teaching to-be-instructed we-were-able by-the-counsel we-were-fortified by
illo Guidberto superbo vehementer percussa erat. cumque
that Guibert proud vehemently struck was and-when
caput sic tritum est, continuo membra laesa sunt.
the-head so crushed is at-once the-members hurt are

Si caput aegrotet, cetera membra dolent.
if the-head be-sick the-other members ache

capite autem sic laeso, etiam membris marcescentibus dolore
the-head moreover so hurt also the-members withering the-pain
concepto, quia in partibus omnibus Europae pax, bonitas,
conceived because in parts all of-Europe peace goodness
fides, in ecclesiis et extra, tam a maioribus quam minoribus
faith in the-churches and outside as-well by the-greater as the-lesser
viriliter subigebantur, necesse erat ut, malis tantimodis
manfully were-subdued necessary it-was that evils so-many-kinds
dimissis, monitione a papa Urbano sic exorsa, contra paganos
given-up the-admonition by pope Urban thus begun against the-pagans
saltem certamina inter se dudum consueta distenderent.
at-least the-contests among themselves long-since accustomed they-should-extend
Nunc igitur ad historiam stilus est vertendus: ut de
now therefore to the-history the-pen is to-be-turned that about
iter agentibus Hierosolymam et quid eis accidit et
the-journey those-making to-Jerusalem and what to-them happened and
quantum res et labor ipse paulatim, Deo adiuvante,
how-much the-thing and the-labor itself little-by-little God helping
proficiendo claruit, gesta haec ignorantibus enucleatim
by-advancing shone these deeds to-the-ignorant point-by-point
innotescat. quod ego Fulcherus Carnotensis cum ceteris
may-become-known which I Fulcher of-Chartres with the-other

iens peregrinis, postea, sicut oculis meis perspexi, diligenter
going pilgrims afterward as with-eyes my I-saw diligently
et sollicite in memoriam posteris collegi.
and solicitously into memory for-posterity collected

Quo tempore Christiani iter adripuerunt, simul et nomina principum peregrinantium

VI · THE DEPARTURE, AND THE NAMES OF THE PRINCES

From March 1096 the pilgrims set out as each is ready, in a year of plenty. Hugh the Great is taken at Durazzo; Bohemond, Godfrey, Raymond with Adhemar, Peter the Hermit, and Walter Sans-Avoir go by their roads; Robert of Normandy, Stephen of Blois, and Robert of Flanders follow. Husbands leave weeping wives, steadfast for the love of God.

Anno ab incarnatione dominica MºXCºVIº, mense in
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord the-1096th in-the-month in
Martio, post concilium, de quo dictum est, Alvernicum,
March after the-council of which spoken it-is of-Auvergne
quod mense Novembri papa Urbanus tenuit, alii aliis
which in-the-month of-November pope Urban held some than-others
paratu promptiores iter sanctum carpere coeperunt;
in-preparation readier the-journey holy to-take began
alii quidem mense Aprili vel Maio, aut Iunio sive
others indeed in-the-month of-April or May or June or
Iulio, necnon Augusto seu Septembri atque Octobri, prout
July and-also August or September and October as
sumptuum opportunitas occurrit, subsecuti sunt. quo anno
of-expenses the-opportunity occurred followed have in-which year
pax et ingens abundantia frumenti et vini per cuncta
peace and huge abundance of-grain and of-wine through all

terrarum climata exuberavit, disponente Deo, ne panis inopia
of-the-lands the-regions abounded disposing God lest of-bread for-want
in via deficerent qui cum crucibus suis iuxta eiusdem
on the-road they-should-fail who with crosses their according-to of-the-same
praecepta sequi eum elegerant. et quia competens est nomina
the-precepts to-follow him had-chosen and because fitting it-is the-names
principum tunc peregrinantium in memoria teneri, Hugonem
of-the-princes then making-pilgrimage in memory to-be-held Hugh
Magnum, Philippi regis Francorum fratrem, nomino, qui
the-Great of-Philip king of-the-Franks the-brother I-name who
primus heroum mare transiens, apud Duratium urbem in
first of-the-heroes the-sea crossing at Durazzo the-city in
Bulgaria cum suis adplicavit, sed imprudenter cum raro
Bulgaria with his-men landed but imprudently with a-thin
agmine vadens, ab ipsis civibus ibi captus est et usque
column going by those-very citizens there captured was and all-the-way
ad imperatorem Constantinopolitanum perductus, ubi per
to the-emperor of-Constantinople brought where for
aliquantum temporis non omnino liber moratus est. postque
some-amount of-time not wholly free stayed has and-after
eum Boamundus Apulus, Roberti Guischardi filius, natione
him Bohemond the-Apulian of-Robert Guiscard the-son by-nation
tamen Normannus, per eundem tramitem cum exercitu suo
yet a-Norman by the-same path with army his
meavit. porro Godefridus regni Lothariensis dux per
went further Godfrey of-the-kingdom of-Lorraine the-duke through
Hungarorum patriam cum multa gente ivit. Raimundus vero
of-the-Hungarians the-country with much people went Raymond but
comes Provincialium cum Gothis et Guasconibus, episcopus
count of-the-Provençals with the-Goths and Gascons the-bishop
quoque Podiensis Ademarus per Dalmatiam transierunt.
also of-Le-Puy Adhemar through Dalmatia passed

Petrus heremita quidam, multis sibi adiunctis peditibus
Peter a-hermit certain with-many to-himself joined foot-soldiers
sed paucis militibus, per Hungariam primitus perrexit,
but few knights through Hungary first went-on
cuius gentis postea fuit satrapa Walterus, Sine Pecunia
of-whose people afterward was the-satrap Walter Without Money
cognomine dictus, miles quidem peroptimus, qui postea intra
by-surname called a-knight indeed most-excellent who afterward between
Nicomediam et Nicaeam urbes cum sodalibus suis multis
Nicomedia and Nicaea the-cities with comrades his many
a Turcis est occisus. mense quidem Octobri Robertus
by the-Turks was killed in-the-month indeed of-October Robert
Normannorum comes, filius Guillelmi, Anglorum regis, iter
of-the-Normans the-count son of-William of-the-English king the-journey
adripuit, collecto sibi exercitu magno de Normannis et
took-up gathered for-himself an-army great of Normans and
Anglis atque Britannis; cum quo etiam ivit Stephanus, comes
English and Bretons with whom also went Stephen count
nobilis Blesensis, levir illius, et Robertus, Flandrensium
noble of-Blois brother-in-law his and Robert of-the-Flemings
comes, adiectis multis aliis nobilibus. itaque tanto collegio ab
count joined many other nobles and-so so-great a-company from
occidentalibus partibus procedente, paulatim per viam diatim
the-western parts proceeding little-by-little along the-road daily
de innumera gente concrevit exercitus exercituum undique
from countless people grew the-army of-armies from-everywhere
convenientium, ut de linguis quamplurimis et regionibus
coming-together so-that of tongues very-many and regions
multis videretis multitudinem infinitam. qui tamen in
many you-would-have-seen a-multitude infinite who yet into
unum exercitum non sunt congregati, donec ad Nicaeam
one army not were gathered until to Nicaea

urbem pervenimus. quid ergo dicam? insulae marium et omnia
the-city we-came what then shall-I-say the-islands of-the-seas and all
regna terrarum adeo concussa sunt, ut sit credendum
the-kingdoms of-the-lands so shaken were that it-is to-be-believed
adimpletam prophetiam Davidis, qui dixit in Psalmo: omnes
fulfilled the-prophecy of-David who said in the-Psalm all
gentes quascunque fecisti venient et adorabunt coram
nations whatever you-have-made shall-come and shall-worship before
te, Domine, et illud, quod postea illuc usque pervenientes
you O-Lord and that which afterward thither all-the-way arriving
merito dixerunt: adorabimus in loco ubi steterunt pedes
deservedly they-said we-shall-worship in the-place where stood the-feet
eius. de hoc itinere plurima etiam in prophetiis legimus,
his about this journey very-many-things also in the-prophecies we-read
quae revolvendi taedium est. o quantus erat dolor! quanta
which of-unrolling a-weariness is O how-great was the-grief how-great
suspiria! quot ploratus! quot lamenta inter amicos! cum
the-sighs how-many weepings how-many laments among friends when
maritus uxorem suam delinqueret sibi valde dilectam,
the-husband the-wife his left to-himself greatly beloved
pueros quoque suos, possessiones quantaslibet, patrem et
children also his possessions however-great father and
matrem, fratres aut parentes. sed quamvis tot lacrimae
mother brothers or kinsmen but although so-many tears
pro amicis ituris ante eosdem remanentes sic funderentur,
for friends about-to-go before those-same remaining thus were-shed
nequaquam proinde mulcebantur, quin propter amorem
by-no-means on-that-account were-they-softened but-that for the-love
Dei cuncta quae possidebant relinquerent: indubitanter
of-God all-things which they-possessed they-would-leave undoubtingly
credentes illud centuplum percipere, quod promisit Dominus
believing that hundredfold to-receive which promised the-Lord

diligentibus se. tunc coniunx coniugi terminum ponebat
to-those-loving him then spouse to-spouse a-term set
revertendi, quod si vita comes fuerit, adnuente Deo, ad
of-returning that if life companion shall-have-been nodding God to
eam repatriabit. commendabat eam Domino, osculum ei
her he-shall-return-home he-commended her to-the-Lord a-kiss to-her
porrigens et flendo se rediturum pollicens. illa autem
offering and by-weeping himself about-to-return promising she moreover
timens nunquam illum se videre amplius, non valebat se
fearing never him herself to-see further not was-able herself
sustentare, quin ad terram exanimis rueret; lugens pro
to-hold-up but-that to the-ground lifeless she-would-fall mourning for
amico suo, quem perdit vivum quasi iam mortuum. ille
friend her whom she-loses alive as-if already dead he
vero tamquam nil habens pietatis, et tamen habens nec
but as-if nothing having of-tenderness and yet having neither
fletui uxoris suae nec amicorum quorumcumque maerori
to-the-weeping of-wife his nor of-friends any to-the-sorrow
condolens, et tamen clam condolens, duro sic animo
sympathizing and yet secretly sympathizing with-hard thus mind
constans abibat. tristitia remanentibus, gaudium autem erat
steadfast went-away sadness for-those-remaining joy moreover was
abeuntibus. quid ergo possumus inde dicere? a Domino
for-those-going-away what then can-we thence to-say by the-Lord
factum est istud et est mirabile in oculis nostris.
done is this and it-is wondrous in eyes our

De itinere Normanni comitis et de his quae Romae tunc gerebantur

VII · THROUGH ITALY AND ROME

Fulcher's company crosses Gaul and meets Urban near Lucca. At Rome Guibert's men seize the offerings at Saint Peter's altar and throw stones from the beams, while Urban's men hold a tower. Many turn home. At Bari they pray at Saint Nicholas, but winter keeps Robert of Normandy in Calabria; Robert of Flanders crosses, and many of the poor sell their bows and go home.

Igitur nos Franci Occidentales per Italiam excursa Gallia
therefore we Franks western through Italy traversed Gaul
transeuntes, cum usque Lucam, urbem nominatissimam,
passing when up-to Lucca the-city most-renowned
pervenissemus, invenimus prope illam Urbanum apostolicum,
we-had-come we-found near it Urban the-apostolic-one
cum quo locuti sunt Robertus Normannus et Stephanus
with whom spoke have Robert the-Norman and Stephen
Blesensis comites, nos quoque ceteri qui voluimus; et ab eo
of-Blois the-counts we also the-others who wished and from him
benedictione suscepta, Romam gaudenter ivimus. et cum in
the-blessing received to-Rome gladly went and when into
basilica beati Petri introissemus, invenimus ante altare homines
the-basilica of-blessed Peter we-had-entered we-found before the-altar men
Guidberti, papae stolidi, qui oblationes altari superpositas,
of-Guibert the-pope stupid who the-offerings on-the-altar placed
gladios suos in manibus tenentes, inique adripiebant; alii vero
swords their in hands holding wickedly snatched others but
super trabes ipsius monasterii cursitabant et inde deorsum
on the-beams of-that-very monastery ran-about and thence downward
ubi prostrati orabamus lapides iaciebant. nam cum viderent
where prostrate we-prayed stones threw for when they-saw

aliquem Urbano fidelem, ilico eum trucidare volebant. in arce
anyone to-Urban faithful at-once him to-slaughter they-wished in the-tower
autem una basilicae inerant homines domini Urbani, qui eam
moreover one of-the-basilica were-within the-men of-lord Urban who it
sollicite custodiebant in eiusdem fidelitatem, et adversantibus
carefully guarded in his fealty and those-opposing
sibi, prout poterant, obsistebant. proinde satis doluimus, cum
them as they-could withstood accordingly enough we-grieved when
tantam atrocitatem ibi fieri vidimus. sed nihil aliud fieri
such atrocity there to-be-done we-saw but nothing else to-be-done
nisi a Domino vindictam exoptavimus. nec mora deinde
except by the-Lord vengeance we-longed-for nor delay then
facta, multi qui nobiscum illuc usque pervenerant, ad domos
made many who with-us thither all-the-way had-come to homes
suas ignavia marcidi redierunt. nos autem per mediam
their by-cowardice withered returned we moreover through the-middle-of
Campaniam euntes, venimus Barum, quae civitas optima
Campania going came to-Bari which city most-excellent
in maris margine sita est. ibi in ecclesia beati Nicolai
on of-the-sea the-edge situated is there in the-church of-blessed Nicholas
fusis ad Deum precibus oravimus; deinde portum adeuntes
poured-out to God prayers we-prayed then the-port approaching
transfretare tunc putavimus. sed obsistentibus nautis et
to-cross then we-thought but opposing-us the-sailors and
praevaricante fortuna, tempore tunc etiam hiemali inminente,
playing-false fortune the-time then also of-winter impending
quod nobis nocuum obiecerunt, oportuit Robertum comitem
which to-us harmful they-objected it-behooved Robert the-count
Normanniae in Calabriam secedere et toto tempore
of-Normandy into Calabria to-withdraw and the-whole time
brumali illic hiemare. tunc tamen Robertus, comes Flandriae,
wintry there to-winter then yet Robert the-count of-Flanders

cum cohorte sua transfretavit. tunc vero plurimi de plebe
with company his crossed then indeed very-many of the-people
desolati, inopiam etiam futuram metuentes, arcubus suis ibi
desolate want also future fearing bows their there
venditis et baculis peregrinationis resumptis, ad domos suas
sold and staffs of-pilgrimage taken-up-again to homes their
ignavi regressi sunt. qua de re tam Deo quam hominibus
cowards returned have which for thing as-well to-God as to-men
viles effecti sunt et versum est eis in opprobrium.
vile made were and turned it-was to-them into reproach

De submersione peregrinorum et de miraculo divinitus ostenso

VIII · THE SHIPWRECK AND THE MARCH TO CONSTANTINOPLE

On Easter Day 1097 they sail from Brindisi, and one ship splits near the shore, drowning four hundred, on some of whose bodies crosses are found marked in the flesh. Others turn home in fear. They land near Durazzo, cross Bulgaria and the Demon's river, where some drown, ford the Vardar, and reach Constantinople, which lets them in only a few at a time.

Anno igitur Domini MºXCºVIIº, reducente verno tempore
in-the-year therefore of-the-Lord the-1097th bringing-back the-spring time
mensem Martium, comes statim Normannus et comes
the-month of-March the-count at-once the-Norman and count
Stephanus Blesensis cum suis omnibus, qui similiter tempus
Stephen of-Blois with their all who likewise the-time
exspectaverant opportunum, mare repetierunt. et classe parata,
had-awaited opportune the-sea sought-again and the-fleet prepared
nonas Aprilis, quod tunc die sancti Paschae accidit,
on-the-Nones of-April which then on-the-day of-holy Easter fell

apud portum Brundisinum rates conscenderunt. o quam
at the-port of-Brindisi the-ships they-boarded O how
incognita et investigabilia Dei sunt iudicia! vidimus enim
unknown and unsearchable of-God are the-judgments we-saw for
unam navim inter ceteras, quae quasi non impediente aliqua
one ship among the-others which as-if not hindering any
occasione per medium eventu subito prope litus subcrepuit.
occasion through the-middle by-chance sudden near the-shore cracked
unde CCCC utriusque sexus demersi perierunt, de
whence four-hundred of-both sex sunk perished about
quibus laus Deo statim iucunda insonuit: nam cum corpora
whom praise to-God at-once joyful resounded for when the-bodies
iam mortua qui circumstabant pro posse collegissent,
now dead those-who stood-around for the-possible had-gathered
repertae sunt in carnibus quorundam super spatulas
found were on the-flesh of-some upon the-shoulder-blades
scilicet cruces insignitae. nam quod in pannis suis vivi
namely crosses marked for what on cloths their living
gestaverant, competebat, Domino volente, in ipsis servitio
they-had-borne it-befitted the-Lord willing in those-very in-service
suo sic praeoccupatis idem signum victoriosum sub pignore
his thus overtaken the-same sign victorious under the-pledge
fidei permanere; simul etiam tali miraculo patefieri
of-faith to-remain together also by-such a-miracle to-be-made-plain
considerantibus merito dignum erat, ipsos defunctos sub
to-those-considering deservedly worthy it-was those-very dead under
misericordia Dei iam quietem vitae perennis adeptos
the-mercy of-God already the-rest of-life everlasting obtained
fuisse, ut verissimum pateret id compleri quod scriptum
to-have that most-true might-be-plain that to-be-fulfilled which written
est: iustus qua morte praeoccupatus fuerit, in
is the-just-man by-whatever death overtaken he-shall-have-been in

refrigerio erit. de reliquis autem iam cum morte luctantibus
refreshment shall-be of the-rest moreover now with death struggling
vix pauci vitam sibi retinuerunt. equi vero et muli
scarcely a-few life for-themselves kept the-horses but and mules
sub undis exstincti sunt, pecunia quoque multa perdita
under the-waves extinguished were money also much lost
est. quod infortunium cum videremus, pavore grandi confusi
was which misfortune when we-saw with-fear great confounded
sumus, in tantum ut plerique corde debiles, nondum naves
we-were in so-much that very-many in-heart weak not-yet the-ships
ingressi, ad domos suas repedarent, peregrinatione dimissa,
having-entered to homes their went-back the-pilgrimage given-up
dicentes nunquam amplius in aquam sic deceptricem se
saying never further in water so deceitful themselves
infigere. nos autem in omnipotente Deo spem nostram
to-plunge we moreover in almighty God hope our
penitus ponentes, artemonibus sursum levatis tubaque
wholly placing the-foresails up raised and-the-trumpet
sonante multa, in pelagus nos impegimus, vento flante
sounding much into the-open-sea we drove a-wind blowing
aliquantulum. cumque per III dies fluctibus in altis, iam
somewhat and-when for three days on-the-waves in the-deep now
vento deficiente, detineremur, IVº die prope urbem
the-wind failing we-were-held on-the-fourth day near the-city
Duratium X miliariis, ut aestimo, interstantibus terram adepti
Durazzo ten miles as I-reckon standing-between land reached
sumus. duo tamen portus classem nostram susceperunt. tunc
we-have two yet ports fleet our received then
quidem iter siccum laetabundi resumpsimus et ante
indeed the-journey dry rejoicing we-took-up-again and before
urbem praefatam transivimus. itaque Bulgarorum regiones
the-city aforesaid we-passed and-so of-the-Bulgarians the-regions

per montium praerupta et loca satis deserta perreximus.
through of-the-mountains the-cliffs and places quite deserted we-went-on
Daemonis ad flumen rapidum tunc venimus omnes, quod ab
of-the-Demon to the-river rapid then we-came all which by
incolis loci sic vocitatur, et merito. vidimus enim in
the-inhabitants of-the-place so is-called and deservedly we-saw for in
illo quamplures de plebe, dum vadare pedetemptim sperabant,
it very-many of the-people while to-ford step-by-step they-hoped
torrentis impetu forti, quos nullus cernentium iuvare poterat,
of-the-torrent by-the-force strong whom none of-those-seeing to-help could
mersu perire repentino. qua de re lacrimas multas ibi
by-a-plunge to-perish sudden which for thing tears many there
pie dimisimus, et nisi equites cum equis dextrariis opem
piously we-let-fall and unless the-horsemen with horses war-horses help
peditibus ferrent, multi simili modo vitam illic perderent.
to-the-foot-soldiers had-brought many in-like way life there would-have-lost
tunc iuxta ripam castra nostra metata sunt, ubi nocte una
then beside the-bank camp our measured-out was where for-a-night one
pausavimus. montes vasti nobis undique praeerant, in quibus
we-rested mountains vast to-us on-all-sides stood-before in which
nemo incola parebat. mane autem aurora clarescente,
no inhabitant appeared in-the-morning moreover the-dawn brightening
classicis sonantibus, iter nostrum adripuimus conscendendo
the-trumpets sounding journey our we-took-up by-climbing
montem, quem Bagulatum nuncupant. postea montanis
the-mountain which Bagulatus they-call afterward the-mountains
postpositis urbibusque Lucretia, Botella, Bofinat, Stella,
put-behind and-the-cities Lucretia Botella Bofinat Stella
pervenimus ad flumen, quod vocatur Bardarium. et quod non
we-came to the-river which is-called Vardar and which not
nisi navigio transiri solitum erat, opitulante Deo, laetanter
except by-boat to-be-crossed accustomed was helping God gladly

vadando transmeavimus. quo transito, sequenti die ante
by-fording we-crossed which crossed on-the-following day before
urbem Thessalonicam, bonis omnibus abundantem, tentoria
the-city Thessalonica in-goods all abounding tents
tetendimus nostra. mora autem per IV dies ibi facta, deinde
we-stretched our the-delay moreover for four days there made then
Macedoniam transeuntes, per vallem Philippensium et per
Macedonia passing-through through the-valley of-the-Philippians and through
Crisopolim atque Christopolim, Praetoriam, Messinopolim,
Chrysopolis and Christopolis Praetoria Mosynopolis
Macram, Traianopolim, Neapolim et Panadox, Rodosto
Macra Traianopolis Neapolis and Panadox Rodosto
et Eracleam, Salumbriam et Naturam Constantinopolim
and Heraclea Selymbria and Natura to-Constantinople
pervenimus. ante quam urbem tentoriis nostris extensis,
we-came before which city the-tents our stretched
per XIV dies lassitudinem nostram adleviavimus. et quia
for fourteen days weariness our we-relieved and because
civitatem illam ingredi non quivimus, quoniam imperatori
the-city that to-enter not we-could since to-the-emperor
non placuit (timebat enim ne forte aliquod damnum ei
not it-pleased he-feared for lest perhaps some harm to-him
machinaremur), stipendium nostrum cotidianum extra muros
we-might-contrive provisions our daily outside the-walls
nos emere oportuit, quod praecepto imperatoris nobis cives
us to-buy it-behooved which by-the-precept of-the-emperor to-us the-citizens
adferebant. nec permittebatur nobis introire in civitatem nisi
brought nor was-it-allowed to-us to-enter into the-city except
V tantum insimul aut VI horatim; aliis sic egredientibus,
five only together or six hourly others so going-out
aliis vero ingredientibus orandi causa in ecclesiis.
others but going-in of-praying for-the-sake in the-churches

De urbe Constantinopolitana et itinere peregrinorum usque ad Nicaeam

IX · CONSTANTINOPLE AND THE ROAD TO NICAEA

Fulcher marvels at Constantinople's monasteries, palaces, relics, and riches. The princes swear fealty to the emperor as Bohemond and Godfrey had done, though Raymond refuses, and the emperor gives them coin, silk, and horses. They cross the Arm to Nicaea, already besieged since mid-May, and weep over the bones of untrained pilgrims the Turks had slain.

O quanta civitas nobilis et decora! quot monasteria, quot
O how-great a-city noble and seemly how-many monasteries how-many
palatia sunt in ea, opere miro fabrefacta! quot etiam in
palaces are in it with-work wondrous wrought how-many also in
plateis vel vicis opera ad spectandum mirabilia! taedium est
the-squares or streets works for seeing wondrous a-weariness it-is
magnum recitare quanta sit ibi bonorum omnium opulentia,
great to-recount how-great is there of-goods all the-opulence
auri scilicet, argenti, palliorum multiformium, sanctorumque
of-gold namely of-silver of-cloaks many-shaped and-of-holy
reliquiarum. omni etiam tempore navigio frequenti cuncta
relics at-every also time by-shipping frequent all
hominum necessaria illuc adferunt negotiatores. habentur
of-men the-necessaries thither bring merchants are-held
ibi, ut arbitror, fere XX milia spadones in habitatione
there as I-think almost twenty thousand eunuchs in dwelling
adsidua. cum autem nos satis fatigatos recreassemus,
constant when moreover ourselves sufficiently wearied had-refreshed
tunc optimates nostri accepto consilio pepigerunt foedus
then the-chief-men our received counsel struck a-treaty
cum imperatore sub iureiurando, angariante ipso, quod
with the-emperor under oath compelling he-himself which

iam fecerant etiam qui ante nos praeiverant, domnus
already had-done also those-who before us had-gone-before lord
Boamundus et dux Godefridus. comes autem Raimundus
Bohemond and duke Godfrey count moreover Raymond
id facere tunc recusavit. comes vero Flandriae, sicut alii,
it to-do then refused the-count but of-Flanders as the-others
iusiurandum illud fecit. erat enim omnibus hoc necesse,
oath that made was for to-all this necessary
ut sic cum imperatore amicitiam consolidarent, sine cuius
that so with the-emperor friendship they-should-consolidate without whose
consilio et auxilio nostrum iter nequivimus expedire, neque
counsel and help our journey we-could-not to-accomplish nor
illi, qui nos erant subsecuturi eodem tramite. quibus
those who us were about-to-follow by-the-same path to-whom
ideo praebuit ipse imperator de nummismatibus suis
therefore offered he-himself the-emperor of coins his
et de pannis sericis quantum placuit; et de equis et de
and of cloths silken as-much-as pleased and of horses and of
pecunia, qua nimis indigebant ad tantum iter explendum.
money which very-much they-needed for so-great a-journey to-be-completed
quo peracto, mare, quod dicunt Brachium S. Georgii,
which completed the-sea which they-call the-Arm of-Saint George
transfretavimus. ad Nicaeam urbem tunc properavimus, quam
we-crossed to Nicaea the-city then we-hastened which
domnus Boamundus et dux Godefridus et comes Raimundus
lord Bohemond and duke Godfrey and count Raymond
atque comes Flandriae iam a medio Maii obsidione
and the-count of-Flanders already from the-middle of-May with-siege
cingebant; quam urbem Turci Orientales tunc possidebant,
were-girding which city the-Turks Eastern then possessed
acres nimis et arcubus sagittarii. hi quidem de Perside
fierce very and with-bows archers these indeed from Persia

iam a L annis, Euphrate fluvio transito, terram Romaniae
already for fifty years the-Euphrates river crossed the-land of-Romania
totam usque Nicomediam urbem sibi subiugarant. o
whole up-to Nicomedia the-city to-themselves had-subjugated O
quot capita caesa et ossa occisorum ultra Nicomediam
how-many heads cut-off and bones of-the-slain beyond Nicomedia
prope mare illud in campis iacentium tunc invenimus! quos
near the-sea that in the-fields lying then we-found whom
ipso anno ignaros et usui sagittario modernos Turci
in-that-very year ignorant and in-use of-the-bow novices the-Turks
peremerant: unde moti pietate lacrimas multas ibi perfudimus.
had-slain whence moved by-pity tears many there we-poured-out

De his, quae in obsidione Nicaena gesta fuerunt, et redditione eiusdem urbis

X · THE SIEGE AND SURRENDER OF NICAEA

The besiegers welcome the newcomers in June; the Turks had already been repulsed and withdrawn. The united army is reckoned at six hundred thousand fighters, a hundred thousand in mail, though many have gone home or died. Engines batter the walls, the Turks hook up the Christian dead, and boats dragged from Civetot close the lake. After five weeks the Turks yield the city to the emperor, who rewards the princes.

Cumque audissent qui Nicaeam obsidebant, ut dictum est,
and-when had-heard those-who Nicaea besieged as said it-is
venire principes nostros, comitem scilicet Normannorum
to-be-coming princes our the-count namely of-the-Normans
Stephanumque Blesensem, gaudenter eis et nobis obviam
and-Stephen of-Blois gladly to-them and to-us to-meet
venerunt et usque ad locum, in quo tentoria nostra
they-came and all-the-way to the-place in which tents our

extendimus, ante urbem in partem australem deduxerunt. iam
we-stretched before the-city on the-side southern they-led now
semel Turci adgregati se praeparaverant, volentes vel
once the-Turks gathered themselves had-prepared wishing either
obsidionem ab urbe si possent excutere vel de militibus
the-siege from the-city if they-could to-shake-off or with knights
suis urbem melius munire. sed a nostris ferociter repulsi,
their the-city better to-fortify but by our-men fiercely driven-back
occisi sunt fere ex eis CC. cum autem viderent Francos
killed were about of them two-hundred when moreover they-saw the-Franks
tam animosos et probitate validissimos, secesserunt refugi
so spirited and in-prowess most-strong they-withdrew fugitives
in Romaniam interiorem, quoadusque tempus opportunum
into Romania the-inner until the-time opportune
eos adgrediendi sentirent. nos quippe in hebdomada Iunii
them of-attacking they-should-perceive we indeed in the-week of-June
prima postremi ad obsidionem venimus. tunc de exercitibus
first last to the-siege came then of armies
plurimis unus illic exercitus effectus est, quem qui de
very-many one there army made was which those-who of
numero callebant, sexies centum milia ad bellum valentium
number were-skilled six-times a-hundred thousand for war able
aestimabant, quorum C milia loricis et galeis
reckoned of-whom a-hundred thousand with-hauberks and helmets
muniti erant, exceptis inermibus, videlicet clericis, monachis,
fortified were except the-unarmed namely clerics monks
mulieribus et parvulis. quid autem insuper? si omnes, qui
women and little-ones what moreover besides if all who
de domibus suis egressi sunt, devotum iter incipientes
from homes their went-out have the-devout journey beginning
illic simul adessent, proculdubio sexagies centum milia
there together had-been-present without-doubt sixty-times a-hundred thousand

bellatorum adessent. sed alii de Roma, alii de
of-warriors would-have-been-present but some from Rome others from
Apulia vel de Hungaria sive Dalmatia, labore recusato,
Apulia or from Hungary or Dalmatia the-labor refused
domos suas redierant vel in locis multis, milibus multotiens
to-homes their had-returned or in places many thousands many-times
occisis, sed et nobiscum euntes infirmati finierant defuncti.
killed but also with-us going sickened had-ended dead
multa videretis coemeteria in callibus, in campis, in lucis
many you-would-see cemeteries along the-paths in the-fields in the-groves
de peregrinis nostris sic sepultis. sciendum, quia quamdiu
of pilgrims our thus buried it-is-to-be-known that as-long-as
Nicaeam urbem circumsedimus, navigio marino, concessu
Nicaea the-city we-besieged by-shipping sea by-the-leave
imperatoris adlatus est nobis victus ad emendum. tunc heroes
of-the-emperor brought was to-us food for buying then heroes
nostri fecerunt machinas fieri, arietes, scrofas, turres
our caused engines to-be-made rams sows towers
ligneas, petrarias. distendebantur arcubus sagittae, tormentis
wooden stone-throwers were-drawn with-bows arrows by-catapults
iaculabantur lapides, hostes nostri nobis nosque illis
were-hurled stones the-enemies our to-us and-we to-them
vicem certaminis pro posse reddebamus. saepe armati
the-exchange of-combat for the-possible returned often armed
cum machinis nostris urbem adsiliebamus, sed muro forti
with engines our the-city we-assaulted but the-wall strong
nobis obstante, cassabatur adsultus. saepe de Turcis, saepe
to-us opposing was-made-void the-assault often of the-Turks often
de Francis vel sagittis vel lapidibus percussi interibant. vere
of the-Franks either by-arrows or by-stones struck perished truly
doleretis et pietate suspiraretis, cum aliquem de nostris
you-would-grieve and with-pity would-sigh when anyone of ours

prope murum quoquomodo trucidassent et submissis uncis
near the-wall in-whatever-way they-had-slaughtered and let-down hooks
ferreis, quos funibus deorsum demittebant, corpus perempti
iron which by-ropes downward they-let-down the-body of-the-slain
sursum ad se rapiebant, quod nullus nostrum audebat
upward to themselves they-snatched which none of-us dared
nec poterat ab eis extorquere. corpore sic exspoliato, cadaver
nor could from them to-wrest the-body thus despoiled the-corpse
foris iaculabantur. tunc naviculas aliquantas de Civetot usque
outside they-hurled then little-boats some from Civetot up-to
Nicaeam cum bobus et funibus per terram adtraximus, quas
Nicaea with oxen and ropes over land we-dragged which
in lacum iuxta urbem imposuimus ad custodiendum urbis
into the-lake beside the-city we-put for guarding of-the-city
introitum, ne alimentis civitas muniretur. sed cum per
the-entrance lest with-food the-city be-fortified but when for
V septimanas obsidione urbem fatigassemus et multotiens
five weeks by-siege the-city we-had-wearied and many-times
Turcos adsultibus pavidos fecissemus, facto interim prolocutu
the-Turks by-assaults fearful had-made made meanwhile a-parley
per internuntios apud imperatorem, callide reddiderunt ei
through go-betweens with the-emperor cunningly they-surrendered to-him
urbem, cum iam vi et ingenio valde esset coercita.
the-city when now by-force and by-skill greatly it-had-been constrained
tunc Turci intromiserunt in eam Turcopolos ab imperatore
then the-Turks let-in into it Turcopoles by the-emperor
illuc missos, qui urbem cum pecunia interna imperatori, sicut
thither sent who the-city with the-money within to-the-emperor as
eis praeceperat, servaverunt. quapropter pecunia illa tota
to-them he-had-commanded kept wherefore money that all
retenta, iussit imperator de auro suo et argento atque palliis
retained ordered the-emperor of gold his and silver and cloaks

proceribus nostris dari; peditibus quoque distribui
to-the-nobles our to-be-given to-the-foot-soldiers also to-be-distributed
fecit de nummis suis aeneis, quos vocant tartarones.
he-caused of coins his bronze which they-call tartarons
die siquidem illo, quo Nicaea sic est comprehensa
on-the-day indeed that on-which Nicaea thus was taken
sive reddita, Iunius mensis solstitio repercussus est.
or surrendered June the-month at-the-solstice struck-back was

De bello exitiali Christianorum cum Turcis

XI · THE DEADLY BATTLE AT DORYLAEUM

Two days from Nicaea, warned of an ambush, the army forms and pitches camp by a reed-bed. Kilij-Arslan's three hundred and sixty thousand archers fall on them while Godfrey, Raymond, and Hugh are away on another road. The Franks, unused to such war, are driven back and huddle like sheep, confessing their sins to the bishop and priests, while the princes resist.

Cum igitur barones nostri ab imperatore concessum
when therefore barons our from the-emperor leave
abeundi accepissent, IIIº Kal. Julii a Nicaea
of-going-away had-received on-the-third-day-before the-Kalends of-July from Nicaea
discessimus interiores Romaniae partes adituri. sed cum
we-departed the-inner of-Romania parts about-to-approach but when
per II dies iter egissemus nostrum, nuntiatum nobis est
for two days journey we-had-made our announced to-us it-was
quod Turci, praetensis nobis insidiis, in planis, per quae
that the-Turks stretched-out for-us ambushes in the-plains through which
transituros nos putabant, proeliaturi exspectabant. hoc autem
about-to-pass us they-thought about-to-fight were-waiting this moreover
cum audissemus, nihil audacitatis ob id amisimus. sed
when we-had-heard nothing of-boldness on-account-of it we-lost but

cum vespere illo speculatores nostri plures ex illis a longe
when in-evening that scouts our many of them from far-off
aspexissent, statim nos inde munierunt: propterea nostra
had-seen at-once us thereupon they-forewarned therefore tents
tentoria nocte illa conservari undique vigilibus fecimus.
our in-night that to-be-kept on-all-sides by-watchmen we-caused
mane autem, quod accidit Kal. Julii, sumptis armis,
in-the-morning moreover which fell on-the-Kalends of-July taken-up arms
monente cornu, adversus eos per alas constituti, tribunis
warning the-horn against them in wings drawn-up the-tribunes
et centurionibus cohortes et centurias decenter ducentibus,
and centurions the-cohorts and centuries fittingly leading
vexillis levatis, ordinate ire coepimus. hora itaque diei
banners raised in-order to-go we-began at-the-hour and-so of-the-day
secunda, ecce praecursores eorum speculatoribus nostris
second behold the-forerunners their to-scouts our
adpropiaverunt. quod cum audiremus, tentoria nostra iuxta
drew-near which when we-heard tents our beside
quoddam harundinetum metari fecimus, ut expeditius,
a-certain reed-bed to-be-measured-out we-caused that more-readily
clitellis depositis, promptiores ad bellandum essemus. quo
packs laid-down readier for fighting we-might-be which
facto, en Turci, quorum et admiratus et princeps erat
done behold the-Turks of-whom both the-emir and prince was
Soliman, qui Nicaeam urbem et Romaniam in potestate sua
Kilij-Arslan who Nicaea the-city and Romania in power his
tenebat, congregatis sibi Turcis, scilicet paganis Persicis,
held gathered to-himself Turks namely pagan Persians
qui XXX dierum itinere et eo amplius in auxilium
who of-thirty days by-a-journey and that more to help
eius mandati venerant; aderantque cum eo quamplures
his summoned had-come and-there-were-present with him very-many

admirati vel principes, videlicet Admircaradigum, Miriathos
emirs or princes namely Amir-Karaja Miriathos
multique alii: qui omnes insimul erant deputati numero
and-many others who all together were reckoned in-number
CCCLX milia pugnatorum, scilicet sagittariorum.
three-hundred-and-sixty thousand of-fighters namely of-archers
mos enim eorum est talibus uti armis. equites erant omnes.
custom for their is such to-use arms horsemen were all
nos autem utrinque pedites et equites. nobis vero tunc
we moreover on-both-sides foot-soldiers and horsemen from-us indeed then
deerant dux Godefridus et comes Raimundus atque Hugo
were-lacking duke Godfrey and count Raymond and Hugh
Magnus, qui per duos dies, nescio qua de causa, se
the-Great who for two days I-know-not what for reason themselves
a nobis subtraxerant cum gente magna nostrorum tramite
from us had-withdrawn with people great of-ours by-a-path
bifurco. unde nobis inrestaurabile damnum accidit tam de
forked whence to-us irreparable loss happened as-well in
nostris interfectis quam de Turcis non occisis vel retentis.
ours killed as in Turks not slain or taken
et quia tarde legatos nostros inde habuerunt, ideo nobis
and because late messengers our thence they-had therefore to-us
tarde succurrerunt. Turci autem ululatibus concrepantes et
late they-came-to-aid the-Turks moreover with-howls rattling and
pluviam sagittarum vehementer emittentes; nos ilico stupefacti
a-rain of-arrows vehemently sending-forth we at-once stupefied
mortique proximi, etiam multi laesi, mox dorsa fugae dedimus.
and-to-death nearest also many hurt soon backs to-flight gave
nec hoc mirandum, quia nobis omnibus tale bellum erat
nor this to-be-wondered-at because to-us all such war was
incognitum. iamiamque ex altera parte harundineti agmina
unknown now-and-now from the-other side of-the-reed-bed columns

densa ex eis usque papiliones nostros vehementer inruerant,
dense of them up-to tents our vehemently had-rushed
qui res nostras introgressi adripiebant et de gente nostra
who things our having-entered snatched and of people our
occidebant: cum, Deo disponente, Hugonis Magni et comitis
killed when God disposing of-Hugh the-Great and of-count
Raimundi et ducis Godefridi praecursores tale ad infortunium
Raymond and of-duke Godfrey the-forerunners such to the-misfortune
a postrema parte accurrerunt. et cum usque ad tabernacula
from the-rear side ran-up and when all-the-way to tents
nostra iam fugati essemus, statim qui ingressi fuerant
our now put-to-flight we-had-been at-once those-who entered had
a papilionibus nostris se removerunt, putantes propter
from tents our themselves removed thinking on-account-of
eos Turcos nos tam cito regredi. sed quod audaciam
those Turks us so quickly to-go-back but what as-boldness
vel probitatem suspicati sunt, pavorem grandem sperare
or prowess suspected have fear great to-expect
possent. quid ergo dicam? nos quidem omnes in unum
they-could what then shall-I-say we indeed all into one
conglobati tanquam oves clausae ovili, trepidi et pavefacti
massed like sheep shut-in in-the-fold trembling and terrified
ab hostibus undique circumvallabamur, ut nullatenus
by the-enemies on-all-sides were-hemmed-in so-that in-no-way
aliquorsum procedere valeremus. quod nobis visum est
anywhere to-advance we-could which to-us seemed it-was
propter peccata nostra sic contigisse. nam quosdam luxuria
on-account-of sins our so to-have-happened for some lust
polluebat, quosdam vero avaritia vel quaelibet aliqua iniquitas
was-polluting some but avarice or whatever other iniquity
corrumpebat. clamor erat ingens aethera feriens, virorum atque
was-corrupting the-shout was huge the-heavens striking of-men and

mulierum ac infantum necnon et paganorum, qui super nos
of-women and of-infants and-also and of-the-pagans who upon us
inruebant. iamque nobis nulla spes vitae. tunc reos nos
were-rushing and-now for-us no hope of-life then guilty ourselves
et peccatores esse fatebamur, misericordiam a Deo devote
and sinners to-be we-confessed mercy from God devoutly
postulantes. aderat ibi episcopus Podiensis, patronus noster,
begging was-present there the-bishop of-Le-Puy patron our
et IV alii; aderantque sacerdotes quamplurimi, albis
and four others and-there-were-present priests very-many in-white
induti vestimentis, qui Dominum humillime deposcebant,
clothed garments who the-Lord most-humbly besought
ut virtutem hostium nostrorum prosterneret et dona
that the-strength of-the-enemies our he-would-lay-low and the-gifts
misericordiae suae nobis infunderet. plorando cantabant,
of-mercy his on-us would-pour weeping they-sang
cantando plorabant. tunc multi ad eos currebant, qui
singing they-wept then many to them ran who
confestim mori timentes confitebantur eis peccata sua. tunc
at-once to-die fearing confessed to-them sins their then
proceres nostri, Robertus Normanniae comes et Stephanus
nobles our Robert of-Normandy count and Stephen
comes Blesensis et Robertus comes Flandriae, Boamundus
count of-Blois and Robert count of-Flanders Bohemond
quoque pro posse illis resistebant et eos saepe invadere
also for the-possible them resisted and them often to-attack
nitebantur. ipsi quidem a Turcis fortiter impetebantur.
strove they indeed by the-Turks strongly were-assailed

De fuga Turcorum et victoria Christianorum

XII · THE TURKS FLEE

Perhaps appeased by their prayers, God gives them strength. Seeing their comrades come up, the Franks take heart and drive the Turks over hills and valleys to their camp, taking camels and horses. The Turks flee for two more days with no one pursuing, which Fulcher calls a miracle; then the army marches on, and a day of grievous thirst kills some men and women.

Sed forsitan supplicatione nostra Dominus placatus (quia nec
but perhaps by-supplication our the-Lord appeased because neither
nobilitatis pompae nec armis lucidis triumphare favet, sed
of-nobility to-the-pomp nor to-arms bright to-triumph he-grants but
menti purae et virtutibus divinis munitae in necessitate pie
to-a-mind pure and with-virtues divine fortified in need piously
subvenit), paulatim vigorem nobis tunc praestitit et Turcos
he-comes-to-aid little-by-little vigor to-us then he-supplied and the-Turks
magis magisque debilitavit. nam visis consociis nostris, qui
more and-more weakened for seen comrades our who
postremi ad adiuvandum nos properabant, laudando Deum,
last for helping us were-hastening by-praising God
audaciam resumpsimus et per turbas et cohortes eis resistere
boldness we-took-up-again and in throngs and cohorts them to-resist
nisi sumus. heu! quot de nostris die illo post nos lente
striven we-have alas how-many of ours on-day that after us slowly
venientes in via occiderunt! a prima siquidem hora diei
coming on the-road perished from the-first indeed hour of-the-day
usque ad sextam nos, ut dixi, angustiae coercuerunt: sed
all-the-way to the-sixth us as I-said straits constrained but
tunc paulatim nobis animatis et de sociis nostris concretis,
then little-by-little we heartened and by comrades our grown-together

adfuit mirabiliter divina gratia; et quasi momento subitaneo
was-present wondrously divine grace and as-if in-a-moment sudden
Turci omnes visibus nostris dorsa fugitivi dederunt. nos
the-Turks all to-sights our backs fugitive gave we
autem post eos vehementer vociferantes per montes et valles
moreover after them vehemently shouting through mountains and valleys
persecuti eos sumus: quos fugare non cessavimus, donec
pursued them we-have whom to-put-to-flight not we-ceased until
anteriores nostri cursores ad tentoria eorum pervenerunt. ubi
the-foremost our runners to the-tents their came where
alii de rebus eorum et de tentoriis ipsis eorundem camelos
some with the-things their and with the-tents themselves of-the-same camels
et equos plures oneraverunt, quos pro timore illic reliquerant;
and horses many loaded which for fear there they-had-left
alii vero Turcos fugientes usque ad noctem persecuti sunt.
others but the-Turks fleeing all-the-way to night pursued have
sed quia famelici erant equi nostri et fatigati, paucos
but because famished were the-horses our and wearied few
ex eis retinuimus. grande autem miraculum Dei fuit, quod
of them we-held great moreover a-miracle of-God it-was that
die crastino et tertio non cessaverunt fugere, quamvis
on-the-day following and the-third not they-ceased to-flee although
eos nullus, nisi Deus, amplius fugaret. de tanta autem
them no-one except God further put-to-flight at so-great moreover
victoria nos laetissimi facti, Deo gratias omnes exsolvimus,
a-victory we most-glad made to-God thanks all paid
quia noluit iter nostrum omnino adnihilari, sed
because he-was-unwilling journey our wholly to-be-brought-to-nothing but
ad honorem sui Christianismi honorabilius solito prosperari:
to the-honor of-his Christendom more-honorably than-usual to-prosper
unde ab Oriente in Occidentem fama personabit perennis.
whence from the-East into the-West the-fame shall-resound everlasting

tunc quidem iter nostrum modeste calcavimus: die uno
then indeed the-journey our modestly we-trod on-day one
sitim gravissimam tolerantes, qua viri aliquanti et mulieres
thirst most-grievous enduring by-which men some and women
valde vexati exstincti sunt! Turci vero ante nos fugientes
greatly vexed extinguished were the-Turks but before us fleeing
catervatim mansiones per Romaniam sibi quaesierunt.
in-troops dwellings through Romania for-themselves sought

De indigentia Christianorum

XIII · WANT, AND THE MANY TONGUES

Through Pisidian Antioch and Iconium the army often lacks bread in a Romania the Turks have laid waste, yet God feeds them as he fed the five thousand. Men load wethers, goats, pigs, and dogs, and knights ride oxen. So many tongues march together that Fulcher could not answer a Breton or a German, yet they live as brothers, returning what they find.

Tunc venimus Antiochiam, quam parvam praenominant, in
then we-came to-Antioch which little they-call in
provincia Pisidiae, deinde Iconium, in quibus regionibus
the-province of-Pisidia then to-Iconium in which regions
saepissime pane cibariisque satis indiguimus. nam Romaniam,
very-often of-bread and-provisions quite we-were-in-want for Romania
quae terra est optima et valde fertilis bonorum omnium,
which a-land is most-excellent and very fertile in-goods all
invenimus nimis a Turcis vastatam et depopulatam.
we-found very by the-Turks laid-waste and depopulated
multotiens tamen videretis tantam gentis multitudinem de
many-times yet you-would-see so-great of-people a-multitude from
raris culturis, quas interdum per loca inveniebamus, bene
the-scattered tillages which at-times through places we-found well

refocillari supplemento illius Dei, qui de V panibus et IIbus
to-be-refreshed by-the-supply of-that God who with five loaves and two
piscibus V milia hominum pavit. inde satis laetabamur et
fishes five thousand men fed thence enough we-rejoiced and
congaudentes dona misericordiae Dei haec esse profitebamur.
rejoicing-together gifts of-the-mercy of-God these to-be we-professed
tunc vere vel rideretis vel forsitan pietate lacrimaremini,
then truly either you-would-laugh or perhaps with-pity would-weep
cum multi nostrum iumentis egentes, quia multa de
when many of-us for-beasts-of-burden lacking because many of
suis iam perdiderant, verveces, capras, sues, canes de
their-own already they-had-lost wethers goats pigs dogs with
rebus suis, scilicet pannis, panibus seu qualibet peregrinorum
things their namely cloths loaves or any of-the-pilgrims
sarcina usui necessaria onerabant. quarum bestiolarum tergora
baggage for-use necessary loaded of-which little-beasts the-backs
videbamus mole fascis esse corrupta. equites etiam
we-saw by-the-mass of-the-bundle to-be broken the-horsemen also
boves cum armis suis interdum scandebant. sed quis unquam
oxen with arms their at-times mounted but who ever
audivit tot tribus linguae in uno exercitu, cum ibi adessent
heard so-many tribes of-tongue in one army when there were-present
Franci, Flandri, Frisi, Galli, Allobroges, Lotharingi, Alemanni,
Franks Flemings Frisians Gauls Allobroges Lotharingians Alamans
Baioarii, Normanni, Angli, Scoti, Aquitani, Itali, Daci, Apuli,
Bavarians Normans English Scots Aquitanians Italians Danes Apulians
Iberi, Britones, Graeci, Armeni? quod si vellet me aliquis
Iberians Bretons Greeks Armenians that if should-wish me any
Britannus vel Teutonicus interrogare, neutro respondere
Briton or Teuton to-question to-neither to-answer
sapere possem. sed qui linguis diversi eramus, tamquam
to-know-how could-I but we-who in-tongues diverse were like

fratres sub dilectione Dei et proximi unanimes esse
brothers under the-love of-God and of-neighbor of-one-mind to-be
videbamur. nam si de rebus suis aliquis aliquid perdidisset,
we-seemed for if of things his anyone anything had-lost
per plurimos dies id diligenter qui invenisset conservabat,
for very-many days it diligently he-who had-found kept
donec inquirendo perditorem inveniret et inventum ei
until by-inquiring the-loser he-found and found to-him
redderet. hoc enim competit his, qui recte peregrinantur.
returned-it this for befits those who rightly make-pilgrimage

De actibus et probitate comitis Balduini, fratris Godefridi, et de redditione urbis Edessenae quae Rohais dicitur

XIV · BALDWIN WINS EDESSA

At Heraclea a sword-shaped sign appears in the sky. Fulcher leaves the army with Baldwin, who had seized Tarsus from Tancred and now takes castles toward the Euphrates, Turbessel among them. The prince of Edessa offers to adopt him as son and heir; crossing the river with eighty knights, Baldwin is welcomed and adopted, and when the citizens kill their prince, they make him lord.

Cum autem ad Eracleam urbem ventum est, vidimus in caelo
when moreover to Heraclea the-city come it-was we-saw in the-sky
signum quoddam, quod alburno splendore fulgens apparuit in
a-sign certain which with-white splendor shining appeared in
modum ensis figuratum, cuspide versus Orientem protento.
the-manner of-a-sword shaped the-point toward the-East stretched-out
sed quod futurum promittebat nesciebamus, sed praesentia
but what future it-promised we-knew-not but present-things
et futura Domino committebamus. ad oppidum quoddam
and future to-the-Lord we-committed to a-town certain

optimum tunc venimus, quod Mariscum nominatur, ubi
most-excellent then we-came which Marash is-named where
per III dies, quiete habita, morati sumus. sed cum exhinc
for three days rest had delayed we-have but when thence
viam unius diei proculcassemus et iam non longe ab
the-road of-one day we-had-trodden and now not far from
Antiochia Syriae nisi tribus dietis essemus, ab exercitu
Antioch of-Syria except by-three day's-journeys we-were from the-army
ego Fulcherus discessi et cum domno Balduino comite,
I Fulcher departed and with lord Baldwin the-count
Godefridi ducis fratre, in sinistrae partem provinciae
of-Godfrey the-duke the-brother into of-the-left the-part of-the-province
diverti. erat quippe miles quam optimus, qui antea
turned-aside he-was indeed a-knight as excellent-as-possible who before
relicto exercitu cum illis, quos secum duxit, urbem, quam
left the-army with those whom with-himself he-led the-city which
dicunt Tarsum Ciliciae, ausu magno ceperat, quam tamen
they-call Tarsus of-Cilicia with-daring great had-taken which yet
Tancredo abstulit, cum iam homines suos intromisisset,
from-Tancred he-took-away when already men his he-had-let-in
Turcis ei consentientibus. relictisque in ea custodibus, ad
the-Turks to-him consenting and-left in it guards to
exercitum rediit. itaque confidens in Domino et in valore
the-army he-returned and-so trusting in the-Lord and in worth
suo, collegit secum milites paucos profectusque est versus
his he-gathered with-himself knights few and-set-out has toward
Euphraten fluvium et comprehendit ibi plurima castra tam
the-Euphrates river and seized there very-many castles as-much
vi quam ingenio. inter quae cepit unum, quod vocatur
by-force as by-skill among which he-took one which is-called
Turbezel, peroptimum. quod pacifice reddiderunt ei qui
Turbessel most-excellent which peaceably surrendered to-him those-who

in eo habitabant Armeni, et alia plura huic sunt subdita.
in it dwelt Armenians and others many to-this-one are subject
Cum autem fama de eo longe lateque iam circumvolasset,
when moreover the-fame about him far and-wide now had-flown-around
misit ad eum legationem princeps civitatis Edessae, quae
sent to him an-embassy the-prince of-the-city of-Edessa which
civitas est nominatissima et de bonis terrae uberrima.
city is most-renowned and in goods of-the-land most-fruitful
est illa in Mesopotamia Syriae trans flumen praedictum
is it in Mesopotamia of-Syria beyond the-river aforesaid
Euphratem XX fere miliariis et ab Antiochia distans quasi
Euphrates twenty almost miles and from Antioch distant about
C vel paulo plus. mandatus est itaque Balduinus, ut
a-hundred or a-little more summoned was and-so Baldwin that
illuc iret et efficerentur invicem amici, quamdiu ambo
thither he-should-go and they-should-be-made mutually friends as-long-as both
ipsi viverent, tamquam pater et filius. quod si dux
themselves should-live like father and son so-that if the-duke
ipse Edessenus forte obiret, statim Balduinus, ac si filius
himself of-Edessa perhaps should-die at-once Baldwin as if the-son
esset illius, urbem et terram suam totam in hereditatem
he-were of-him the-city and land his all in inheritance
perpetuo possideret. non enim habebat filium aut filiam. et
forever should-possess not for he-had a-son or a-daughter and
quoniam a Turcis se defendere nequibat, volebat Graecus
since from the-Turks himself to-defend he-could-not wished Greek
ille et se et terram suam ab ipso Balduino defendi,
that both himself and land his by that-very Baldwin to-be-defended
quem et milites suos bellatores fortissimos esse audierat.
whom and knights his warriors most-strong to-be he-had-heard
hoc audito, postquam legati sub iureiurando fecerunt eum
this heard after the-envoys under oath made him

inde credulum, cum minimo exercitulo suo, scilicet LXXX
thereupon believing with the-smallest little-army his namely eighty
militibus, pergens transiit Euphratem. quo transito, nocte
knights going-on he-crossed the-Euphrates which crossed by-night
tota perpropere prope Saracenorum castra, hinc et inde
the-whole very-hastily near of-the-Saracens the-castles on-this-side and on-that
linquentes ea, valde pavidi perreximus. quod cum audissent
leaving them greatly fearful we-went-on which when had-heard
qui in Samosate oppido forti habitabant, insidias nobis
those-who in Samosata the-town strong dwelt ambushes for-us
in via, per quam nos ituros arbitrabantur, praetenderunt.
on the-road by which us about-to-go they-thought stretched-out
sed cum nocte alia quidam Armenus in castello suo
but when on-a-night another a-certain Armenian in castle his
diligenter nos hospitatus esset, intimatum nobis est, quod ab
diligently us lodged had made-known to-us it-was that from
hostibus illis insidiantibus praecavere nos oportebat. quapropter
enemies those lying-in-wait to-beware us it-behooved wherefore
duobus diebus illic delituimus. sed cum tantam moram illi
for-two days there we-lay-hidden but when such delay they
fastidirent, die IIIº subitaneo insultu de loco insidiatorio
were-weary-of on-day the-third with-a-sudden assault from the-place of-ambush
prosilierunt et ante castellum, in quo eramus, signis levatis,
they-leapt-forth and before the-castle in which we-were standards raised
accurrerunt, et praedam, quam in pascuis ibi reppererunt,
they-ran-up and the-plunder which in the-pastures there they-found
in conspectu nostro abripuerunt. nos autem contra eos
in the-sight our snatched-away we moreover against them
egressi, quia pauci eramus, bellare cum eis non quivimus:
having-gone-out because few we-were to-war with them not we-could
qui cum sagittas in nos iacerent, nullum ex nostris tamen
who when arrows at us they-hurled none of our-men yet

sauciaverunt. ipsi autem unum de suis occisum lancea in
they-wounded they moreover one of their-own killed by-a-lance in
campo reliquerunt, cuius equum, qui eum subvertit, retinuit.
the-field left whose horse he-who him overthrew kept
tunc abierunt, nos autem ibi remansimus. sequenti vero
then they-went-away we moreover there remained on-the-following indeed
die iter nostrum resumpsimus. miraremini, cum ante castra
day journey our we-took-up-again you-would-marvel when before the-castles
Armenorum transiremus et nobis obviam cum crucibus et
of-the-Armenians we-passed and to-us to-meet with crosses and
vexillis pro amore Dei humillime procedentes et pedes
banners for the-love of-God most-humbly proceeding both feet
nostros et pannos deosculabantur, eo quod audierant
our and clothes they-kissed for-the-reason that they-had-heard
nos a Turcis eos defensuros, sub quorum iugo tamdiu
us from the-Turks them about-to-defend under whose yoke so-long
depressi fuerant. pervenimus tandem Edessam, ubi princeps
pressed-down they-had-been we-came at-length to-Edessa where the-prince
urbis praedictus et uxor eius, una cum civibus suis,
of-the-city aforesaid and wife his together with citizens his
gaudenter nos susceperunt: et quod Balduino polliciti fuerant,
gladly us received and what to-Baldwin promised they-had
indilate ei compleverunt. cumque per dies XV illic
without-delay to-him fulfilled and-when for days fifteen there
moram fecissemus, machinati sunt cives urbis principem
delay we-had-made plotted have the-citizens of-the-city prince
suum sceleste occidere et Balduinum ad dominandum terrae
their wickedly to-kill and Baldwin for ruling of-the-land
in palatio sublimare. odio enim eum habebant. dictum
in the-palace to-raise-up with-hatred for him they-had said
est et factum est. unde Balduinus et sui contristati
it-was and done it-was whence Baldwin and his-men saddened

sunt valde, cum pro eo indulgentiam impetrare nequissent.
were greatly since for him pardon to-obtain they-could-not
cum autem principatum illius nequiter perempti dono
when moreover the-principality of-him wickedly slain by-the-gift
civium Balduinus suscepisset, protinus adversus Turcos,
of-the-citizens Baldwin had-received at-once against the-Turks
qui in patria erant, litem bellicam movit, quos multotiens
who in the-country were strife warlike he-stirred whom many-times
vel victos vel occisos superavit. contigit tamen de nostris
either conquered or killed he-overcame it-happened yet of ours
plures a Turcis interemptos fuisse. ego vero Fulcherus
many by the-Turks slain to-have-been I but Fulcher
Carnotensis, capellanus ipsius Balduini eram. volo autem
of-Chartres chaplain of-that-very Baldwin was I-wish moreover
nunc de exercitu Dei sermonem quem desivi resumere.
now about the-army of-God the-discourse which I-left-off to-resume

De adventu Francorum ad Antiochiam et de his, quae in obsidione Antiochena sorte varia gesta sunt

XV · THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH

In October the Franks reach Antioch, a great city founded by Seleucus, with the church where Peter sat. They swear to besiege it until it falls. Yaghi-Siyan sends his son to the Sultan, the Turks kill Christians within and fling their heads over the walls, and famine drives many to desert. The women are sent from the camp, and an earthquake and a red sky alarm the army.

Mense quidem Octobri pervenerunt Franci Antiochiam
in-the-month indeed of-October came the-Franks to-Antioch
Syriae, quam urbem condidit Seleucus, Antiochi filius, caput
of-Syria which city founded Seleucus of-Antiochus the-son the-head

Syriae illam constituens, quae prius Reblata dicta est, flumine
of-Syria it establishing which earlier Reblata called was the-river
autem transito quod Fernum sive Orontem nominant. ante
moreover crossed which Farfar or Orontes they-name before
urbem iussa sunt tabernacula extendi intra primum ab
the-city ordered were the-tents to-be-stretched within the-first from
urbe lapidem, ubi posthaec certamen pessimum utrobique
the-city milestone where afterward a-contest most-evil on-both-sides
persaepe factum est. nam cum de civitate illa Turci
very-often done was for when from city that the-Turks
prosilirent, multos de nostris occidebant. vice tamen reddita,
leapt-forth many of ours they-killed the-turn yet returned
se quoque superatos lugebant. est nempe Antiochia
themselves also overcome they-mourned is indeed Antioch
civitas magna ambitu, muro forti, situ valida, quae etiam
a-city great in-circuit with-wall strong in-site powerful which also
ab hostibus externis nunquam poterit comprehendi, si
by enemies external never shall-be-able to-be-taken if
tantum inhabitantes pane muniti eam defendere voluerint.
only the-inhabitants with-bread provided it to-defend shall-have-wished
estque in ea basilica una satis veneranda, in honore Petri
and-there-is in it a-basilica one quite venerable in honor of-Peter
apostoli dedicata, ubi in episcopum sublimatus sedit in
the-apostle dedicated where as bishop raised-up he-sat on
cathedra, postquam a Domino Jesu principatum ecclesiae,
the-throne after from the-Lord Jesus the-principate of-the-church
clavibus acceptis regni caelestis, suscepit. est et
the-keys received of-the-kingdom heavenly he-received there-is also
altera in honore beatae Mariae fabricata, forma rotunda,
another in honor of-blessed Mary built in-the-form round
et aliae plures decenter compositae. quae quamvis sub
and others many fittingly put-together which although under

potestate Turcorum diu exstiterant, Deus tamen cuncta
the-power of-the-Turks long had-stood God yet all-things
praesciens nobis eas integras reservavit, ut quandoque a
foreknowing for-us them whole kept that sometime by
nobis in eis honorificaretur. XIII fere miliariis, ut aestimo,
us in them he-might-be-honored thirteen almost miles as I-reckon
distat mare ab Antiochia. et quia Fernus fluvius inibi
is-distant the-sea from Antioch and because the-Farfar river there
mare incidit, per eiusdem alveum fluvii usque prope
into-the-sea falls along of-the-same the-bed river all-the-way near
Antiochiam naves de longinquis partibus bonis refertae
Antioch ships from distant parts with-goods crammed
omnibus deducuntur. itaque tam per mare quam per
all are-brought and-so as-well by sea as by
terram munita bonis, abundat civitas divitiis multimodis.
land fortified with-goods abounds the-city with-riches manifold
principes tunc nostri, cum tam difficilem ad capiendum eam
the-princes then our when so difficult for taking it
prospexissent, iureiurando adinvicem confirmaverunt obsidione
they-had-seen by-oath mutually confirmed with-siege
cohibere, donec, Deo suffragante, aut vi aut ingenio eam
to-hem-it-in until God aiding either by-force or by-skill it
comprehendant. tunc invenerunt in flumine praedicto naves
they-should-take then they-found in the-river aforesaid ships
aliquantas, quas capientes coaptaverunt sibi ex eis
some which taking they-fitted for-themselves from them
pontem unum, per quem transierunt ad negotia sua facienda,
a-bridge one by which they-crossed to business their to-be-done
cum antea pedetemptim vadare per illud non valerent. sed
when before step-by-step to-ford across it not they-were-able but
cum Turci a tanta multitudine Christiana se obsideri
when the-Turks by so-great a-multitude Christian themselves to-be-besieged

circumspexissent, timentes nullomodo ab eis excuti
had-seen fearing in-no-way by them to-be-shaken-off
posse, inito invicem consilio, misit Aoxianus, Antiochiae
to-be-able entered mutually counsel sent Yaghi-Siyan of-Antioch
princeps et admiratus, filium suum, nomine Sanxadonem, ad
the-prince and emir son his by-name Shams-ad-Daula to
Soltanum, scilicet imperatorem Persidis, ut eis citissime
the-Sultan namely the-emperor of-Persia that to-them most-swiftly
succurreret, quia in nullo alio spem auxiliandi eis
he-should-come-to-aid because in no other hope of-helping for-them
habebant, praeter Mahumet advocatum eorum. ille autem
they-had besides Muhammad advocate their he moreover
illuc sic destinatus legationem hanc perpropere gessit.
thither thus appointed embassy this very-hastily carried-out
qui vero remanserunt, urbem interim custodierunt, auxilium
who but remained the-city meanwhile guarded help
praestolantes mandatum, contra Francos multimoda frequenter
awaiting sent-for against the-Franks manifold often
damna machinando. Franci nihilominus calliditati eorum pro
harms by-contriving the-Franks nonetheless to-the-cunning their for
posse resistebant. contigit enim die quadam DCCos
the-possible resisted it-happened for on-day a-certain seven-hundred
Turcos ab eis interemptos esse; et qui Francis
Turks by them slain to-have-been and those-who for-the-Franks
insidias paraverant, ab insidiantibus similiter superati sunt:
ambushes had-prepared by the-ambushers likewise overcome were
virtus enim Dei praesens ibi adfuit. nam nostri omnes
the-power for of-God present there was-at-hand for our-men all
sani regressi sunt, excepto tantum uno ab eis sauciato.
sound returned have except only one by them wounded
heu! quam multos de Christianis, Graecis, Syris, Armenis,
alas how many of the-Christians Greeks Syrians Armenians

qui in urbe conversabantur, Turci rabie permoti occidebant,
who in the-city dwelt the-Turks by-rage stirred killed
et cum petrariis et fundibulis suis capita occisorum,
and with stone-throwers and slings their the-heads of-the-slain
Francis cernentibus, extra muros eiiciebant; qua de re
the-Franks seeing outside the-walls threw which for thing
gens nostra valde tristabatur. odio quidem Christianos
people our greatly was-saddened with-hatred indeed the-Christians
illos habentes timebant, ne forte Francos quoquomodo de
those holding they-feared lest perhaps the-Franks in-any-way of
damno suo praemunirent. cum autem aliquandiu Franci
harm their they-should-forewarn when moreover for-some-time the-Franks
urbem circumsedissent et provinciam adfinem pro victualibus
the-city had-besieged and the-province neighboring for provisions
sibi necessariis rapinantes undique devastassent et panem
to-themselves necessary plundering on-all-sides had-laid-waste and bread
ad emendum nusquam invenire possent, contigit eos famem
for buying nowhere to-find they-could it-happened them hunger
maximam sustinere. unde valde desolati sunt omnes et multi
the-greatest to-endure whence greatly desolate were all and many
latenter cogitaverunt ab obsidione fugiendo se subtrahere,
secretly thought from the-siege by-fleeing themselves to-withdraw
sive per terram sive per mare. non enim habebant quicquam
either by land or by sea not for they-had anything
stipendii, unde vivere possent: quos etiam oportebat victum
of-pay whence to-live they-could whom also it-behooved food
suum longe quaerere cum ingenti timore, elongando se
their far to-seek with huge fear by-removing themselves
ab obsidione aut XL aut L miliariis; ubi, in montanis
from the-siege either forty or fifty miles where in the-mountains
videlicet, a Turcis insidiantibus persaepe occidebantur. haec
namely by the-Turks lying-in-wait very-often they-were-killed these

autem incommoda putabamus sic Francis propter peccata
moreover misfortunes we-thought thus to-the-Franks on-account-of sins
sua contingere, et quod urbem tam longo tempore non
their to-happen and that the-city so long for-a-time not
poterant capere: quos quidem tam luxuria quam avaritia sive
they-could to-take whom indeed as-much lust as avarice or
superbia vel rapina vitiabat tunc facto deinde consilio, eiecerunt
pride or plunder corrupted then made thereupon a-council they-cast-out
feminas de exercitu, tam maritatas quam inmaritatas,
the-women from the-army as-well married as unmarried
ne forte luxuriae sordibus inquinati Domino displicerent.
lest perhaps of-lust by-the-filth defiled to-the-Lord they-should-displease
illae vero in castris adfinibus tunc hospitia sibi
they but in the-castles neighboring then lodgings for-themselves
adsumpserunt. desolati tam fame quam cotidiana occisione
took desolate as-much by-hunger as by-daily slaughter
tam divites quam pauperes erant. et nisi eos Deus tanquam
as-well rich as poor were and unless them God like
bonus pastor oves suas gregatim constringeret, proculdubio
a-good shepherd sheep his in-flocks had-held-together without-doubt
prorsus inde omnes aufugerent, licet obsidionem obtinendam
utterly thence all would-have-fled although the-siege to-be-maintained
iurassent. multi tamen propter panis penuriam per plures
they-had-sworn many yet on-account-of of-bread the-want for many
dies quaerebant in castellis propinquioribus quae victui
days sought in the-castles nearer those-things-which for-food
suo necessaria erant; nec postea revertentes ad exercitum,
their necessary were nor afterward returning to the-army
obsidionem penitus deserebant. tunc temporis vidimus in caelo
the-siege wholly deserted at-that time we-saw in the-sky
unum ruborem mirabilem, insuper sensimus terrae motum
a redness wondrous moreover we-felt of-the-earth a-shaking

magnum, qui nos pavidos reddidit omnes. multi etiam tunc
great which us fearful made all many also then
viderunt quoddam signum in modum crucis figuratum,
saw a-certain sign in the-manner of-a-cross shaped
colore alburnum, versus Orientem recto incedens tramite.
in-color white toward the-East by-a-straight going path

De egestate miserabili Christianorum et fuga comitis Blesensis

XVI · FAMINE, AND THE FLIGHT OF STEPHEN

In 1098 the starving pilgrims eat bean shoots, thistles, horses, dogs, mice, and hides, purified like gold in the fire as Job was. God lets Christians die for their salvation and Turks for their perdition. Many desert, and Stephen of Blois sails home the day before the city falls, to his shame. From October to June the two sides fight often by the Farfar.

Anno autem Domini MºXCºVIIIº, postquam regio illa
in-the-year moreover of-the-Lord the-1098th after region that
Antiochena circumquaque a multitudine gentis nostrae
Antiochene all-around by the-multitude of-people our
prorsus devastata fuisset, magis magisque tam maiores quam
utterly laid-waste had-been more and-more as-well the-greater as
minores fame nimia vexati sunt. tunc famelici comedebant
the-lesser by-hunger excessive vexed were then the-famished ate
surculos fabarum in agris adhuc crescentium, herbasque
shoots of-beans in the-fields still growing and-herbs
multimodas et sale inconditas; carduos etiam, qui propter
manifold and with-salt unseasoned thistles also which on-account-of
lignorum deficientiam non bene cocti linguas manducantium
of-wood the-lack not well cooked the-tongues of-those-eating

depungebant; equos, asinos camelosque, canes etiam et mures.
pricked horses asses and-camels dogs also and mice
pauperiores etiam bestiarum coria et annonae grana in
the-poorer also of-beasts the-hides and of-grain the-seeds in
stercoribus reperta comedebant. frigora, calores, pluvias densas
dung found ate colds heats rains dense
propter Deum perpessi sunt. tentoria eorum illic inveterata
for God endured have tents their there grown-old
sunt et dirupta et imbrium continuatione putrefacta. qua
were and torn and of-rains by-the-continuance rotted which
de re multi eorum nonnisi caelo tegebantur. itaque
for thing many of-them not-except by-heaven were-covered and-so
illi quasi aurum ter probatum igni septiesque purgatum,
they as-if gold thrice tried by-fire and-seven-times purified
iamdudum a Domino praeelecti, ut opinor, et in tanta
long-since by the-Lord chosen-beforehand as I-think and in so-great
calamitate examinati, a peccatis suis mundati sunt. diu
calamity examined from sins their cleansed were long
enim agonizantes, si etiam gladius percussoris non deesset,
for agonizing if also the-sword of-the-striker not had-been-lacking
martyrii cursum multi voluntarie complessent. forsitan
of-martyrdom the-course many willingly would-have-completed perhaps
a sancto Iob gratiam tanti exempli sumpserunt, qui in
from holy Job the-grace of-so-great an-example they-took who in
tormentis corporis sui animam purgans, Deum semper in
the-torments of-body his the-soul purging God always in
mente tenuit. cum paganis bellant, propter Deum laborant.
mind held when with-the-pagans they-war for God they-labor
licet Deus, qui cuncta creat, creata moderat, moderata
although God who all-things creates the-created governs the-governed
sustentat, virtute gubernat, possit quaecunque vult vel
sustains by-power rules may-be-able whatever-things he-wishes either

destruere vel reparare, sentio, quod verbere Christianorum
to-destroy or to-restore I-perceive that by-the-scourge of-the-Christians
adnuit paganos ita subrui, qui tot temporibus cuncta
he-assents the-pagans so to-be-overthrown who for-so-many times all-things
quae Dei sunt, permittente ipso et promerente populo,
which of-God are permitting he-himself and deserving-it the-people
viliter pessundederunt. Christianos quidem ab ipsis Turcis
vilely trampled the-Christians indeed by those-very Turks
permittit occidi ad salvationis augmentum, Turcos autem ad
he-permits to-be-killed for of-salvation the-increase the-Turks moreover for
animarum suarum detrimentum, quorum quosdam iam saluti
of-souls their the-detriment of-whom certain already to-salvation
praedestinatos placuit Deo tunc a sacerdotibus baptizari. quos
predestined it-pleased God then by the-priests to-be-baptized whom
enim praedestinavit, hos et vocavit, necnon et magnificavit.
for he-predestined these also he-called and-also and he-magnified
quid igitur? fuerunt de nostris nonnulli, ut superius audistis,
what then there-were of ours some as above you-have-heard
qui ab obsidione tam anxia se removerunt, alii propter
who from the-siege so anxious themselves removed some on-account-of
egestatem, alii propter ignaviam, alii propter mortis
want others on-account-of cowardice others on-account-of of-death
timorem, primum pauperes, deinde locupletes.
fear first the-poor then the-rich
Tunc Stephanus, comes Blesensis, ab obsidione discessit et
then Stephen count of-Blois from the-siege departed and
per mare in Franciam repatriavit. unde doluimus omnes,
by sea into France returned-home whence we-grieved all
quia vir erat nobilissimus et armis validus. quo discedente,
because a-man he-was most-noble and in-arms strong who departing
sequenti die urbs Antiochia Francis est tradita. si
on-the-following day the-city Antioch to-the-Franks was handed-over if

perseverasset, multum inde cum ceteris gauderet. quod
he-had-persevered much thereat with the-others he-would-rejoice which
factum fuit ei ad opprobrium. nam non prodest alicui
done was to-him for reproach for not profits anyone
bonum initium, nisi fuerit bene consummatum. in
a-good beginning unless it-shall-have-been well completed in
rebus quidem Domini ne in aliquantis deviem, quia in eis
matters indeed of-the-Lord lest in some-things I-stray because in them
mentiri valde cavendum est, multa breviabo.
to-lie greatly to-be-avoided it-is many-things I-shall-abridge
Ab ipso mense Octobri, ut dictum est, hieme transcursa
from that-very month of-October as said it-is the-winter passed-through
subsequente, deinde verno tempore usque dum subintraret
following then the-spring time up-to while should-come-on
Iunius mensis, urbis obsidio perduravit. multotiens invasiones
June the-month of-the-city the-siege lasted many-times attacks
et proelia invicem Turci et Franci egerunt: vincebant et
and battles by-turns the-Turks and the-Franks waged they-conquered and
vincebantur; nostri tamen saepius quam illi triumphabant.
were-conquered our-men yet more-often than they triumphed
semel contigit plerosque de Turcis in flumen Fernum fugiendo
once it-happened very-many of the-Turks into the-river Farfar by-fleeing
cadere et in eo mersos infeliciter interire. cis flumen
to-fall and in it sunk unhappily to-perish on-this-side the-river
et citra flumen utraque gens saepe invicem bellabant.
and on-this-side the-river each people often by-turns warred
castella quidem ante urbem optimates nostri composuerunt,
castles indeed before the-city chief-men our built
quibus postea Turcos frequenti exitu prosilientes vehementer
with-which afterward the-Turks with-frequent sally leaping-forth vehemently
cohibuerunt. unde bestiis eorum pascua saepe abstulerunt.
they-checked whence from-beasts their pastures often they-took-away

nec ab externis provinciae Armenis quicquam adlatum est,
nor from the-external of-the-province Armenians anything brought was
saepe tamen ipsi ad laedendum nostros procedebant.
often yet they-themselves for harming our-men advanced

De traditione urbis Antiochenae

XVII · THE BETRAYAL OF ANTIOCH

Christ appears three times to a Turk and commands him to give the city to the Christians. He arranges it with Bohemond, gives his son as hostage, and by night lets twenty men up a rope ladder; forty knights kill the tower guards, a gate is opened, and the Franks pour in crying God wills it. Yaghi-Siyan flees and is beheaded by an Armenian.

Cum autem placuit Deo laborem populi sui consummari,
when moreover it-pleased God the-labor of-people his to-be-completed
forsitan precibus eorum placatus, qui cotidie preces inde
perhaps by-the-prayers their appeased who daily prayers thereupon
supplices ei fundebant, concessit pietate sua per eorundem
suppliant to-him poured he-granted by-pity his through of-the-same
Turcorum fraudem, traditione clandestina urbem Christianis
Turks the-fraud by-betrayal secret the-city to-the-Christians
reddi. audite ergo fraudem et non fraudem. apparuit
to-be-returned hear therefore a-fraud and not a-fraud appeared
enim Dominus noster cuidam Turco, gratia sua praeelecto,
for the-Lord our to-a-certain Turk by-grace his chosen-beforehand
et dixit ei: expergiscere qui dormis! impero tibi ut
and said to-him awake you-who sleep I-command you that
reddas civitatem Christianis. miratus autem ille visionem illam
you-return the-city to-the-Christians marveling moreover he vision that
silentio texit. iterum autem apparuit ei Dominus: redde
with-silence covered again moreover appeared to-him the-Lord return

urbem Christianis! inquit, sum etenim Christus, qui hoc tibi
the-city to-the-Christians he-says I-am for Christ who this to-you
impero. meditatus ergo ille quid faceret, abiit ad dominum
command having-pondered therefore he what he-should-do went to lord
suum, Antiochiae principem, et visionem illam innotuit ei.
his of-Antioch the-prince and vision that made-known to-him
cui respondit ille: numquid non phantasmati, brute, vis
to-whom answered he surely not to-a-phantasm brute you-wish
oboedire? reversus autem ille, postmodum siluit. cui
to-obey having-returned moreover he afterward was-silent to-whom
Dominus rursum apparuit, inquiens: cur non explesti quod
the-Lord again appeared saying why not have-you-fulfilled what
tibi iussi? non est tibi haesitandum, nam qui hoc impero
to-you I-ordered not is for-you to-be-hesitated for he-who this command
Dominus omnium sum. ille autem non dubitans amplius,
the-Lord of-all am he moreover not doubting further
prudenter cum viris nostris negotium istud tractavit, ut sub
prudently with men our business this handled that under
machinationis suae studio urbem acciperent. quo prolocuto et
of-contrivance his the-zeal the-city they-might-receive which spoken-out and
filio suo obside dato domno Boamundo, ad quem sermo iste
son his as-hostage given to-lord Bohemond to whom speech this
primitus exiit, quem et ipse primus movit: nocte quadam
first went-out which also he first moved on-night a-certain
per scalas de chordis compactas XX de clientibus nostris per
by ladders of cords fastened twenty of retainers our over
muri summum intromisit. et non mora facta, statim porta
of-the-wall the-top he-let-in and no delay made at-once the-gate
est aperta. Franci quidem praeparati civitatem sunt ingressi.
was opened the-Franks indeed prepared the-city have entered
per chordas quoque iam introierant XL milites nostri, qui
by the-cords also already had-entered forty knights our who

LX Turcos, custodes turrium, inventos ilico peremerunt.
sixty Turks guards of-the-towers found at-once slew
tunc alta voce omnes simul Franci exclamaverunt: Deus
then with-lofty voice all together the-Franks shouted God
hoc vult, Deus hoc vult! hoc enim erat signum exclamationis
this wills God this wills this for was the-signal of-shouting
nostrae, cum aliquid boni negotii nostri acturi eramus. quo
our when anything of-good business we about-to-do were which
audito, vehementer Turci omnes exterriti sunt. aurora tunc
heard vehemently the-Turks all terrified were the-dawn then
albescente, urbem Franci prorsus impetere coeperunt. cumque
whitening the-city the-Franks utterly to-assail began and-when
Turci primitus vexillum Boamundi vidissent rubicundum iam
the-Turks first the-banner of-Bohemond had-seen red now
in sublime displicari et tumultum magnum undique iam
on high to-be-unfurled and the-tumult great on-all-sides now
concitatum et cornua Francorum in muri apice insonare
stirred-up and the-horns of-the-Franks on of-the-wall the-top to-sound
et per vicos nudis ensibus late discurrere et gentem
and through the-streets with-bare swords widely to-run-about and the-people
ferociter occidere: obstupefacti coeperunt hac et illac fugere,
fiercely to-kill stupefied they-began hither and thither to-flee
unde plures qui potuerunt fugiendo in castrum, quod in rupe
whence many who could by-fleeing into the-citadel which on a-rock
celsa est situm, se intromiserunt. plebs vero nostra
lofty is situated themselves let-in the-common-people but our
cuncta, quae in vicis aut domibus invenerunt, immoderate
all-things which in the-streets or houses they-found immoderately
adripuerunt. at milites probitatis militiam tenuerunt, Turcos
snatched but the-knights of-prowess the-soldiership kept the-Turks

persequendo et occidendo. tunc admiratus Antiochiae, Aoxianus
by-pursuing and by-killing then the-emir of-Antioch Yaghi-Siyan
scilicet, a rusticano quodam Armeno fugiens decollatus est.
namely by a-rustic certain Armenian fleeing beheaded was

Qui caput abscisum Francis mox adtulit ipse.
who the-head cut-off to-the-Franks soon brought himself

De lancea inventa

XVIII · THE LANCE FOUND AND TRIED

A man finds a lance in Saint Peter's church and says Saint Andrew revealed it as the lance that pierced Christ. The bishop thinks it false, the count believes it, and it is honored for about a hundred days until many doubt it. Before Arqa its finder walks through a burning pyre to prove it, is badly burned, and dies on the twelfth day.

Accidit autem, postquam civitas capta est, a quodam
it-happened moreover after the-city taken was by a-certain
homine lanceam unam inveniri, quam in ecclesia beati Petri
man a-lance one to-be-found which in the-church of-blessed Peter
apostoli fossa humo repertam, adseverabat esse illam, de
the-apostle in-the-dug earth found he-asserted to-be that with
qua Longinus in latere dextro Christum secundum Scripturas
which Longinus in the-side right Christ according-to the-Scriptures
pupugit. aiebat enim hoc a sancto Andrea apostolo revelatum
pierced he-said for this by holy Andrew the-apostle revealed
fuisse. et cum sic inventa fuisset et episcopo Podiensi
to-have-been and when thus found it-had-been and to-the-bishop of-Le-Puy
atque Raimundo comiti hoc ipse intimasset, id episcopus
and to-Raymond the-count this he had-made-known it the-bishop

falsum esse putavit, comes vero verum speravit. sed cum
false to-be thought the-count but true hoped but when
omnis populus hoc audito exsultans Deum proinde glorificasset
all the-people this heard exulting God thereupon had-glorified
et per C fere dies ab omnibus in veneratione magna
and for a-hundred almost days by all in veneration great
haberetur et a comite Raimundo, qui eam custodiebat,
it-was-held and by count Raymond who it guarded
gloriose tractaretur, contigit multos de clero ac populo
gloriously was-handled it-happened many of the-clergy and people
haesitare, quod non esset illa dominica lancea, sed ab homine
to-hesitate that not was it the-Lord's lance but by man
illo stolido altera erat fallaciter inventa. quapropter concilio
that stupid another had-been falsely found wherefore a-council
inito et ieiunio triduano a cunctis statuto et facto cum
entered and a-fast three-day by all appointed and done with
supplicatione precum ad Deum, cum lignorum struem in
supplication of-prayers to God when of-wood a-pile in
medio campo ante oppidum Archas succendissent VIII°
the-middle-of the-field before the-town Arqa they-had-kindled in-the-eighth
mense post Antiochiam captam, benedictione iudiciali super
month after Antioch taken a-blessing judicial over
ipsum ignem ab episcopis facta, inventor lanceae per
that-very fire by the-bishops made the-finder of-the-lance through
medium rogi flammantis, sicut ipse pro adfirmanda veritate
the-middle of-the-pyre flaming as he for confirming the-truth
sua fieri poposcerat, ultro celeriter transmeavit. quo
his to-be-done had-demanded of-his-own-accord swiftly crossed which
transito, illum hominem de flammis exeuntem tamquam reum
crossed that man from the-flames going-out as guilty
in cute crematum conspexerunt et in interioris corporis
in the-skin burned they-beheld and in of-the-inner body

parte laesum morte intellexerunt. quod etiam rei exitus
the-part harmed by-death they-understood which also of-the-thing the-outcome
declaravit, cum die XII° ipso angore cauteriatus
declared when on-the-day twelfth by-that-very anguish burned
obiit. et quia ob honorem et amorem Dei omnes lanceam
he-died and because for the-honor and love of-God all lance
illam venerati fuerant, hoc iudicio sic peracto, contristati
that venerated had this judgment thus completed saddened
valde remanserunt increduli, qui prius exstiterant huius rei
greatly remained unbelieving who before had-been of-this thing
creduli. comes tamen Raimundus diu eam postea servavit.
believing the-count yet Raymond long it afterward kept

De obsidione Christianorum in urbe Antiochena a Turcis

XIX · THE FRANKS BESIEGED IN ANTIOCH

The day after Antioch falls, Kerbogha besieges the city: the Sultan sent him, and he spent three fruitless weeks before Baldwin's Edessa on the way. The Franks are desolate again, their punishment doubled for their sins with outlawed women. Sixty thousand Turks enter by the citadel and press them, then withdraw in fear, leaving the Franks shut in and anxious beyond belief.

Et cum Antiochia, ut dictum est, capta fuisset, die
and when Antioch as said it-is taken had-been on-the-day
sequenti multitudo innumera Turcorum circa eandem urbem
following a-multitude countless of-Turks around the-same city
obsidionem adposuerunt. nam Soltanus, rex scilicet Persarum,
a-siege laid for the-Sultan the-king namely of-the-Persians
habita legatione quod Franci Antiochiam obsidebant, statim
had an-embassy that the-Franks Antioch were-besieging at-once
gente multa congregata contra Francos exercitum suum misit.
people much gathered against the-Franks army his sent

cuius gentis Corbagath dux fuit et satrapa. hic quidem
of-which people Kerbogha the-leader was and satrap he indeed
ante urbem Edessam, quam tunc domnus Balduinus possidebat,
before the-city Edessa which then lord Baldwin possessed
per III hebdomadas stationem fecerat; sed nihil ibi proficiens,
for three weeks a-station had-made but nothing there achieving
Antiochiam properavit ad succurrendum Aoxiano principi.
to-Antioch hastened for coming-to-the-aid-of Yaghi-Siyan the-prince
quibus visis, non minus solito iterum Franci sunt desolati,
whom seen not less than-usual again the-Franks were desolate
quia propter peccata sua poena est eis duplicata. nam
because on-account-of sins their the-penalty was to-them doubled for
cum civitatem ingressi fuissent, confestim cum feminis exlegibus
when the-city entered they-had at-once with women outlaw
commiscuerunt se ex eis plures. tunc insuper ingressi sunt
mixed themselves of them many then besides entered have
urbem LX fere milia Turcorum per castrum sublime a
the-city sixty about thousand of-Turks through the-citadel lofty from
parte rupis excelsae, qui nostros vehementissime crebris
the-side of-the-rock high who our-men most-vehemently with-frequent
invasionibus coartaverunt. sed non fuit mora; pavore perfusi
attacks pressed but not was delay with-fear drenched
magno foras ad obsidionem, relicta urbe, exierunt. Franci
great outside to the-siege left the-city they-went-out the-Franks
autem inclusi, ultra quam credi potest remanserunt anxii.
moreover shut-in beyond than to-be-believed can remained anxious

De visionibus infra urbem apparentibus

XX · VISIONS IN THE CITY

The Lord appears to a fleeing cleric, bids him return, and promises his help in battle, won by his mother's prayers, if the people repent. A dead brother appears to a man climbing down the wall and tells him their slain comrades will fight beside them. Starving, the army resolves on a three-day fast with prayers and alms.

Interea tamen non immemor Dominus eorum pluribus,
meanwhile yet not unmindful the-Lord of-them to-many
quod saepe dictis adfirmabant, apparuit, qui confortando
which often in-words they-affirmed appeared who by-comforting
eos promittebat populum ad praesens victoria gaudendum.
them promised the-people for the-present in-victory to-rejoice
tunc cuidam clerico pro timore mortis aufugienti apparuit
then to-a-certain cleric for fear of-death fleeing appeared
Dominus, inquiens: quo, frater, protendis? fugio, respondit,
the-Lord saying whither brother do-you-go I-flee he-answered
ne infortunatus peream.
lest unfortunate I-perish

Sic fugiunt plurimi, pereant ne morte maligna.
so flee very-many they-may-perish lest by-death evil

cui Dominus ait: ne fugias, sed vade retro et dic
to-whom the-Lord said do-not flee but go back and say
ceteris quod in proelio cum illis adero. nam matris
to-the-others that in the-battle with them I-shall-be-present for of-mother
meae precibus placatus propitiabor eis: sed quia
my by-the-prayers appeased I-shall-be-propitious to-them but because
peccaverunt, fere perierunt. sit autem spes eorum in me
they-have-sinned almost they-have-perished let-be moreover the-hope their in me

firma et faciam eos in Turcos triumphare. paeniteant et
firm and I-shall-make them over the-Turks to-triumph let-them-repent and
salvi fient. Dominus sum, qui loquor tecum. mox ille
saved they-shall-become the-Lord I-am who speak with-you soon he
reversus, quod audivit narravit. interea, dum plures noctu
having-returned what he-heard told meanwhile while many by-night
per chordas de muro descendere vellent et fugere, quoniam
by ropes from the-wall to-descend wished and to-flee since
hoc multi fecerunt qui formidabant vel inedia vel gladio
this many did who feared either by-starvation or by-the-sword
perire, astitit cuidam descendenti frater eiusdem iam
to-perish stood-by to-a-certain-one descending the-brother of-the-same already
mortuus, aiens illi: quo, frater, fugis? resta, ne timeas;
dead saying to-him whither brother do-you-flee stay do-not fear
Dominus enim in proelio vestro vobiscum erit et consocii
the-Lord for in battle your with-you shall-be and the-comrades
vestri, qui in hoc itinere iam morte vos antecesserunt, contra
your who on this journey already in-death you have-gone-before against
Turcos vobiscum proeliabuntur. miratus ille verba defuncti
the-Turks with-you shall-fight marveling he at-the-words of-the-dead-man
ire desiit et quod audivit ceteris recitavit. sed cum placeret
to-go ceased and what he-heard to-the-others recited but when it-pleased
Domino labori famulorum suorum finem dare, qui etiam
the-Lord to-the-labor of-servants his an-end to-give who also
angorem tantimodum amplius tolerare non poterant, nec iam
anguish so-manifold further to-endure not could nor now
quicquam haberent quod manducarent, qua de re tam ipsi
anything had that they-might-eat which for thing as-much they
quam eorum equi debilitati nimis erant, constituerunt invicem
as their horses weakened very were they-resolved mutually

ieiunium triduanum fieri cum precibus et eleemosynis, ut
a-fast three-day to-be-made with prayers and alms that
illis paenitentibus et Deo supplicantibus eis propitiaretur.
to-them repenting and to-God supplicating to-them he-might-be-propitious

De bello a Francis Turcis mandato

XXI · THE FRANKS OFFER BATTLE

Through Peter the Hermit the Franks offer the Turks battle unless they leave the land, or a combat of chosen knights, so that the winner may take the city. The Turks, three hundred thousand strong and knowing the Franks' knights reduced to foot, refuse, and the Franks prepare to fight, trusting in God.

Interim statuto consilio, mandaverunt Turcis per Petrum
meanwhile appointed a-council they-sent-word to-the-Turks through Peter
heremitam quendam, quod nisi terram quae Christianis ab
a-hermit certain that unless the-land which to-the-Christians from
olim pertinebat, quietam eis dimitterent, die sequenti
of-old belonged quiet to-them they-gave-up on-the-day following
procul dubio bellum contra eos inirent. quod si aliter
far-from doubt battle against them they-would-enter that if otherwise
fieri vellent, aut per V aut per X aut per XX seu per
to-be-done they-wished either by five or by ten or by twenty or by
C milites ab utraque parte electos fieret bellum, ne
a-hundred knights from each side chosen battle should-be-made lest
cunctis simul bellantibus, tanta gentium multitudo moreretur,
all together warring so-great of-peoples a-multitude should-die
et quorum pars alteram superaret, urbem et regnum sine
and of-whom the-part the-other should-overcome the-city and kingdom without
controversia libere acciperet. hoc mandatum est, sed a Turcis
controversy freely should-receive this sent-word was but by the-Turks

concessum non est, et quia in multitudine gentis suae et in
granted not was and because in the-multitude of-people their and in
virtute confidebant, vincere et destruere se posse nostros
strength they-trusted to-conquer and to-destroy themselves to-be-able ours
putabant. aestimabantur quidem numero simul esse CCC
they-thought they-were-reckoned indeed in-number together to-be three-hundred
milia, tam equites quam pedites. nostros vero milites
thousand as-well horsemen as foot-soldiers our but knights
sciebant effici pedites, debiles, inopes. regresso autem Petro
they-knew to-be-made foot-soldiers weak needy returned moreover Peter
legato, redditur responsum. quo audito, paraverunt se
the-envoy is-returned the-answer which heard prepared themselves
Franci ad proeliandum, nihil haesitantes, sed in Deo spem
the-Franks for fighting nothing hesitating but in God hope
suam penitus ponentes. principes Turcorum multi erant, quos
their wholly placing the-princes of-the-Turks many were whom
admiratos praenominabant. hi sunt: Corbagath, Maleducat,
emirs they-called these are Kerbogha Maleducat
Amisoliman et multi alii, quos nominare perlongum est.
Amisoliman and many others whom to-name very-long it-is

De belli apparatu

XXII · THE ARMY GOES OUT

Adhemar has every man feed his horse the night before. On June 28 the army goes out in its battle-lines, priests in white weeping and singing psalms. The Turk Amirdalis, who knew the Franks' banners from Antioch, warns Kerbogha at his chess that battle is coming under the great Pope's standard. Kerbogha's belated offer of terms fails, and Amirdalis weighs flight but urges his men to fight.

Francorum vero principes isti erant: Hugo Magnus, Robertus
of-the-Franks but the-princes these were Hugh the-Great Robert
Normannorum comes, Robertus comes Flandriae, dux
of-the-Normans count Robert count of-Flanders duke
Godefridus, Raimundus comes, Boamundus et multi alii
Godfrey Raymond count Bohemond and many others
minores tamen horum. benedicat Deus animam Ademari
lesser yet than-these may-bless God the-soul of-Adhemar
Podiensis episcopi, qui, vir apostolicus, benigne semper
of-Le-Puy bishop who a-man apostolic kindly always
populum confortabat et in Domino roborabat. o pia res!
the-people comforted and in the-Lord strengthened O pious thing
vespere praecedente iusserat ipse cunctae militiae Dei
on-the-evening preceding had-ordered he to-the-whole soldiery of-God
exercitus sub edicto praeconario, ut unusquisque pro posse
of-the-host by edict of-the-herald that each for ability
suo quasi caritative de annona praebendam equo suo
his as-if charitably of grain a-ration to-horse his
impenderet, ne in crastino subter equitantes, hora
should-give lest on the-morrow beneath-them riding at-the-hour
bellica, debiles fame deficerent. iussum est et factum
of-battle weak from-hunger they-should-fail ordered it-was and done

est. igitur ad bellum omnibus sic praeparatis exierunt de
it-was therefore for battle all thus prepared they-went-out from
civitate summo mane, quod IV. Kal. Julii
the-city at-highest morning which on-the-fourth-day-before the-Kalends of-July
evenit, vexillis praecedentibus scararum et acierum,
fell the-banners going-before of-the-squadrons and of-the-battle-lines
separatim per catervas et phalanges convenienter divisarum.
separately into troops and phalanxes fittingly divided
inter quos erant sacerdotes albis amicti vestimentis, qui pro
among whom were priests in-white wrapped garments who for
cuncto populo flentes Domino psallebant et preces multiplices
all the-people weeping to-the-Lord sang-psalms and prayers manifold
mentibus devotis fundebant. tunc quidam Turcus, nomine
with-minds devout poured-out then a-certain Turk by-name
Amirdalis, miles probissimus, cum vidisset gentem nostram
Amirdalis a-knight most-valiant when he-had-seen people our
contra eos signis levatis sic egredientem, miratus est valde.
against them standards raised thus going-out marveled has greatly
et cum signa procerum nostrorum considerasset, quae
and when the-standards of-nobles our he-had-considered which
singillatim cognoscebat ordinate procedere, mox fore proelium
one-by-one he-recognized in-order to-advance soon to-be a-battle
ratus est. in Antiochia enim conversatus fuerat, in qua
thought has in Antioch for lived he-had in which
esse Francorum sic didicerat, qui confestim ad Corbagath
the-being of-the-Franks so he-had-learned who at-once to Kerbogha
properans, quod viderat intimavit ei dicens: quid scaccis
hastening what he-had-seen made-known to-him saying why at-chess
ludis? en Franci veniunt! cui respondit ille: Veniuntne
do-you-play behold the-Franks come to-whom answered he do-they-come
ad bellum? respondit Amirdalis: adhuc ignoro, sed parumper
to battle answered Amirdalis still I-know-not but a-little

exspecta. Cumque item prospiceret vexilla principum
wait and-when again he-looked-out the-banners of-the-princes
nostrorum altrinsecus ordinate praeferri et acies
our on-both-sides in-order to-be-borne-before and the-battle-lines
divisas decenter subsequi, mox regressus Corbagath dixit:
divided fittingly to-follow soon having-returned to-Kerbogha he-said
ecce Franci! quid putas? respondit. bellum reor, inquit; sed
behold the-Franks what do-you-think he-answered battle I-think he-says but
adhuc paulisper operire. signa quae cerno quorum sunt
still a-little-while wait the-standards which I-see whose they-are
non ignoro. iterum attentius intuens cognovit signum
not I-know-not again more-attentively gazing he-recognized the-standard
episcopi Podiensis cum tertia turma procedens.
of-the-bishop of-Le-Puy with the-third troop advancing

Longius haud restans, Corbagath intulit ipse:
longer by-no-means waiting to-Kerbogha he-brought-word himself
En Franci veniunt, vel nunc fuge, vel bene pugna;
behold the-Franks come either now flee or well fight
Nam signum video magni procedere Papae.
for the-standard I-see of-the-great to-advance Pope

et quos aestimabas omnino supplantari, hodie timeas
and those-whom you-reckoned wholly to-be-overthrown today you-should-fear
ab eis superari. Corbagath dixit: mittam ad Francos,
by them to-be-overcome Kerbogha said I-shall-send to the-Franks
ut quod hesterna die mihi mandaverunt, hodie concedam.
that what on-yesterday's day to-me they-sent-word today I-may-grant

Amirdalis dixit: tarde locutus es. attamen id mandavit,
Amirdalis said late spoken you-have nevertheless it he-sent-word
sed quod quaesivit, non inpetravit. Amirdalis autem mox
but what he-sought not he-obtained Amirdalis moreover soon

Ab eo secedens, equum calcaribus ursit.
from him withdrawing his-horse with-spurs pressed
Cogitat an fugiat, socios tamen admonet ipse
he-ponders whether he-should-flee his-comrades yet admonishes he-himself
Fortiter ut pugnent omnes iaciantque sagittas.
strongly that they-should-fight all and-should-hurl arrows

De bello et victoria Christianorum et fuga Turcorum

XXIII · VICTORY AND THE TURKS' FLIGHT

Hugh, the two Roberts, Godfrey, the bishop with Raymond's men, and Bohemond attack in turn. A fear from heaven falls on the Turks and they flee, leaving their tents full of gold, cloaks, and beasts; Kerbogha flees swifter than a stag, for he fought against God. Verses date the city's fall. Adhemar dies on August 1, and Hugh the Great goes home.

Ecce autem Hugo Magnus et Robertus comes Normannus,
behold moreover Hugh the-Great and Robert count the-Norman
comes quoque Flandriae Robertus in prima acie constituti
count also of-Flanders Robert in the-first battle-line placed
sunt invasores. in secunda vero dux Godefridus cum
were as-attackers in the-second indeed duke Godfrey with
Alemannis et Lotharingis subsecutus est. post hos episcopus
the-Alamans and Lotharingians followed has after these the-bishop
Podiensis et gens Raimundi comitis, Guascones et
of-Le-Puy and the-people of-Raymond the-count Gascons and

Provinciales incesserunt. ipse vero in urbe remanserat
Provençals advanced he but in the-city had-remained
custoditurus eam. postremam quippe catervam Boamundus
about-to-guard it the-last indeed troop Bohemond
sollerter minavit. Turci autem, cum considerarent se
skillfully drove the-Turks moreover when they-considered themselves
ab omni Francorum exercitu impetu ferocissimo pervadi,
by all of-the-Franks the-army with-onslaught most-fierce to-be-attacked
sparsim, ut mos eorum est, prosilire et sagittas coeperunt
scattered as custom their is to-leap-forth and arrows began
iacere. sed immisso timore caelitus in eos ac si totus
to-hurl but sent-in fear from-heaven upon them and as-if the-whole
mundus super eos rueret, fugam omnes immoderatam
world upon them were-rushing flight all unrestrained
egerunt et a Francis pro posse suo fugientes fugati sunt.
made and by the-Franks for ability their fleeing put-to-flight were
sed quia paucos et debiles fame habebant equos, non
but because few and weak from-hunger they-had horses not
quantum oporteret de paganis retinuerunt, sed tentoria eorum
as-much-as it-behooved of the-pagans they-held but the-tents their
cuncta in campis remanserunt. de rebus quoque eorum
all in the-fields remained of things also their
multiformibus in eisdem tentoriis reppererunt aurum scilicet,
manifold in those-same tents they-found gold namely
argentum, pallia, indumenta, utensilia et cetera multa, quae
silver cloaks clothes utensils and other many-things which
valde timidi per campos sparsim fugientes vel reliquerant
very fearful over the-fields scattered fleeing either they-had-left
vel iaciebant, videlicet equos, mulos, camelos, asinos, galeros
or threw-away namely horses mules camels asses helmets
optimos, arcus et sagittas cum pharetris. fugit Corbagath
most-excellent bows and arrows with quivers fled Kerbogha

cervo velocius, qui tam feris dictis et minis Francos iam
than-a-stag swifter who so fierce with-words and threats the-Franks already
persaepe occiderat. sed cur fugit qui habebat tantam gentem
very-often had-killed but why fled he-who had so-great a-people
et equis bene munitam? quoniam contra Deum bellare
and with-horses well furnished since against God to-make-war
nitebatur, cuius pompam Dominus a longe prospiciens
he-strove whose pomp the-Lord from far-off beholding
omnino cassavit et virtutem. et quia equos habebant
wholly made-void and the-strength and because horses they-had
bonos et veloces, ideo effugerunt; lentiores vero Francis
good and swift therefore they-escaped the-slower but to-the-Franks
remanserunt. multi siquidem ex eis et de peditibus
remained many indeed of them and of the-foot-soldiers
Saracenis perempti sunt. de nostris autem pauci laesi sunt.
Saracens slain were of ours moreover few hurt were
mulieribus in tentoriis eorum inventis, nihil aliud mali
the-women in the-tents their found nothing else of-evil
eis Franci fecerunt, excepto quod lanceas suas in ventres
to-them the-Franks did except that lances their into the-bellies
earum infixerunt. tunc omnes voce exsultationis Deum
of-them they-fixed then all with-a-voice of-exultation God
benedixerunt et glorificaverunt, qui in necessitate tanta et
blessed and glorified who in need so-great and
angustia positos, dextera pietatis suae, sperantes in se
distress placed with-the-right-hand of-pity his those-hoping in him
ab hostibus tam trucibus liberavit. sed et ipsos devictos,
from enemies so savage freed but also those-very-ones conquered

Christianis fere iam devictis, potenter dispersit. de quorum
the-Christians almost now conquered powerfully scattered of whose
substantia locupletes facti ad urbem regressi sunt iucundi.
substance rich made to the-city returned have joyful

Cum fuit urbs capta venerabilis Antiochena,
when was the-city taken venerable Antiochene
Undecies centum, si subtrahis inde bis unum,
eleven-times a-hundred if you-subtract thence twice one
Tunc tot erant anni Domini de Virgine nati,
then so-many were the-years of-the-Lord from the-Virgin born
Bis novies orto Gemino sub sidere Phoebo.
twice nine-times risen Twin under the-star Phoebus

Tunc temporis obiit Ademarus episcopus Kalend. Augusti,
at-that time died Adhemar the-bishop on-the-Kalends of-August
cuius anima quiete fruatur aeterna. Amen! et tunc Hugo
whose soul rest may-enjoy eternal amen and then Hugh
Magnus Constantinopolim favore procerum abiit, deinde
the-Great to-Constantinople by-the-favor of-the-nobles went-away then
Franciam.
to-France

His gestis omnibus inclita principum turma totius exercitus epistulam hanc Romano pontifici direxit

XXIV · THE PRINCES' LETTER TO URBAN

Bohemond, Raymond, Godfrey, the two Roberts, and Eustace tell the pope how they took Nicaea, won at Dorylaeum, took Antioch, were besieged in turn, found the Lord's lance, and routed the Turks. Adhemar is dead, so they beg Urban to come to Antioch, where the name Christian began, sit in Peter's chair, root out the heresies, and finish the journey with them.

Domino venerabili papae Urbano Boamundus et Raimundus
to-the-lord venerable pope Urban Bohemond and Raymond
comes Sancti Aegidii, Godefridus dux Lothariensis et
count of-Saint Gilles Godfrey duke of-Lorraine and
Robertus comes Normanniae, Robertus Flandrensium comes
Robert count of-Normandy Robert of-the-Flemings count
et Eustachius Boloniae comes, salutem et fidelia servitia et
and Eustace of-Boulogne count greeting and faithful services and
ut filii suo patri spirituali veram in Christo subiectionem.
as sons to-their father spiritual true in Christ subjection
Volumus omnes et desideramus notum vobis fieri, quam
we-wish all and desire known to-you to-be-made how
magna Dei misericordia quamque evidentissimo ipsius
great of-God by-the-mercy and-how by-most-evident his
adminiculo a nobis capta est Antiochia, et Turci, qui multa
support by us taken was Antioch and the-Turks who many
Domino nostro Jesu Christo intulerant opprobria, capti
on-the-Lord our Jesus Christ had-brought reproaches captured
et interfecti sunt; et nos Hierosolymitani Jesu Christi
and killed were and we the-Jerusalem-pilgrims of-Jesus Christ
iniuriam summi Dei vindicavimus, et nos, qui Turcos prius
the-injury of-highest God have-avenged and we who the-Turks before

obsederamus, qualiter postea a Turcis de Chorasan et
had-besieged how afterward by the-Turks from Khorasan and
Hierusalem et Damasco multisque aliis terris venientibus
Jerusalem and Damascus and-many other lands coming
obsessi fuimus et quomodo misericordia Jesu Christi
besieged we-were and how by-the-mercy of-Jesus Christ
liberati sumus. cum igitur capta Nicaea, illam maximam
freed we-have-been when therefore taken Nicaea that very-great
multitudinem Turcorum, sicut audistis, in Kalendas Julii
multitude of-Turks as you-have-heard on the-Kalends of-July
nobis obviam in valle Dorotillae devicissemus et illum
us to-meet in the-valley of-Dorylaeum we-had-conquered and that
magnum Solimannum fugavissemus suisque omnibus et
great Kilij-Arslan had-put-to-flight and-of-his all-things both
terra et rebus exspoliassemus, adquisita et pacificata tota
of-land and of-goods had-despoiled acquired and pacified the-whole
Romania, ad obsidendam Antiochiam venimus. cuius in
Romania for besieging Antioch we-came whose in
obsidione multa mala perpessi sumus, tum de bellis
siege many evils endured we-have both from the-wars
finitimorum Turcorum et paganorum in nos tam frequenter
of-neighboring Turks and pagans upon us so often
et copiose inruentium, ut verius diceremur obsessi
and abundantly rushing that more-truly we-might-be-said besieged
ab illis, quos in Antiochia obsederamus. tandem superatis
by those whom in Antioch we-had-besieged at-length overcome
omnibus bellis, ex eorum prospero eventu fides Christiana
all the-wars from their prosperous outcome the-faith Christian
exaltata est hoc modo: ego Boamundus, conventione facta
exalted was in-this way I Bohemond a-covenant made
cum quodam Turco, qui ipsam mihi tradidit civitatem, scalas
with a-certain Turk who that-very to-me handed-over the-city ladders

parum ante diem muro applicui, et sic civitatem antea
a-little before day to-the-wall I-set and so the-city before
Christo resistentem IIIº Nonas Iunii accepimus,
to-Christ resisting on-the-third-day-before the-Nones of-June we-received
et Cassianum, ipsius civitatis tyrannum, cum multis
and Yaghi-Siyan of-that-very city the-tyrant with many
suorum militibus interfecimus, eorumque uxores et filios
of-his knights we-killed and-their wives and sons
ac familias cum auro et argento et omnibus eorum
and households with gold and silver and all their
possessionibus retinuimus. asylum autem Antiochenum a
possessions we-kept the-stronghold moreover Antiochene by
Turcis praemunitum habere non potuimus. sed cum in
the-Turks fortified to-have not we-could but when on
crastinum asylum ipsum adgredi voluissemus, infinitam
the-morrow the-stronghold itself to-attack we-had-wished an-infinite
Turcorum multitudinem, quam multis diebus ad debellandum
of-Turks multitude which for-many days for warring
nobiscum venturam extra civitatem exspectaveramus, per
with-us about-to-come outside the-city we-had-awaited over
campos omnes discurrentem vidimus. qui IIIª die nos
the-fields all running-about we-saw who on-the-third day us
obsederunt et praedictum asylum plus quam C eorum
besieged and the-aforesaid stronghold more than a-hundred of-them
milia intraverunt ac per portam eiusdem asyli ad
thousand entered and through the-gate of-the-same stronghold into
civitatem sub asylo constitutam, nobis illisque communem,
the-city below the-stronghold set to-us and-them common
inrumpere voluerunt. nos autem in alio monte exsistentes
to-break-in wished we moreover on another mount being
ipsi asylo opposito, viam inter utrumque exercitum
to-that-very stronghold opposite the-road between both armies

ad civitatem descendentem, ne ipsi nobis multo plures
to the-city descending lest they upon-us much more
inrumperent, custodientes et intus et extra nocte et die
break-in guarding both within and without by-night and by-day
bellantes, portas asyli ad civitatem descendentes intrare
fighting the-gates of-the-stronghold to the-city descending to-enter
et ad castra compulimus remeare. cum ergo vidissent, quod
and to the-camp we-compelled to-return when therefore they-saw that
ex illa parte nihil nocere potuissent, ita nos ex omni parte
from that side nothing to-harm they-could so us from every side
circumiverunt, quod nulli ex nostris exire vel ad nos venire
they-surrounded that none of our-men to-go-out or to us to-come
potuerunt. qua de re ita desolati et adflicti omnes fuimus,
could which for thing so desolate and afflicted all we-were
quod fame et multis aliis angustiis morientes, equos
that from-hunger and many other straits dying horses
et asinos nostros famelicos interficientes, multi nostrum
and asses our famished killing many of-us
comederunt. sed interim, clementissima Dei omnipotentis
ate but meanwhile the-most-clement of-God almighty
misericordia nobis subveniente et pro nobis vigilante, lanceam
mercy to-us coming-to-aid and for us watching the-lance
dominicam, qua Salvatoris nostri latus Longini manibus
of-the-Lord with-which of-the-Savior our the-side of-Longinus by-the-hands
perforatum fuit, S. Andrea apostolo cuidam famulo Dei
pierced was Saint Andrew the-apostle to-a-certain servant of-God
ter revelante, locum etiam ubi lancea iacebat demonstrante,
thrice revealing the-place also where the-lance lay showing
in ecclesia beati Petri apostolorum principis invenimus. cuius
in the-church of-blessed Peter of-the-apostles the-prince we-found whose
inventione aliisque multis divinis revelationibus ita confortati
by-the-finding and-other many divine revelations so comforted

et corroborati fuimus, ut qui antea adflicti et timidi
and strengthened we-were that we-who before afflicted and timid
fueramus, tunc ad proeliandum audacissimi promptissimique
had-been then for fighting most-bold and-most-ready
alii alios hortabamur. tribus igitur hebdomadis et IV
some others we-exhorted for-three therefore weeks and four
diebus obsessi, in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli, in
days besieged on the-vigil of-the-apostles Peter and Paul in
Deo confidentes, de omnibus iniquitatibus nostris confessi,
God trusting of all iniquities our having-confessed
portas civitatis cum omni nostro bellico apparatu
out-of-the-gates of-the-city with all our warlike equipment
exivimus, et tam pauci eramus, quod ipsi nos non contra
we-went-out and so few we-were that they us not against
eos pugnare sed fugere adfirmabant. nobis autem omnibus
them to-fight but to-flee affirmed we moreover all
paratis et tam peditum quam militum certis ordinibus
prepared and as-well of-foot-soldiers as of-knights in-fixed ranks
dispositis, ubi maior eorum virtus et fortitudo erat,
arranged where the-greater their strength and might was
audacter requisivimus cum lancea dominica et a prima
boldly we-sought-them with the-lance of-the-Lord and from the-first
belli statione fugere eos coegimus. ipsi autem, ut mos
of-the-battle station to-flee them we-forced they moreover as custom
eorum est, undique se dispergere coeperunt, occupando
their is on-all-sides themselves to-scatter began seizing
colles et vias ubicumque poterant nos girare voluerunt. sic
hills and roads wherever they-could us to-surround they-wished so
enim nos omnes interficere putaverunt. sed nobis multis bellis
for us all to-kill they-thought but to-us by-many wars
contra eorum calliditates et ingenia edoctis, gratia Dei
against their wiles and devices taught by-the-grace of-God

et misericordia ita subvenit, ut qui paucissimi ad eorum
and mercy so it-came-to-aid that we-who very-few in their
comparationem eramus, omnes illos in unum coegimus et
comparison were all them into one we-drove and
coactos, dextera Dei nobiscum dimicante, fugere et castra
driven the-right-hand of-God with-us fighting to-flee and the-camp
cum omnibus, quae in castris erant, relinquere compulimus.
with all-things which in the-camp were to-leave we-compelled
quibus devictis totaque die fugatis et multis eorum
who conquered and-the-whole day put-to-flight and many of-them
milibus interfectis, ad civitatem laeti et hilares remeavimus.
thousands killed to the-city glad and cheerful we-returned
asylum autem supradictum admiratus quidam, qui in eo
the-stronghold moreover aforesaid an-emir certain who in it
erat cum mille hominibus, Boamundo reddidit, et per
was with a-thousand men to-Bohemond surrendered and through
ipsius manum Christianae se fidei unanimiter subiugavit.
his hand to-the-Christian himself faith with-one-mind subjected
itaque Dominus noster Jesus Christus totam Antiochiam
and-so the-Lord our Jesus Christ the-whole Antioch
Romanae religioni ac fidei mancipavit. verum, quia solet
to-the-Roman religion and faith made-over but because is-wont
semper aliquod maestum intervenire laetis rebus, ille Podiensis
always something sorrowful to-come-between glad things that of-Le-Puy
episcopus, quem tuum vicarium nobis commiseras, peracto
bishop whom as-your vicar to-us you-had-committed completed
bello, in quo honeste fuit, et pacificata civitate, Kalendis
the-battle in which honorably he-was and pacified the-city on-the-Kalends
Augusti mortuus est. nunc igitur filii tui commisso patre
of-August died has now therefore sons your of-the-committed father
orbati, tibi spirituali patri nostro mandamus, ut qui hanc
bereaved to-you spiritual father our we-send-word that you-who this

viam incepisti et sermonibus tuis nos omnes et terras
road began and by-words your us all and lands
nostras et quicquid in terris erat relinquere fecisti et cruces
our and whatever on earth was to-leave made and crosses
baiulando Christum sequi praecepisti et Christianum nomen
by-carrying Christ to-follow commanded and the-Christian name
exaltare commonuisti, complendo quae hortatus es ad
to-exalt admonished fulfilling what exhorted you-have to
nos venias et quoscumque poteris, ut tecum veniant,
us you-come and whoever you-shall-be-able that with-you they-come
submoneas. hinc enim Christianum nomen sumpsit exordium.
you-summon hence for the-Christian name took its-beginning
nam postquam beatus Petrus in cathedra, quam cotidie
for after blessed Peter on the-throne which daily
cernimus, inthronizatus fuit, illi, qui prius vocabantur Galilaei,
we-see enthroned was those who before were-called Galileans
primum hinc et principaliter vocati sunt Christiani. quid
first hence and chiefly called were Christians what
igitur in orbe rectius esse videtur quam ut tu, qui
therefore in the-world more-right to-be seems than that you who
pater et caput Christianae religionis exsistis, ad urbem
the-father and head of-the-Christian religion are to the-city
principalem et capitalem Christiani nominis venias et
principal and capital of-the-Christian name should-come and
bellum, quod tuum est, ex tua parte conficias? nos enim
the-war which yours is on your part should-accomplish we for
Turcos et paganos expugnavimus, haereticos autem, Graecos
the-Turks and pagans have-overcome the-heretics moreover Greeks
et Armenos, Syros, Jacobitasque expugnare nequivimus.
and Armenians Syrians and-Jacobites to-overcome we-could-not
mandamus igitur et remandamus tibi, carissimo patri nostro,
we-send-word therefore and send-word-again to-you dearest father our

ut tu pater et caput ad tuae paternitatis locum venias,
that you father and head to of-your fatherhood the-place should-come
et qui beati Petri es vicarius, in cathedra eius sedeas
and who of-blessed Peter are vicar on throne his should-sit
et nos filios tuos in omnibus recte agendis oboedientes.
and us sons your in all-things rightly to-be-done obedient
habeas et omnes haereses, cuiuscumque generis sint,
you-should-have and all heresies of-whatever kind they-be
tua auctoritate et nostra virtute eradices et destruas.
by-your authority and our strength you-should-uproot and destroy
et sic nobiscum viam Jesu Christi a nobis inceptam et
and so with-us the-road of-Jesus Christ by us begun and
a te praedicatam perficias et portas etiam utriusque
by you preached you-should-complete and the-gates also of-each
Hierusalem nobis aperias et Sepulcrum Domini liberum
Jerusalem to-us you-should-open and the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord free
atque Christianum nomen super omne nomen exaltatum
and the-Christian name above every name exalted
facias. si enim ad nos veneris et viam per
you-should-make if for to us you-shall-have-come and the-road by
te inceptam nobiscum perfeceris, totus mundus tibi
you begun with-us you-shall-have-completed the-whole world to-you
oboediens erit. quod ipse te facere faciat qui Deus
obedient shall-be which he-himself you to-do may-make who God
vivit et regnat in saecula saeculorum. Amen.
lives and reigns into the-ages of-ages amen

De invasione aliarum urbium. De castri Archas inacta obsidione et de itinere et aduentu Francorum ad Hierosolymam

XXV · MARRA, ARQA, AND THE ROAD TO JERUSALEM

Bohemond and Raymond take Albara and Marra, where starving men eat the flesh of the Saracen dead, and Bohemond seizes Antioch. The army besieges Arqa in vain for nearly five weeks, and the princes leave it to march while the harvest feeds them. They pass Tripoli, Sidon, Tyre, and Caesarea; Tancred and Baldwin ride to Bethlehem; and on June 7 the army besieges Jerusalem.

Cumque apud Antiochiam per IV menses viri nostri et equi
and-when at Antioch for four months men our and horses
eorum, requie et edulio refecti, vires pristinas resumpsissent,
their by-rest and food refreshed strength former had-taken-up-again
qui multis diebus multo labore fatigati fuerant, pars una
who for-many days by-much labor wearied had-been part one
exercitus, sumpto consilio, Syriam adierunt interiorem,
of-the-army taken counsel Syria approached the-inner
desiderantes tramitem Hierosolymitanum dilatare, in quo
desiring the-path to-Jerusalem to-widen in which
Boamundus et comes Raimundus maiores exstiterunt. alii
Bohemond and count Raymond the-greater stood-forth the-other
enim principes in partibus Antiochenis adhuc morabantur.
for princes in the-parts of-Antioch still were-staying
sed hi duo cum gente sua duas urbes, Baram videlicet et
but these two with people their two cities Albara namely and
Maram, magnae probitatis invasione comprehenderunt. priore
Marra of-great of-prowess by-an-attack took the-former
quarum citissime capta et caede civium prorsus
of-which most-swiftly taken and by-the-slaughter of-the-citizens utterly

depopulata raptisque omnibus quae in ea reppererunt, festini
depopulated and-snatched all-things which in it they-found hastening
alteram adierunt. ubi obsidione per XX dies acta, famem
the-other they-approached where a-siege for twenty days carried-on hunger
nimiam gens nostra pertulit. dicere perhorreo, quod plerique
excessive the-people our endured to-say I-shudder that very-many
nostrum famis rabie nimis vexati abscidebant de natibus
of-us of-hunger by-the-rage too vexed cut from the-buttocks
Saracenorum iam ibi mortuorum frusta, quae coquebant
of-the-Saracens now there dead pieces which they-cooked
et mandebant et parum ad ignem assata ore truci
and chewed and little at the-fire roasted with-mouth savage
devorabant. itaque plus obsessores quam obsessi angebantur.
devoured and-so more the-besiegers than the-besieged were-tormented
interea machinis, quas potuerunt, factis et muro admotis,
meanwhile engines which they-could made and to-the-wall moved
magnae audacitatis adsultu, suffragante Deo, per muri
of-great boldness by-an-assault aiding God over of-the-wall
fastigium Franci se intromiserunt; qui die illo et
the-top the-Franks themselves let-in who on-day that and
sequenti cunctos Saracenos a maiore usque ad minimum
the-following all the-Saracens from the-greatest all-the-way to the-least
occiderunt totamque substantiam eorum diripuerunt. qua
killed and-the-whole substance their plundered which
urbe sic detrita, Boamundus Antiochiam remeavit, de qua
city thus worn-down Bohemond to-Antioch returned from which
tunc homines Raimundi comitis, quos ibi proportionis suae
then the-men of-Raymond the-count whom there of-share his
custodes posuerat, eliminavit. quam urbem postea cum tota
guards he-had-placed he-cast-out which city afterward with the-whole
provincia possedit. aiebat enim, per prolocutionem suam
province he-possessed he-said for that-by parley his

et machinamentum eam adquisitam fuisse. comes vero
and contrivance it acquired to-have-been the-count but
Raimundus, iuncto sibi Tancredo, coeptum iter tenuit.
Raymond joined to-himself Tancred the-begun journey held
Robertus etiam comes Normannus die secundo discessionis
Robert also the-count Norman on-the-day second of-the-departure
a Mara urbe, quam ceperant, eidem exercitui adgregatus est.
from Marra the-city which they-had-taken to-the-same army joined was
Anno autem MºXCºIXº ab incarnatione Domini profecti
in-the-year moreover the-1099th from the-incarnation of-the-Lord set-out
sunt ad castrum Archas dictum, ad radicem montis Libani
have to the-castle Arqa called at the-root of-mount Lebanon
situm, quod condidit Aracaeus, ut legitur, Chanaan filius,
situated which founded Aracaeus as it-is-read of-Canaan the-son
nepos Noe. sed quia difficillimum est ad capiendum, per
the-grandson of-Noah but because most-difficult it-is for taking for
V fere septimanas ante illud in obsidione laborantes astiterunt
five almost weeks before it in siege laboring they-stood
nihil proficientes. dux equidem Godefridus et Robertus,
nothing achieving the-duke indeed Godfrey and Robert
comes Flandrensis, non multo post exercitum illum subsecuti
count of-Flanders not much later army that followed
sunt. qui Gibellum castrum obsidione vexabant, quando habita
have who Jabala the-castle with-siege were-harassing when held
legatione istis succurrendi habuerunt: unde confestim Gibellum
a-message these of-coming-to-aid they-had whence at-once Jabala
dimiserunt et ad exercitum causa bellandi mandati festini
they-gave-up and to the-army for-the-sake of-warring summoned hastening
perrexerunt; cum quibus postea circa oppidum sederunt, nam
went-on with whom afterward around the-town they-sat for
bellum, pro quo illuc iverant, non habuerunt. in illa tunc
the-battle for which thither they-had-gone not they-had in that then

obsidione Anselmus de Riboti Monte, miles strenuus, ictu
siege Anselm of Ribemont Mount a-knight vigorous by-the-blow
lapidis interiit. tunc autem facto invicem consilio, decreverunt
of-a-stone perished then moreover made mutually counsel they-decreed
pariter quod si aliquamdiu ibi morati fuerint et castrum
together that if for-some-time there delayed they-shall-have-been and castle
illud capere non potuerint, detrimentum inrestaurabile
that to-take not they-shall-have-been-able loss irreparable
cunctis inde continget. dixerunt esse operae pretium, ut,
to-all thence shall-befall they-said it-to-be worth the-while that
dimissa obsidione, vadant per viam illam, quam commercii
given-up the-siege they-should-go by road that which of-commerce
sciunt esse expertem, dum adhuc tempus messionis eos
they-know to-be devoid while still the-time of-harvest them
Hierosolymam ituros exspectat; et dum sic iverint,
to-Jerusalem about-to-go awaits and while thus they-shall-have-gone
de messibus undique iam adultis vivere poterunt et tali
on harvests on-all-sides now grown to-live they-shall-be-able and with-such
stipendio a Deo praeparato, ad locum desideratissimum, ipso
provision by God prepared to the-place most-desired he-himself
ducente, pervenient. sic laudatum est et sic factum est.
leading they-shall-come thus approved it-was and thus done it-was
Tentoriis igitur collectis, abeuntes transierunt urbem Tripolim.
the-tents therefore gathered going-away they-passed the-city Tripoli
qua transita, iuxta Gibellulum castellum meaverunt. Aprilis
which passed beside Jubail the-castle they-went April
erat mensis et iam de messibus vivebant. ultra deinde
was the-month and now on harvests they-lived beyond then
progressi, prope urbem Berytum transigentes, invenerunt
having-advanced near the-city Beirut passing they-found
urbem aliam, quam legimus Sidonem vocabulo dictam, in
a-city another which we-read Sidon by-name called in

terra Fenice, quam condidit Sidon filius Chanaan, a
the-land of-Phoenicia which founded Sidon son of-Canaan from
quo Sidonii. exin Sareptam Sidoniae. dehinc invenerunt
whom the-Sidonians thence Sarepta of-Sidon thereafter they-found
Tyrum civitatem peroptimam, unde fuit Apollonius, de quo
Tyre a-city most-excellent whence was Apollonius about whom
legimus. de his duabus urbibus Evangelista sonat: in partes
we-read of these two cities the-Evangelist sounds into the-parts
Tyri et Sidonis. nunc autem regionis incolae priorem
of-Tyre and Sidon now moreover of-the-region the-inhabitants the-former
Sagittam, alteram vero Sur nominant. nam hebraice Soor
Sagitta the-other but Sur call for in-Hebrew Soor
dicitur. deinde castellum Ziph nominatum, in VI° miliario
it-is-called then a-castle Ziph named at the-sixth milestone
a Ptolomaida. post has transierunt ante Ptolomaidam, prius
from Ptolemais after these they-passed before Ptolemais formerly
Accon dictam, quam quidam nostrorum errantes Acharon esse
Accon called which certain of-ours erring Ekron to-be
putabant. sed Acharon urbs est Philistaea prope Ascalonem,
thought but Ekron a-city is Philistine near Ascalon
inter Jamniam et Azotum. Accon vero, id est Ptolomaida,
between Jamnia and Azotus Accon but that is Ptolemais
ab austro habet Carmeli montem. iuxta quam transeuntes, ad
on the-south has Carmel the-mount beside which passing on
dexteram reliquerunt oppidum Caypham dictum, post haec
the-right they-left the-town Haifa called after these-things
iuxta Doram, exin iuxta Caesaream Palestinae incessimus,
beside Dor thence beside Caesarea of-Palestine we-advanced
quae quidem antiquitus dicta est altero nomine Turris
which indeed anciently called was by-another name the-Tower
Stratonis, in qua Herodes, Agrippa dictus, nepos illius
of-Straton in which Herod Agrippa called the-grandson of-that

Herodis, in cuius tempore natus est Christus, consumptus
Herod in whose time born was Christ consumed
a vermibus, exspiravit infeliciter. tum quidem ad dexteram
by worms breathed-his-last unhappily then indeed on the-right
partem reliquerunt maritimam et Arsuth oppidum, et per
side they-left the-coast and Arsuf the-town and through
urbem nomine Ramatha sive Arimathia perrexerunt, de qua
the-city by-name Ramatha or Arimathea they-went-on from which
Saraceni incolae aufugerant pridie quam illuc pervenissent
the-Saracen inhabitants had-fled the-day-before that thither had-come
Franci. illic annonam multam invenerunt, de qua iumenta
the-Franks there grain much they-found with which beasts-of-burden
sua oneraverunt et usque Hierosolymam portaverunt.
their they-loaded and up-to Jerusalem carried-it
Mora quippe ibi per IV dies facta, cum basilicae S.
the-delay indeed there for four days made when over-the-basilica of-Saint
Georgii episcopum praefecissent et in arcibus urbis homines
George a-bishop they-had-set and in the-towers of-the-city men
ad custodiendum locassent, Hierosolymam iter suum
for guarding they-had-placed toward-Jerusalem journey their
protenderunt. ipso die usque castellum, quod Emaus
they-stretched on-that-very day up-to the-castle which Emmaus
dicitur, ambulaverunt, quod iuxta se habet Modin, civitatem
is-called they-walked which beside itself has Modin the-city
Machabaeorum. nocte vero sequenti C milites de
of-the-Maccabees on-the-night indeed following a-hundred knights of
probioribus conscenderunt equos, qui aurora clarescente prope
the-more-valiant mounted horses who the-dawn brightening near
Iherusalem transeuntes usque Bethleem properaverunt: de
Jerusalem passing up-to Bethlehem hastened of
quibus erat Tancredus unus, alter vero Balduinus. quod
whom was Tancred one another but Baldwin which

cum Christiani, qui inibi conversabantur, comperirent, Graeci
when the-Christians who there dwelt learned Greeks
videlicet et Syri, Francos illuc advenisse, gavisi sunt
namely and Syrians the-Franks thither to-have-arrived rejoiced have
gaudio magno valde. ignorabant tamen primitus quae gens
with-joy great very they-knew-not yet at-first what people
essent, putantes eos vel Turcos vel Arabes esse. sed cum
they-were thinking them either Turks or Arabs to-be but when
aperte propius eos intuerentur et eos non dubitarent esse
openly nearer them they-gazed-on and them not they-doubted to-be
Francos, statim gaudenter crucibus adsumptis et textis,
Franks at-once gladly crosses taken-up and gospel-books
obviam flendo et pie cantando processerunt eis: flendo,
to-meet-them weeping and piously singing they-came-forth to-them weeping
quoniam metuebant ne tantillum gentis a multitudine tanta
because they-feared lest so-little of-a-people by a-multitude so-great
paganorum, quos in patria esse sciebant, facillime quandoque
of-pagans whom in the-country to-be they-knew very-easily sometime
occiderentur; cantando, quoniam congratulabantur eis quos
should-be-killed singing because they-congratulated them whom
diu desideraverant esse venturos, quos Christianismum, a
long they-had-desired to-be about-to-come whom Christendom by
nefandis tamdiu pessumdatum, in honorem debitum et
the-wicked so-long trampled to the-honor due and
pristinum relevare sentiebant. facta autem ilico in basilica
former to-raise-up they-perceived made moreover at-once in the-basilica
beatae Mariae supplicatione ad Deum devota, cum locum
of-blessed Mary a-supplication to God devout when the-place
in quo Christus natus fuit visitassent, dato Syris osculo
in which Christ born was they-had-visited given to-the-Syrians the-kiss
pacifico, ad urbem sanctam Iherusalem celeriter regressi sunt.
peaceful to the-city holy Jerusalem swiftly returned have

ecce subsequens exercitus, relicta in sinistra parte Gabaon,
behold the-following army left on the-left side Gibeon
quae ab Iherosolymis L distat stadiis, ubi Josue soli
which from Jerusalem fifty is-distant stades where Joshua to-the-sun
imperavit et lunae, civitati tunc adpropinquavit. et cum
commanded and to-the-moon to-the-city then drew-near and when
praecursores signiferi vexilla elevata civibus monstrassent,
the-forerunners standard-bearers the-banners raised to-the-citizens had-shown
protinus contra eos interni hostes exierunt. sed qui festini
at-once against them the-inner enemies went-out but who hastily
sic exierant, festinatius in urbem mox repulsi sunt.
thus had-gone-out more-hastily into the-city soon driven-back were

Lucis septenae iam Iunius igne calebat,
of-light seventh now June with-fire was-warm
Iherusalem Franci cum vallant obsidione.
Jerusalem the-Franks when invest with-siege

De situ Iherusalem

XXVI · THE SITE OF JERUSALEM

Jerusalem stands on a mountain without streams, with only Siloam's spring, but with many cisterns. It has David's tower, the Temple of the Lord with the rock where some say the ark lies, the round church of the Sepulcher open to the sky, and Solomon's Temple, now falling down. Hadrian adorned it and named it Aelia.

Est equidem civitas Iherusalem in montano loco posita,
is indeed the-city Jerusalem in a-mountainous place set
rivis, silvis fontibusque carens, excepto tantum fonte
of-streams of-woods and-of-springs lacking except only the-spring

Siloe, distante ab urbe quantum iactus est arcus, ubi
of-Siloam distant from the-city as-far-as the-cast is of-a-bow where
sufficienter aqua interdum habetur, interdum vero raro
sufficiently water at-times is-had at-times indeed by-scant
haustu attenuatus invenitur: qui fonticulus in vallis est
drawing thinned is-found which little-spring in of-the-valley is
fundo sub monte Sion in decursione torrentis Cedron, qui
the-bottom under mount Zion in the-course of-the-torrent Kidron which
tempore hiemali per vallem mediam Iosaphat defluere
in-time wintry through the-valley middle of-Jehoshaphat to-flow-down
solet. cisternae autem multae et aquis satis abundae in
is-wont cisterns moreover many and in-waters quite abundant in
urbe habentur, quae imbribus hibernis reservantur. extra
the-city are-had which by-the-rains of-winter are-kept outside
urbem quoque plures inveniuntur, quibus homines et pecora
the-city also many are-found by-which men and cattle
refocillantur. constat civitas haec condecenti magnitudine facta
are-refreshed stands city this of-fitting size made
per circuitum, ita ut nec parvitate nec magnitudine cuiquam
in circuit so that neither by-smallness nor by-size to-anyone
videatur fastidiosa, quae interius a muro usque ad murum
it-may-seem irksome which within from wall all-the-way to wall
quantum iacit arcus quater sagittam est lata. habet siquidem
as-far-as shoots a-bow four-times an-arrow is broad it-has indeed
ab occasu turrim Davidicam, utroque latere supplentem
on the-west the-tower of-David on-each side filling-out
civitatis murum; montem Sion a meridie paulo minus quam
of-the-city the-wall mount Zion on the-south a-little less than
iaciat arcus sagittam; ad orientem Oliveti montem mille
shoots a-bow an-arrow to the-east of-Olivet the-mount a-thousand
passibus ab urbe distantem. praedicta quidem Davidis turris
paces from the-city distant the-aforesaid indeed of-David tower

usque ad medietatem sui ab imo solide massata est
all-the-way to the-middle of-itself from the-bottom solidly massed is
et de lapidibus caementata quadris et magnis et plumbo
and of stones cemented squared and great and with-lead
fusili sigillatis: quae si bene munita cibario fuerit,
molten sealed which if well furnished with-food it-shall-have-been
XV homines vel XX ab omni adsultu hostium defendere
fifteen men or twenty from every assault of-the-enemies to-defend
poterunt. et est in eadem urbe Templum dominicum,
shall-be-able and there-is in the-same city the-Temple of-the-Lord
opere rotundo conpositum, ubi Salomon alterum prius
in-work round composed where Solomon another earlier
instituit mirificum, quod quamvis illi priori schemati
founded wondrous which although to-that former design
nullatenus sit comparandum, istud tamen opere mirabili
by-no-means be to-be-compared this yet in-work wondrous
et forma speciosissima factum est. Sepulcri dominici
and in-the-form most-beautiful made is of-the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord
ecclesia forma rotunda similiter, quae nunquam fuit tecta,
the-church in-the-form round likewise which never was roofed
sed semper foramine patulo architecti sapientis magisterio
but always with-an-opening wide of-an-architect wise by-the-mastery
artificiose machinato, hiatu perpetuo aperta claret in summo.
artfully contrived by-a-gap perpetual open shines at the-top
nec valeo nec audeo nec sapio multa, quae inibi
nor am-I-able nor do-I-dare nor do-I-know-how many-things which there
habentur, quaedam quidem adhuc praesentia, quaedam vero
are-had some indeed still present some but
iam praeterita recitare, ne in aliquo vel haec legentes vel
already past to-recount lest in anything either this reading or
haec audientes fallam. cum in templi medio, quando prius
this hearing I-deceive when in of-the-temple the-middle when first

intravimus et postea per XV fere annos, rupes quaedam ibi
we-entered and afterward for fifteen almost years a-rock certain there
nativa habetur, in qua divinabant esse arcam foederis Domini
native is-had in which they-divined to-be the-ark of-the-covenant of-the-Lord
cum urna et tabulis Moysi sigillatim conclusam, eo
with the-urn and the-tablets of-Moses one-by-one shut-in for-the-reason
quod Iosias, rex Iuda, poni eam iussit dicens: „nequaquam
that Josiah king of-Judah to-be-placed it ordered saying by-no-means
portabitis eam de loco isto“. praevidebat enim captivitatem
shall-you-carry it from place this he-foresaw for the-captivity
futuram; sed istud obest, quod in descriptionibus Ieremiae
future but this stands-against-it that in the-descriptions of-Jeremiah
legimus in libro Machabaeorum secundo, quod ipse
we-read in the-book of-the-Maccabees second that he-himself
Ieremias eam in Arabia occultaverit, dicens nequaquam illam
Jeremiah it in Arabia hid saying by-no-means it
esse inveniendam, donec gentes multae congregarentur. ipse
to-be to-be-found until peoples many should-be-gathered he
quidem contemporaneus huius regis Iosiae fuit; tamen vivendi
indeed contemporary of-this king Josiah was yet of-living
finem fecit rex, antequam Ieremias defungeretur occisus.
an-end made the-king before Jeremiah died killed
super rupem etiam praedictam dicebant angelum Domini
upon the-rock also aforesaid they-said the-angel of-the-Lord
stetisse et populum peremisse, propter dinumerationem
to-have-stood and the-people to-have-slain on-account-of the-numbering
insipienter a David factam et Domino displicentem. rupes
foolishly by David made and to-the-Lord displeasing the-rock
autem illa, quia Templum Domini deturpabat, postea cooperta
moreover that because the-Temple of-the-Lord it-disfigured afterward covered
est et marmore pavimentata, ubi nunc est altare suppositum
was and with-marble paved where now is an-altar set-under

et clerus ibi adaptavit chorum. hoc Templum dominicum in
and the-clergy there fitted a-choir this Temple of-the-Lord in
veneratione magna cuncti Saraceni habuerant, ubi precationes
veneration great all the-Saracens had-held where prayers
suas lege sua libentius quam alibi faciebant, quamvis
their by-law their more-willingly than elsewhere they-made although
idolo in nomine Mahumet facto eas vastarent, in quod
with-an-idol in the-name of-Muhammad made them they-laid-waste into which
etiam nullum ingredi Christianum permittebant. alterum
also no to-enter Christian they-allowed the-other
Templum, quod dicitur Salomonis, magnum est et mirabile.
Temple which is-called Solomon's great is and wondrous
non est autem illud idem, quod Salomon fabricari fecit,
not is moreover it the-same which Solomon to-be-built caused
quod quidem non potuit propter inopiam nostram in statu
which indeed not could for want our in the-state
quo illud invenimus sustentari; quapropter magna iam
in-which it we-found be-sustained wherefore in-great now
ex parte destruitur. non desunt etiam civitati per vicos
from part it-is-destroyed not are-lacking also to-the-city along the-streets
aquaeductus, per quos imbrium tempore omnes spurcitiae
aqueducts through which of-rains in-time all filths
diluuntur. hanc urbem etiam Aelius Hadrianus imperator
are-washed-away this city also Aelius Hadrian the-emperor
mirifice decoravit et vicos et plateas decenter pavimentis
wondrously adorned and the-streets and squares fittingly with-pavements
exornavit. de cuius nomine Iherusalem Aelia vocata est. ex
he-decked from whose name Jerusalem Aelia called was from
his et ceteris huiusmodi venerabilis est et gloriosa civitas.
these and other-things of-this-kind venerable is and glorious the-city

De obsidione urbis Iherusalem

XXVII · THE SIEGE AND CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM

An assault with ladders fails, and the army builds engines while fetching water from miles away. On the second day of the attack the Franks turn the defenders' own beams into a bridge from their tower, a tower on the wall burns, and at noon on a Friday they enter. The Saracens flee to David's tower and the two Temples; in Solomon's Temple nearly ten thousand are beheaded, and the Franks spare no one, not even women and children.

Quam cum aspicerent Franci et viderent eam ad capiendum
which when beheld the-Franks and saw it for taking
gravem, iussum est a principibus nostris scalas ligneas
difficult ordered it-was by princes our ladders wooden
fieri, quibus muro admotis deinde et erectis, cum impetu
to-be-made by-which to-the-wall moved then and raised with onslaught
feroci per eas in summum muri scandentes, urbem Deo
fierce by them to the-top of-the-wall climbing the-city God
iuvante ingrederentur. quod cum fecissent, die septimo
helping they-might-enter which when they-had-done on-the-day seventh
sequenti, monitu procerum, sonantibus bucinis mane
following by-the-warning of-the-nobles sounding the-trumpets in-the-morning
claro, impetu miro civitatem undique adsilierunt. et
bright with-onslaught wondrous the-city on-all-sides they-assaulted and
cum usque ad horam diei sextam adsiluissent et per
when all-the-way to the-hour of-the-day sixth they-had-assaulted and by
scalas quas aptaverant, eo quod paucae erant, introire
the-ladders which they-had-fitted for-the-reason that few they-were to-enter
nequirent, adsultum tristes dimiserunt. tunc adunato consilio,
they-could-not the-assault sad they-gave-up then gathered a-council
iussum est ab artificibus machinas fieri, quibus muro
ordered it-was by the-craftsmen engines to-be-made by-which to-the-wall

admotis, spei effectum, auxiliante Deo, adipiscerentur. quod
moved of-hope the-effect helping God they-might-obtain which
ita factum est. interim quidem nec panis nec carnis inopiam
so done was meanwhile indeed neither of-bread nor of-meat want
passi sunt; sed quia locus ille aridus et inaquosus et sine
suffered have but because place that dry and waterless and without
fluminibus exsistat, tam viri quam iumenta eorum egebant
rivers is as-well the-men as beasts their lacked
aqua nimis ad potandum. quapropter, quia monebat hoc
water very-much for drinking wherefore because urged this
necessitas, longe aquam quaeritabant et a IV miliariis vel
necessity far water they-sought and from four miles or
V laboriose ad obsidionem in utribus suis cotidie apportabant.
five laboriously to the-siege in skins their daily they-brought
machinis autem paratis, arietibus scilicet et scrophis, ad
the-engines moreover prepared rams namely and sows for
adsiliendum urbem item paraverunt. inter artificia vero illa
assaulting the-city likewise they-prepared among contrivances indeed those
turrim unam ex lignis exiguis, quia magna materies in
a-tower one of timbers slender because great material in
locis illis non habetur, compegerunt, quam noctu, edicto
places those not is-had they-fastened-together which by-night an-edict
proinde facto, ad unum civitatis cornu frustatim detulerunt.
accordingly made to one of-the-city horn piecemeal they-carried
et sic mane ipso cum petrarias et cetera adminicula
and thus in-the-morning itself when stone-throwers and the-other aids
paravissent, citissime haud longe a muro compactam
they-had-prepared most-swiftly not far from the-wall fastened
erexerunt. quam erectam et de coriis deforis bene munitam,
they-raised which raised and with hides outside well protected
paulatim promovendo muro propius impegerunt. tum vero
little-by-little by-moving-forward to-the-wall nearer they-drove then indeed

rari milites, tamen audaces, monente cornu, ascenderunt super
few knights yet bold warning the-born climbed upon
eam, contra quos Saraceni nihilominus se defendendo
it against whom the-Saracens nonetheless themselves by-defending
faciebant, et ignem cum oleo et adipe vividum cum
acted and fire with oil and fat lively with
faculis aptatis praedictae turri et militibus, qui erant in
torches fitted at-the-aforesaid tower and the-knights who were in
ea, fundibulis suis iaculabantur. multis igitur utrorumque
it with-slings their hurled for-many therefore of-both
sic invicem certantium mors erat praesens et festina. ea
thus mutually contending death was present and swift on-that
quidem in parte, qua Raimundus comes et homines
indeed in the-part in-which Raymond the-count and the-men
eius adsistebant, scilicet in monte Sion, cum machinis suis
his stood-by namely on mount Zion with engines their
adsultum magnum dabant. ex alia vero parte, qua dux
assault great they-gave on the-other indeed side on-which the-duke
erat Godefridus et Robertus Normanniae comes, Robertus
was Godfrey and Robert of-Normandy the-count Robert
quoque Flandrensis, maior erat muro adsultus. illo die
also of-Flanders greater was to-the-wall the-assault on-that day
sic agitur. sequenti quoque die laborem eundem, facto
thus it-is-done on-the-following also day labor the-same made
bucinarum concrepitu, virilius inierunt, ita ut in uno loco
of-trumpets a-blaring more-manfully they-entered so that in one place
cum arietibus pulsando murum perforarent. pendebant nempe
with rams by-beating the-wall they-pierced hung indeed
ante muri propugnacula duo asseres, funibus illic adligati,
before of-the-wall the-battlements two beams by-ropes there tied
quos Saraceni sibi praeparaverant, ut inruentibus et
which the-Saracens for-themselves had-prepared that to-those-rushing and

lapides in eos iacientibus obstaculum eis utile fierent.
stones at them hurling an-obstacle to-them useful they-should-become
sed quod pro incremento sibi fecerant, idem ad
but what for advantage for-themselves they-had-made the-same for
detrimentum suum, Domino providente, postea exceperunt.
detriment their the-Lord providing afterward received
nam turri praefata muro admota rudentibusque, quibus
for the-tower aforesaid to-the-wall moved and-the-ropes by-which
ligna praedicta pendebant, falcibus sectis, de eisdem tignis
the-timbers aforesaid hung with-sickles cut from the-same beams
unum pontem sibi Franci coaptaverunt, quem de
one bridge for-themselves the-Franks fitted which from
turri super murum callide extensum iactaverunt. iamiamque
the-tower over the-wall cunningly stretched they-threw and-now-now
ardebat arx una in muro lapidea, supra quam machinatores
was-burning a-tower one on the-wall of-stone upon which engineers
nostri torres flammeos iniecerant, unde, foco paulatim inter
our brands flaming had-thrown whence the-fire little-by-little among
lignorum materiam nutrito, fumus flammaque sic prodire
of-timbers the-material nourished smoke and-flame so to-come-forth
coepit, ut nec unus quidem custodum civium ibi ulterius
began that not one even of-the-guards of-the-citizens there further
morari posset. mox igitur Francis hora meridiana urbem
to-stay could soon therefore the-Franks at-the-hour midday the-city
magnifice intrantibus, die quae Veneris habebatur, qua
magnificently entering on-the-day which of-Venus was-held on-which
Christus etiam in cruce totum mundum redemit, cornibus
Christ also on the-cross the-whole world redeemed the-horns
insonantibus, cunctis tumultuantibus, viriliter impetentibus,
sounding all tumultuous manfully assailing
Adjuva Deus exclamantibus, vexillum in muri fastigio statim
help O-God shouting the-banner on of-the-wall the-top at-once

elevantibus, pagani omnino exterriti, per vicorum angiportus
raising the-pagans wholly terrified through of-the-streets the-alleys
audaciam suam in fugam celerem commutaverunt omnes. qui
boldness their into flight swift changed all who
cum velociter fugerent, velocius fugati sunt. hoc nondum
when swiftly they-fled more-swiftly put-to-flight were this not-yet
comes Raimundus advertebat, qui ex altera urbis parte
count Raymond noticed who from the-other of-the-city side
cum gente sua fortiter adsiliebat, donec per muri apicem
with people his strongly was-assaulting until over of-the-wall the-top
Saracenos exsilire conspexerunt. quo viso, ad urbem laetissimi
the-Saracens leap-out they-saw which seen to the-city most-glad
quantocius cucurrerunt et cum aliis hostes nefarios
with-all-speed they-ran and with the-others the-enemies wicked
persequi et occidere non cessaverunt. tum quidem alii, tam
to-pursue and to-kill not they-ceased then indeed some as-well
Arabes quam Aethiopes, in arcem Daviticam fugientes
Arabs as Ethiopians into the-citadel of-David fleeing
se intromiserunt, alii vero in Templum Domini atque
themselves let-in others but into the-Temple of-the-Lord and
Salomonis se incluserunt, in quorum atriis impetus in
of-Solomon themselves shut-in in whose courts an-onslaught against
eos agebatur nimius: nusquam erat etiam locus, quo Saraceni
them was-made excessive nowhere was also a-place where the-Saracens
gladiatores evadere possent. supra Salomonis templum, quod
the-swordsmen to-escape could upon of-Solomon the-temple which
fugiendo ascenderant, multi eorum ad mortem sagittati
by-fleeing they-had-climbed many of-them to death shot-with-arrows
sunt et deorsum de tecto praecipitati, in quo etiam templo
were and down from the-roof thrown-headlong in which also temple
X milia fere decollati sunt. quod si inibi essetis, pedes
ten thousand almost beheaded were that if there you-had-been feet

vestri sanguine peremptorum usque ad bases tingerentur.
your with-the-blood of-the-slain all-the-way to the-ankles would-be-dyed
quid narrabo? nullus ex eis vitae est reservatus. sed neque
what shall-I-tell none of them for-life was kept but neither
feminis neque parvulis eorum pepercerunt.
the-women nor the-little-ones their they-spared

De spoliis quae Christiani ceperunt

XXVIII · THE SPOILS

The squires split the bellies of the dead for swallowed bezants and burn the corpses to find the gold in the ash. Tancred strips the Temple of the Lord of gold, silver, and gems, then restores them or their value. Verses tell how our people run through the city with drawn swords, sparing no one, and the dead lie strewn like apples and acorns falling from shaken boughs.

Mirabile autem quid videretis, cum scutigeri nostri atque
wondrous moreover what you-would-see when shield-bearers our and
pedites pauperiores, calliditate Saracenorum comperta, ventres
foot-soldiers poorer the-cunning of-the-Saracens discovered the-bellies
eorum iam mortuorum findebant, ut de intestinis eorum
of-them now dead split that from the-intestines their
bisantios excerperent, quos vivi faucibus diris transglutiverant.
bezants they-might-pick-out which living with-throats dire they-had-swallowed
quapropter post dies aliquot, acervo magno de cadaveribus
wherefore after days some a-heap great of corpses
facto et cinere tenus combusto, aurum memoratum in
made and to-ash as-far burned the-gold mentioned in
eodem cinere facilius reppererunt. Tancredus autem Templum
the-same ash more-easily they-found Tancred moreover the-Temple
dominicum festino cursu ingressus, multum auri et argenti
of-the-Lord with-swift course having-entered much of-gold and of-silver

lapidesque pretiosos adripuit. sed hoc restaurans, eadem
and-stones precious snatched but this restoring the-same
cuncta vel eis appretiata loco sacrosancto remisit,
all-things or for-them valued to-the-place most-holy he-sent-back
licet in eo nihil tunc deicum ageretur, cum Saraceni
although in it nothing then of-God was-done since the-Saracens
legem suam idolatriae superstitioso ritu exercerent, qui etiam
law their of-idolatry by-superstitious rite practiced who also
Christianum nullum in id ingredi sinebant.
Christian none into it to-enter allowed

Ensibus exemptis currit gens nostra per urbem;
with-swords drawn runs people our through the-city
Nec cuiquam parcunt etiam miserere precanti.
nor anyone they-spare even have-mercy begging
Vulgus erat stratum, veluti cum putrida motis
the-crowd was laid-low as when rotten shaken
Poma cadunt ramis, agitataque ilice glandes.
apples fall from-the-branches and-shaken from-the-oak acorns

De mansione Christianorum in urbe

XXIX · THE FRANKS SETTLE IN THE CITY

Each man keeps whatever house he enters first, and many poor become rich. Clerics and laymen visit the Sepulcher and the Temple with a new song, for the place where God, made man, was born, died, and rose is cleansed of the pagans and restored, a deed to be remembered to the end of the world.

Et post stragem tantam ingressi sunt domos civium,
and after slaughter so-great entered have the-houses of-the-citizens
rapientes quaecumque in eis reppererunt: ita sane, ut
seizing whatever in them they-found so surely that
quicumque primus domum introisset, sive dives sive pauper
whoever first a-house had-entered whether rich or poor
esset, nullatenus ab aliquo alio fieret iniuria, quin
he-was in-no-way by any other might-be-done wrong but-that
domum ipsam aut palatium et quodcumque in ea repperisset,
the-house itself or palace and whatever in it he-had-found
ac si omnino propria sibi adsumeret, haberet et
as if wholly his-own to-himself he-took he-should-have and
possideret. hoc itaque ius invicem tenendum stabilierant.
should-possess this and-so right mutually to-be-held they-had-established
unde multi inopes effecti sunt locupletes. tunc autem ad
whence many needy made were rich then moreover to
Sepulcrum Domini et Templum eius gloriosum euntes, clerici
the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord and Temple his glorious going clerics
simul et laici, exsultationis voce altisona canticum novum
together and laymen of-exultation with-voice high-sounding a-song new
Domino decantando, loca sacrosancta tamdiu desiderata,
to-the-Lord singing the-places most-holy so-long desired
cum oblationibus faciendis supplicationibusque humillimis,
with offerings to-be-made and-supplications most-humble

laetabundi omnes visitaverunt. o tempus tam desideratum!
rejoicing all visited O time so desired
o tempus inter cetera tempora memorandum! o factum
O time among other times to-be-remembered O deed
factis omnibus anteferendum! vere desideratum, quoniam ab
than-deeds all to-be-preferred truly desired since by
omnibus fidei catholicae cultoribus interno mentis desiderio
all of-the-faith catholic worshipers with-inner of-mind desire
semper desideratum fuerat, ut locus, in quo cunctarum
always desired it-had-been that the-place in which of-all
creaturarum creator munus salutiferae recreationis, Deus
creatures the-creator the-gift of-saving re-creation God
homo factus, humano generi pietate sua multiplici, nascendo,
man made to-the-human race by-pity his manifold by-being-born
moriendo resurgendoque contulit, a paganorum contagione
by-dying and-by-rising conferred from of-the-pagans the-contagion
inhabitantium quandoque mundatus, tamdiu superstitione
dwelling-there sometime cleansed so-long by-the-superstition
eorum contaminatus, ab in se credentibus et confidentibus
their defiled by in him those-believing and trusting
in modum pristinae dignitatis reformaretur. et vere memoriale
into the-mode of-former dignity should-be-restored and truly a-memorial
et iure memorandum, quia quaeque Dominus Deus noster
and by-right to-be-remembered because whatever the-Lord God our
Jesus Christus, in terra homo cum hominibus conversans,
Jesus Christ on earth a-man with men dwelling
egit et docuit, ad memoriam celeberrimam renovata et
did and taught to a-memory most-celebrated renewed and
reducta sunt orthodoxis. et quod idem Dominus per
brought-back were for-the-orthodox and what the-same Lord through
hunc populum suum tam, ut opinor, dilectum et alumnum
this people his so as I-think beloved and nursling

familiaremque, ad hoc negotium praeelectum, expleri voluit,
and-intimate for this business chosen-beforehand to-be-fulfilled wished
usque in finem saeculi memoriale linguis tribuum
all-the-way to the-end of-the-world a-memorial in-the-tongues of-the-tribes
universarum personabit et permanebit.
all shall-resound and shall-remain

De rege et patriarcha in urbe procreatis, et de inventione dominicae crucis

XXX · THE PRINCE, THE PATRIARCH, AND THE CROSS

Verses date the capture to July 15, 1099. Godfrey is chosen prince for his nobility, prowess, and patience; canons are placed in the Sepulcher church and the Temple, and the patriarch is left for the pope to approve. The garrison of David's tower is let go to Ascalon, and a fragment of the true cross, hidden by a Syrian, is found and carried in procession.

Anno milleno centeno quominus uno
in-the-year thousandth hundredth less one
Virginis a partu Domini qui claruit ortu,
of-the-Virgin from the-bearing of-the-Lord who shone by-birth
Quindecies Iulio iam Phoebi lumine tacto,
fifteen-times July now of-Phoebus by-the-light touched
Iherusalem Franci capiunt virtute potenti,
Jerusalem the-Franks take with-power mighty
Quippe Godefrido patriae mox principe facto.
indeed Godfrey of-the-fatherland soon prince made

Quem ob nobilitatis excellentiam et militiae probitatem atque
whom for of-nobility the-excellence and of-soldiership the-prowess and
patientiae modestiam, necnon et morum elegantiam in urbe
of-patience the-moderation and-also and of-manners the-elegance in the-city
sancta regni principem omnis populus dominici exercitus
holy of-the-kingdom prince all the-people of-the-Lord's army
ad illud conservandum atque regendum elegit. tunc etiam locati
for it to-be-kept and to-be-ruled chose then also placed
sunt in ecclesia dominici Sepulcri canonici, atque in Templo
were in the-church of-the-Lord's Sepulcher canons and in the-Temple
eiusdem ipsi servituri. patriarcham autem tunc decreverunt
of-the-same they to-serve a-patriarch moreover then they-decreed
nondum ibi fieri, donec a Romano papa quaesissent,
not-yet there to-be-made until from the-Roman pope they-had-asked
quem ipse laudaret praefici. interea Turci et Arabes, nigri
whom he-himself would-approve to-be-set-over meanwhile Turks and Arabs black
quoque Aethiopes, quingenti fere, qui in arcem Daviticam
also Ethiopians five-hundred almost who into the-citadel of-David
se intromiserant, petierunt a Raimundo comite, qui
themselves had-let-in sought from Raymond the-count who
prope turrim illam hospitatus erat, ut pecunia eorum in
near tower that lodged had that money their in
arce ipsa retenta, vivos tantum eos abire permitteret. hoc
the-citadel itself retained alive only them to-go-away he-should-allow this
concessit, et hinc Ascalonem adierunt. placuit tunc Deo,
he-granted and hence Ascalon they-approached it-pleased then God
quod inventa est particula una crucis dominicae in loco
that found was a-fragment one of-the-cross of-the-Lord in a-place
secreto, iam ab antiquo tempore a viris religiosis occultata,
secret now from ancient time by men religious hidden
nunc autem a quodam homine Syro, Deo volente, revelata,
now moreover by a-certain man Syrian God willing revealed

quam cum patre suo inde conscio diligenter ibi et absconderat
which with father his thereof aware diligently there both had-hidden
et conservarat. quam quidem particulam in modum crucis
and had-kept which indeed fragment in the-manner of-a-cross
reformatam, aurea partim et argentea fabrica contectam,
remade with-golden partly and silver workmanship covered
ad dominicum Sepulcrum, dehinc etiam ad Templum
to the-Lord's Sepulcher thereafter also to the-Temple
congratulanter psallendo et gratias Deo agendo, qui per
rejoicing by-singing-psalms and thanks to-God by-giving who for
tot dies hunc thesaurum suum et nostrum sibi et nobis
so-many days this treasure his and ours for-himself and for-us
servaverat, omnes una in sublime propalatam detulerunt.
had-kept all together on high displayed carried

De adventu et expugnatione paganorum et victoria Christianorum

XXXI · THE BATTLE OF ASCALON

The king of Babylon's general al-Afdal marches against them, and the Franks go out with the cross. Their captured herds march beside them, so that the pagans take them for an army. The Saracens try to surround the rear, but the Franks charge, and the Saracens flee to Ascalon, leaving tents full of gold and the twelve precious stones. The Franks burn what they cannot carry.

Rex autem Babylonis et dux militiae ejus, nomine
the-king moreover of-Babylon and the-leader of-the-army his by-name
Lavedalius, cum audissent, quod Franci iam terras sibi
al-Afdal when they-had-heard that the-Franks now lands to-themselves
subdendo Babylonico regno appropinquassent, congregata
by-subjecting to-the-Babylonian kingdom had-drawn-near gathered

multitudine sub edicto de Turcis et Arabibus Aethiopibusque,
a-multitude under edict of Turks and Arabs and-Ethiopians
contra eos ire proeliatum festinaverunt. et cum iterum
against them to-go to-battle hastened and when again
per internuntios audissent Iherusalem tam ferociter iam
through go-betweens they-had-heard Jerusalem so fiercely now
fuisse captam, indignatus dux ille praedictus Babylonius
to-have-been taken indignant the-leader that aforesaid Babylonian
festinavit, ut vel proelium cum ipsis committeret vel eos
hastened that either battle with them he-might-join or them
in eadem urbe inclusos obsideret. quod cum Francis
in the-same city shut-in he-might-besiege which when to-the-Franks
intimaretur, adsumpto magnae audacitatis consilio, versus
was-made-known taken of-great boldness counsel toward
Ascalonem contra tyrannos illos acies suas direxerunt:
Ascalon against tyrants those battle-lines their they-directed
portantes secum lignum salutiferae crucis iam superius
carrying with-them the-wood of-the-saving cross already above
memoratum. cumque die quodam non longe ab Ascalone
mentioned and-when on-day a-certain not far from Ascalon
circumvagantes proelium Franci exspectarent, invenerunt
wandering-about battle the-Franks were-awaiting they-found
illic non minimam praedam de bobus et camelis, ovibus
there not the-least plunder of oxen and camels sheep
et capris. quam carram cum iuxta tentoria sole ruente
and goats which booty when beside the-tents the-sun setting
congregassent, iusserunt sub edicto principes nostri nunquam
they-had-gathered ordered under edict princes our never
in crastino, quo bellum fore putabant, secum minari, ut
on the-morrow on-which battle to-be they-thought with-themselves to-drive that
ab omni sarcina expediti ad proeliandum essent prompti.
from every pack freed for fighting they-might-be ready

mane autem facto, speculatoribus praemissis, paganos
in-the-morning moreover made scouts sent-ahead the-pagans
accedere didicerunt. quo scito, mox tribuni et centuriones
to-approach they-learned which known soon the-tribunes and centurions
per alas et cuneos gente sua constituta, proelium agendum
in wings and wedges people their drawn-up the-battle to-be-done
prudentissime ordinaverunt et contra hostes vexillis levatis
most-prudently ordered and against the-enemies with-banners raised
audacter processerunt. videretis praedictam praedam tamquam
boldly advanced you-would-see the-aforesaid plunder as-if
monitu ducentium a dextra et laeva parte acierum
by-the-warning of-those-leading on the-right and left side of-the-battle-lines
gressum suum recte agere, licet a nemine minaretur:
step its rightly keep although by no-one it-was-driven
ita ut multi paganorum eam a longe cum militibus
so that many of-the-pagans it from far-off with knights
nostris euntem spectantes, totum aestimarent esse Francorum
our going watching the-whole thought to-be of-the-Franks
exercitum. illi autem, populus innumerus, cum ad cuneos
the-army they moreover the-people countless when to wedges
nostros iam appropinquassent, tamquam cervus ramos
our now they-had-drawn-near like a-stag the-branches
cornuum praetendens, cuneo suo anteriori facto bifurco,
of-horns stretching-forth with-wedge its front made forked
distensione Arabum praecurrentium explicata, machinati sunt
with-the-spreading of-the-Arabs running-ahead unfolded contrived have
accingere postremos: ubi dux Godefridus subsequenter cum
to-surround the-rearmost where duke Godfrey following with
agmine denso militum armatorum remigrando postremam
a-column dense of-knights armed by-moving-back the-rear
aciem sollicitabat. ceteri enim proceres, alii in prima, alii
battle-line was-tending the-other for nobles some in the-first others

in secunda acie praeibant. sed cum ab utraque parte
in the-second battle-line went-before but when from each side
hostes hostibus quantum iactus est lapidis vel paulo plus
foes to-foes as-far-as the-cast is of-a-stone or a-little more
appropinquassent, ilico pedites nostri sagittas in illos
had-drawn-near at-once the-foot-soldiers our arrows at them
distendentes iecerunt. congruentissime mox secutae sunt
stretching shot most-fittingly soon followed have
sagittas lanceae, dum equites nostri, tamquam iureiurando
the-arrows the-lances while knights our as-if by-oath
omnes invicem confirmassent, impetu vehementi inruerunt
all mutually they-had-confirmed with-onslaught vehement rushed
in eos, et quorum quadrupedes tunc non fuerunt cursui
upon them and whose four-footed-beasts then not were for-running
celeres, continuo neci subversi sunt supra sessores, ubi
swift at-once to-death overthrown were upon their-riders where
parvae horae spatio multa corpora palluerunt exanimata. tunc
in-a-small hour's space many bodies grew-pale lifeless then
multi eorum metuentes, ascendebant arborum cacumina; qui
many of-them fearing climbed of-trees the-tops who
tamen inibi sagittati et morti laesi ad terram infeliciter
yet there shot-with-arrows and to-death hurt to the-earth unhappily
corruebant. incursu in eos penetrabili undique Saraceni
fell by-the-onrush upon them penetrating on-all-sides the-Saracens
perimebantur. tentoriis transactis, usque Ascalonis moenia
were-slain the-tents passed up-to of-Ascalon the-walls
qui evaserunt fugati sunt. quae civitas DCCis et
who escaped put-to-flight were which city by-seven-hundred and
XX stadiorum spatiis ab Iherosolyma distat. in prima
twenty of-stades spaces from Jerusalem is-distant in the-first
quidem acie dux eorum Lavedalius, licet antea
indeed battle-line the-leader their al-Afdal although before

Francos vilipendisset, non lente fugiens dorsum vertit, quibus
the-Franks he-had-disparaged not slowly fleeing his-back turned to-whom
tabernaculum suum cum ceteris extensum et pecunia
tent his with the-others stretched and with-money
multa munitum invitus reliquit. quorsum Franci regressi,
much furnished unwilling he-left whither the-Franks returned
victoria iucundi, Domino grates dando sunt regregati. tunc
in-victory joyful to-the-Lord thanks giving were regathered then
ingressi sunt tabernacula eorum et invenerunt in eis
entered have the-tents their and found in them
gazas multas, aurum, argentum, pallia, induvias, lapides
treasures many gold silver cloaks garments stones
pretiosos, qui duodecim sic nominantur: iaspis, sapphirus,
precious which twelve thus are-named jasper sapphire
chalcedonius, smaragdus, sardonix, sardius, chrysolithus,
chalcedony emerald sardonyx sardius chrysolite
beryllus, topazius, chrysoprasus, hyacinthus, amethystus.
beryl topaz chrysoprase jacinth amethyst
reppererunt etiam vasa et utensilia multiformia: galeros
they-found also vessels and utensils many-shaped helmets
auratos, anulos optimos, enses mirabiles, annonam, farinam,
gilded rings most-excellent swords wondrous grain flour
ceteraque multa. ea vero nocte illic hospitati sunt et
and-other many-things that indeed night there lodged have and
pervigiles bene se conservaverunt. nam die sequenti
wakeful well themselves kept for on-the-day following
putabant bellum a Saracenis reiterari, qui tamen timore valde
they-thought battle by the-Saracens to-be-renewed who yet by-fear greatly
perterriti nocte ipsa omnes aufugerunt. quo mane per
terrified on-night that-very all fled which in-the-morning by
exploratores comperto, vocibus laudifluis Deum benedixerunt
scouts learned with-voices praise-flowing God they-blessed

et glorificaverunt, qui tot milia perfidorum raro
and glorified who so-many thousands of-the-faithless by-a-thin
exercitu Christianorum dissipari permisit. Benedictus ergo
army of-Christians to-be-scattered permitted blessed therefore
Deus, qui non dedit nos in captionem dentibus eorum! beata
God who not gave us into capture to-the-teeth their blessed
enim gens, cuius est Dominus Deus eius! nonne minati
for the-people whose is the-Lord God his not threatened
fuerant ipsi Babylonii, dicentes: eamus et capiamus
had they-themselves the-Babylonians saying let-us-go and let-us-take
Iherusalem cum Francis in ea clausis! quibus omnibus
Jerusalem with the-Franks in it shut-in whom all
interemptis, eradamus illud Sepulcrum tam sibi pretiosum
killed let-us-raze that Sepulcher so to-them precious
et lapides ipsius aedificii extra urbem eiectos, nec mentio
and the-stones of-that-very building outside the-city thrown nor mention
ulterius umquam inde fiet! sed Deo miserante hoc
further ever thereof shall-be-made but God having-mercy this
in nihilum reverso, de pecunia etiam illorum oneraverunt
to nothing turned with the-money also of-them loaded
Franci equos eorundem et camelos. qui cum tentoria et
the-Franks the-horses of-the-same and camels who since the-tents and
tot iacula in campis iacentia arcusque et sagittas ad
so-many javelins in the-fields lying and-bows and arrows to
urbem sanctam deferre non possent, haec cuncta incendio
the-city holy to-carry not they-could these-things all to-fire
commiserunt, deinde Iherusalem gaudenter redierunt.
committed then to-Jerusalem gladly they-returned

De reversione principum ad patriam

XXXII · SOME PRINCES GO HOME

Some wash in the Jordan and gather palms at Jericho; the two Roberts sail for home by Constantinople, and Raymond goes to Latakia and Constantinople. Godfrey keeps Tancred with him and rules the principality of Jerusalem by common consent.

His gestis, placuit quibusdam in patriam nationis suae
these done it-pleased some into the-fatherland of-nation their
reverti. et cum in Iordane flumine indilate loti fuissent
to-return and when in the-Jordan river without-delay washed they-had-been
et palmarum ramos apud Iericho in horto Abrahae dicto
and of-palms branches at Jericho in the-garden of-Abraham called
collegissent, Robertus, Normannorum comes, et Robertus,
had-gathered Robert of-the-Normans count and Robert
comes Flandriae, Constantinopolim navigio appetierunt, deinde
count of-Flanders Constantinople by-ship sought then
Franciam ad propria remeaverunt. Raimundus vero usque
France to their-own returned Raymond but up-to
Laodiciam Syriae regressus est, exin Constantinopolim, relicta
Latakia of-Syria returned has thence to-Constantinople left
uxore sua in Laodicia, rediturus. dux autem Godefridus,
wife his in Latakia about-to-return the-duke moreover Godfrey
retento sibi Tancredo, et aliis pluribus, principatum
kept to-himself Tancred and others many the-principate
Iherosolymitanum rexit: quem consensu omnium susceperat
of-Jerusalem ruled which by-the-consent of-all he-had-received
obtinendum.
to-be-held

De Boamundo et Balduino et eorum peregrinatione

XXXIII · BOHEMOND AND BALDWIN'S PILGRIMAGE

Bohemond and Baldwin, who stayed to guard Antioch and Edessa, rejoice at the news; after routing Turks, Baldwin joins Bohemond and Archbishop Daimbert of Pisa, twenty-five thousand in all. They starve, chewing sugar cane, and freeze in the rains, and at last reach Jerusalem, keep Christmas at Bethlehem, see Daimbert made patriarch, and go down to the Jordan. Verses mark Urban's death.

Cum autem audissent domnus Boamundus, qui Antiochiae
when moreover had-heard lord Bohemond who at-Antioch
tunc principabatur, vir prudens et strenuus, et domnus
then was-prince a-man prudent and vigorous and lord
Balduinus, praefati Godefridi frater, qui similiter Edessae
Baldwin of-the-aforesaid Godfrey the-brother who likewise of-Edessa
civitatis patriaeque adfinis trans fluvium Euphraten
the-city and-of-the-country neighboring beyond the-river Euphrates
dominabatur, Iherusalem ab illis qui praeiverant collegis suis
ruled Jerusalem by those who had-gone-before colleagues their
captam fuisse, laetissimi effecti Deo laudes exsolverunt inde
taken to-have-been most-glad made to-God praises they-paid thence
supplices. quod si illi, qui festinatione itineris praecesserant
suppliant that if they who by-the-haste of-the-journey had-gone-before
eos, bene et utiliter operati fuissent, quamvis eos tardius
them well and usefully worked had although them later
subsecuturi essent, hi duo cum suis participes tamen
about-to-follow they-were these two with their-men partakers yet
eiusdem fore bravii non est dubitandum. erat enim necesse,
of-the-same to-be prize not it-is to-be-doubted it-was for necessary
ut terra et civitates cum tanto labore iam Turcis ablatae
that the-land and cities with so-great labor now from-the-Turks taken-away

sollerter custodirentur, ne forte terra incaute derelicta, si
skillfully should-be-guarded lest perhaps the-land incautiously abandoned if
cuncti Iherusalem tunc abissent, recursu repentino a Turcis
all to-Jerusalem then had-gone-away by-a-return sudden by the-Turks
usque Persidam iam repulsis resumeretur: unde damnum
up-to Persia now driven-back be-taken-back whence loss
Francis non minimum cunctis contingeret evenisse,
to-the-Franks not the-least to-all would-befall to-have-happened
tam euntibus quam redeuntibus. Forsitan divina providentia
as-well to-those-going as to-those-returning perhaps divine providence
distulit eos, plus in peragendis quam in peractis negotiis
deferred them more in to-be-done than in done business
iudicans eos profuturos. o quotiens interim ipse Balduinus
judging them about-to-be-useful O how-often meanwhile himself Baldwin
in Mesopotamiae finibus proeliis contra Turcos factis fatigatus
in of-Mesopotamia the-borders in-battles against the-Turks made wearied
est! quotque capita eorum caesa illic fuissent, recitari
was and-how-many heads of-them cut-off there had-been to-be-recounted
non potest. saepe contigit illum cum gente sua pauca contra
not can often it-happened him with people his few against
multitudinem eorum magnam proeliari et Deo iuvante
the-multitude of-them great to-fight and God helping
triumpho laetari. sed cum per legationes eum Boamundus
in-triumph to-rejoice but when through embassies him Bohemond
praemonuisset, ut Iherusalem ambo cum suis iter
had-forewarned that to-Jerusalem both with their-men the-journey
nondum expletum ituri perficerent, Balduinus ilico res
not-yet completed about-to-go should-accomplish Baldwin at-once affairs
suas opportune disponens, se iturum praeparavit. sed tunc
his opportunely arranging himself about-to-go prepared but then
audiens Turcos unum cornu patriae suae ingressione pervadi,
hearing the-Turks one horn of-country his by-invasion to-be-overrun

incepto dimisso, cum necdum exercitulum suum congregasset,
the-begun given-up when not-yet little-army his he-had-gathered
cum paucis hostes adiit. qui cum arbitrati essent iam eum
with few the-enemies approached who when thought they-had now him
iter suum incepisse, die quadam cum in tabernaculis suis
journey his to-have-begun on-day a-certain when in tents their
securi essent, viso signo albo, quod baiulabat Balduinus,
secure they-were seen the-standard white which carried Baldwin
quantocius pavefacti fugerunt. quos cum parum cum paucis
with-all-speed terrified fled whom when a-little with few
fugasset, ad id, quod prius inceperat, rediit. et
he-had-put-to-flight to that which before he-had-begun he-returned and
ingressus iter, Antiochia dexterata, venit Laodiciam, ubi
having-entered the-journey Antioch on-the-right came to-Latakia where
stipendio viatico empto et clitellis reformatis abivimus.
provisions for-the-road bought and packs refitted we-went-away
mensis November erat. cumque Gibellum transissemus,
the-month November was and-when Jabala we-had-passed
Boamundum in tentoriis suis hospitatum ante oppidum
Bohemond in tents his lodged before a-town
quoddam, Valenium nominatum, adsecuti sumus. erat cum
certain Valania named overtook we-have there-was with
eo archiepiscopus quidam Pisanus, nomine Daibertus, qui
him an-archbishop certain of-Pisa by-name Daimbert who
cum quibusdam Tuscanis et Italis Laodiciae portui navigans
with certain Tuscans and Italians at-Latakia's port sailing
applicuerat, et ibi nos exspectabant, nobiscum ituri.
had-landed and there us were-awaiting with-us about-to-go
aderatque quidam episcopus de Apulia. cum domno
and-there-was-present a-certain bishop from Apulia with lord
Balduino erat tertius. quibus ita amicabiliter glomeratis,
Baldwin was a-third who so amicably massed

aestimati sumus numero XXV milia utriusque sexus tam
reckoned we-were in-number twenty-five thousand of-both sex as-well
peditum quam equitum. et cum fines Saracenorum
of-foot-soldiers as of-horsemen and when the-borders of-the-Saracens
interiores introissemus et ab incolis regionis nobis satis
inner we-had-entered and from the-inhabitants of-the-region to-us quite
infestis nec panem nec aliquid edulii habere possemus,
hostile neither bread nor anything of-food to-have we-could
quia nec erat qui daret vel qui venderet, stipendio
because neither was there-one-who would-give or who would-sell provisions
quidem nostro magis magisque consumpto, contigit multos
indeed our more and-more consumed it-happened many
fame anxiari. equi quoque et iumenta, deficiente
with-hunger to-be-distressed horses also and beasts-of-burden failing
annona, dolore geminato nimis angebantur. ibant nec
the-fodder with-pain doubled very-much were-tormented they-went nor
manducabant. tunc autem erant in ipsis agris cultis, per
ate then moreover there-were in those-very fields tilled through
quos euntes transibamus, messes quaedam, quas vulgus
which going we-passed crops certain which the-common-people
vocat cannamelles, harundinibus fere similes. a canna et
call cannamelles to-reeds almost like from cane and
melle nomen compositum, unde et mel silvestre, ut puto,
honey the-name compounded whence also honey wild as I-think
dicitur, quod de his sapienter conficitur. has quidem famelici
is-called which from these wisely is-made these indeed famished
propter mellitum saporem tota die dentibus nostris
on-account-of the-honeyed taste the-whole day with-teeth our
ruminabamus, parum tamen proficiendo. utique pro amore
we-chewed little yet achieving surely for the-love
Dei haec et alia multa, famem scilicet, frigora, pluvias
of-God these and other many-things hunger namely colds rains

nimias sustinebamus. plerique etiam equos, asinos, camelosque,
excessive we-endured very-many also horses asses and-camels
panis egentes manducabant. insuper algore nimio et imbrium
of-bread lacking ate besides by-cold excessive and of-rains
adfluentia saepissime torquebamur, nec erat tantum solis
by-the-abundance very-often we-were-tormented nor was so-great of-the-sun
aestus, quo pannos nostros madefactos exsiccare possemus,
the-heat by-which clothes our soaked to-dry we-could
cum imbrium continuatio vel per IV vel per V dies
since of-rains the-continuance either for four or for five days
nos vexaret. vidi tunc plures tabernaculis carentes imbrium
us harassed I-saw then many tents lacking of-the-rains
algore exstingui. ego Fulcherus Carnotensis, qui his
by-the-cold to-be-extinguished I Fulcher of-Chartres who at-these
intereram, vidi quadam die plures utriusque sexus, bestiasque
was-present saw on-a-certain day many of-both sex and-beasts
quamplurimas hac pluvia mori algidissima. longum est
very-many by-this rain to-die most-cold long it-is
recitandum et audiendi forsan taedium, quia nulla anxietas,
to-be-recounted and of-hearing perhaps a-weariness because no anxiety
nullus dolor defuit populo Dei. saepe a Saracenis in
no pain was-lacking to-the-people of-God often by Saracens on
via insidiantibus circa meatus artos plures occidebantur,
the-road lying-in-wait around passes narrow many were-killed
aut cum raptum irent pro victualibus quaerendis. videretis
or when to-plunder they-went for provisions to-be-sought you-would-see
milites nobiles, equis quoquomodo amissis, pedites effici.
knights noble their-horses somehow lost foot-soldiers to-be-made
videretis, iumentis deficientibus, capras Saracenis
you-would-see the-beasts-of-burden failing goats from-the-Saracens
ablatas, vervecesque superpositis sarcinis valde fatigari et
taken and-wethers put-upon with-packs greatly to-be-wearied and

dorsa eorum mole illius sarcinae corrumpi. bis in hac
the-backs their by-the-mass of-that pack to-be-broken twice on this
via, non amplius, panem et annonam commercio carissimo,
road not more bread and grain by-trade most-dear
scilicet a Tripolitanis et Caesariensibus, habuimus. patet
namely from the-Tripolitans and Caesareans we-had it-is-plain
ergo quoniam vix poterit quis magnum aliquod nisi
therefore that scarcely shall-be-able anyone great anything except
cum magno labore adquirere. magnum quiddam fuit, cum
with great labor to-acquire a-great thing it-was when
usque Iherusalem pervenerimus. qua visitata, consummatus est
up-to Jerusalem we-came which visited completed was
labor diuturnus. cumque Sanctorum Sancta desideratissima
the-labor long and-when of-Holies the-Holy most-desired
inspiceremus, ingenti gaudio repleti sumus. o quotiens ad
we-beheld with-huge joy filled we-were O how-often to
memoriam reducebamus illam Daviticam prophetiam qua
memory we-brought-back that of-David prophecy by-which
dicit: adorabimus in loco, ubi steterunt pedes eius! quod
he-says we-shall-worship in the-place where stood the-feet his which
nimirum in nobis tunc impleri vidimus, quamvis aliis
doubtless in us then to-be-fulfilled we-saw although to-others
multis similiter pertineat. illuc quidem ascendimus tribus,
many likewise it-may-pertain thither indeed we-went-up the-tribes
tribus Domini, ad confitendum nomini sancto eius. die
the-tribes of-the-Lord to confess to-the-name holy his on-the-day
illo, quo Iherusalem tunc introivimus, sol retrogradus,
that on-which Jerusalem then we-entered the-sun going-back
descensu hiemali peracto, recursum resumpsit ascensibilem.
the-descent wintry completed its-return took-up ascending
cumque Sepulcrum dominicum atque Templum eius gloriosum
and-when the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord and the-Temple his glorious

et cetera loca sancta visitassemus, die IV° Bethleem
and the-other places holy we-had-visited on-the-day fourth to-Bethlehem
adivimus, ut nocte ipsa dominicae Nativitatis revolutionem
we-went that on-the-night itself of-the-Lord's Nativity the-revolution
celebraturi annuam, praesaepio, ubi Iesum Maria venerabilis
about-to-celebrate annual at-the-manger where Jesus Mary the-venerable
mater reclinavit, praesentialiter pervigiles in orationibus
mother laid present wakeful in prayers
adsisteremus. quam noctem cum obsequio condecenti expleto,
we-might-stand-by which night with service fitting completed
hora diei III^a^, missa quoque III^a^ celebrata, Iherusalem
at-the-hour of-the-day third the-mass also third celebrated to-Jerusalem
remeavimus. o quantus tunc erat fetor circa muros civitatis,
we-returned O how-great then was the-stench around the-walls of-the-city
intus et extra, de cadaveribus Saracenorum adhuc ibi
within and without from the-corpses of-the-Saracens still there
marcentium, quos urbe capta collegae nostri trucidaverunt,
rotting whom the-city taken colleagues our had-slaughtered
ubicumque eos adsecuti fuerant! cum autem et nos et
wherever them overtaken they-had when moreover both we and
iumenta nostra quiete necessaria aliquantisper vegetati
beasts-of-burden our with-rest necessary for-a-while refreshed
essemus et patriarcham in ecclesia S. Sepulcri tam
had-been and a-patriarch in the-church of-the-Holy Sepulcher as-well
dux quam ceteri optimates praefecissent, scilicet dominum
the-duke as the-other chief-men had-set-over namely lord
Daibertum superius memoratum, redintegrato stipendio et
Daimbert above mentioned restored the-provisions and
iumentis nostris oneratis, regredientes descendimus ad
beasts-of-burden our loaded returning we-went-down to
flumen Iordanicum. tunc placuit quibusdam de exercitu
the-river Jordan then it-pleased some of the-army

posteriore in Iherusalem remanere et quibusdam de
later *in* *Jerusalem* *to-remain* *and* *some* *of*
priore nobiscum remeare. dux autem, sicut prius terram
the-earlier *with-us* *to-return* *the-duke* *moreover* *as* *before* *the-land*
Iherosolymitanam strenue rexit.
of-Jerusalem *vigorously* *ruled*

Idibus in ternis Augusti tunc satis aegris
on-the-Ides *on* *the-third* *of-August* *then* *enough* *sick*
Corruit Urbanus praesul Romae venerandus.
fell *Urban* *the-prelate* *of-Rome* *venerable*

De reversione ducis Boamundi et comitis Balduini ad propria

XXXIV · THE RETURN OF BOHEMOND AND BALDWIN

On New Year's Day 1100 they cut palms at Jericho and go home by Tiberias and Paneas, where Fulcher reckons the Jordan rises from springs named Jor and Dan. They pass Baalbek, which he takes for Solomon's Tadmor. Four hundred Turks of Damascus attack, but Baldwin guards the rear and the rain has spoiled their bows; they reach Latakia and hurry on to Edessa.

Anno ab Incarnatione dominica MºCº, die anni
in-the-year *from* *the-Incarnation* *of-the-Lord* *the-1100th* *on-the-day* *of-the-year*
prima, in Iericho ramis palmarum caesis ad deferendum, ut
first *at* *Jericho* *branches* *of-palms* *cut* *for* *carrying* *as*
mos est, omnes adsumpsimus et secunda die iter
the-custom *is* *all* *we-took* *and* *on-the-second* *day* *the-journey*
remeabile cepimus. placuit principibus nostris per urbem
of-return *we-took* *it-pleased* *princes* *our* *through* *the-city*
Tiberiadem iuxta mare transire. quod mare de dulci aqua
Tiberias *beside* *the-sea* *to-pass* *which* *sea* *of* *sweet* *water*

congregatum XVIII milibus passuum habet in longum et
gathered eighteen thousand of-paces has in length and
V in latum. deinde per Caesaream Philippi, quae Paneas
five in breadth then through Caesarea of-Philip which Paneas
lingua Syriaca dicitur, ad Libani montis radicem sitam,
in-the-tongue Syriac is-called at of-Lebanon the-mount the-root situated
ubi fontes duo emergunt, unde Jordanis fluvius exoritur, qui
where springs two emerge whence the-Jordan river rises which
postea mare Galilaeae secans in mare Mortuum se ingerit.
afterward the-sea of-Galilee cutting into the-sea Dead itself pours
hic autem lacus, Genesar dictus, XL stadiis in latitudine
this moreover the-lake Gennesaret called forty stades in breadth
Cque in longitudine, iuxta Iosephum. quod flumen
and-a-hundred in length according-to Josephus which river
deinde per alveum unum percurrens ingerit se in mare,
then through bed one running pours itself into the-sea
quod Mortuum dicitur, eo quod nihil gignat vivum,
which Dead is-called for-the-reason that nothing it-bears living
qui lacus Asphaltites dictus sine fundo esse creditur, in
which lake Asphaltites called without bottom to-be is-believed into
abyssum civitatibus ibi subversis, Sodoma scilicet et Gomorra.
the-abyss the-cities there overturned Sodom namely and Gomorrah
ego autem callidius de fontibus his coniectabam, imitans
I moreover more-cunningly about springs these conjectured imitating
beatum Hieronymum, quem legi in expositione eius super
blessed Jerome whom I-read in the-exposition his upon
Amos prophetam, quod Dan in terminis terrae Iudaicae sit,
Amos the-prophet that Dan in the-bounds of-the-land Judaean is
ubi nunc est Paneas, et quia tribus Dan illic aedificavit
where now is Paneas and because the-tribe of-Dan there built
civitatem, quam nomine patris sui vocaverunt Dan. hac de
a-city which by-the-name of-father their they-called Dan this for

causa sentio fontem illum vocari Dan et alterum Ior, qui
reason I-think spring that to-be-called Dan and the-other Jor which
huic adiungitur. venimus autem ad urbem fortissimam,
to-this-one is-joined we-came moreover to a-city most-strong
quam Balbec nuncupant, a Salomone conditam, muris
which Baalbek they-call by Solomon founded with-walls
eminentibus circumtectam et Thadomor ab eo appellatam,
lofty surrounded and Tadmor by him called
duorum dierum itinere a superiore Syria distantem et
by-two days' journey from upper Syria distant and
a maxima Babylone VI mansionibus procul distantem, ab
from very-great Babylon six stations far distant from
Euphrate vero diei unius. hanc Graeci Palmyram vocant.
the-Euphrates indeed of-a-day one this the-Greeks Palmyra call
illo in loco fontes et putei nimis abundant. nam in inferiori
that in the-place springs and wells very abound for in the-lower
terra nusquam aqua invenitur. ubi Turci Damasceni nobis
land nowhere water is-found where the-Turks of-Damascus to-us
obvii venerunt CCCC ferme milites. et quia didicerant
to-meet came four-hundred about knights and because they-had-learned
nos esse inermes et laboris causa valde fessos, arbitrati sunt
us to-be unarmed and from-labor by-reason very weary thought have
nos quoquomodo debilitare. quod si forte postremos die illo
us in-some-way to-weaken which if perhaps the-last on-day that
domnus Balduinus sollicite et caute non conservaret, multos
lord Baldwin carefully and warily not had-kept many
de nostris occiderent. inundatione enim pluviarum et
of ours they-would-have-killed by-the-flood for of-rains both
arcus et sagittae defecerant eis, quia cum glutine in locis
the-bows and the-arrows had-failed them because with glue in places
illis adaptantur. Boamundus quippe in primo cuneo praeibat.
those they-are-fitted Bohemond indeed in the-first wedge went-before

itaque Deo auxiliante nihil apud nos lucrati sunt. tunc castra
and-so God helping nothing from us gained have then camp
nostra metati sumus ante oppidum praedictum. sequenti
our measured-out we-have before the-town aforesaid on-the-following
vero die plus mari adpropiantes, ante urbem Tortosam
indeed day more to-the-sea drawing-near before the-city Tortosa
et Laodiciam transivimus. ibi quoque Raimundum comitem
and Latakia we-passed there also Raymond the-count
repperimus, quem illic reliqueramus. et quia cara erat annona,
we-found whom there we-had-left and because dear was the-grain
nihil ibi ad emendum invenimus, unde vivere possemus.
nothing there for buying we-found whence to-live we-could
quapropter usque Edessam properare non cessavimus.
wherefore up-to Edessa to-hasten not we-ceased

De captione ducis Boamundi

XXXV · THE CAPTURE OF BOHEMOND

Bohemond rules Antioch six months, then rides to Melitene, which Gabriel has promised him, and is ambushed by the emir Danishmend, who scatters his men and carries him off captive. Bohemond sends a lock of his hair to Baldwin, who comes with Franks from Edessa and Antioch; Danishmend retreats, Gabriel yields Melitene to Baldwin, and the Antiochenes go home mourning.

Boamundus igitur Antiochiam primitus advenit, ubi a suis
Bohemond therefore to-Antioch first came where by his-men
gaudenter est susceptus. deinceps regnum suum per VI
gladly was received thereafter kingdom his for six
menses ut prius obtinuit. sed cum Iulio mense sequente
months as before he-held but when in-July the-month following
urbem Melitiniam vocatam cum pauca gente appeteret (quam
the-city Melitene called with few people he-sought which

ei qui urbis eiusdem patronus erat, Gabriel nomine,
to-him he-who of-the-city the-same patron was Gabriel by-name
redditurus erat, iam per legationes amicitiae mutuae
about-to-surrender was now through embassies of-friendship mutual
conventione facta), obvius illi fuit admiratus quidam, nomine
a-covenant made to-meet him came an-emir certain by-name
Danisman, cum gente Turcorum magna, moliens Boamundum
Danishmend with people of-Turks great striving Bohemond
imprudenter sic ambulantem intercipere. et non longe ab
imprudently so walking to-intercept and not far from
urbe praefata insiluerunt in eum undique gens illa nefaria,
the-city aforesaid leapt upon him from-all-sides people that wicked
quae in insidiis latitabat. et non audentes nostri proeliari,
which in ambush lay-hidden and not daring our-men to-fight
quia pauci erant, statim fugientes in dispersionem fugati
because few they-were at-once fleeing into dispersion put-to-flight
sunt, de quibus Turci multos occiderunt et pecuniam
were of whom the-Turks many killed and money
eorum totam habuerunt. Boamundum vero comprehensum in
their all had Bohemond but seized into
captionem secum abduxerunt. cumque hoc infortunium ab
captivity with-them led-away and-when this misfortune by
illis qui evaserant divulgaretur, orta est genti nostrae grandis
those who had-escaped was-spread-abroad arisen has to-people our a-great
inde desolatio. veruntamen dux urbis Edessae Balduinus,
thence desolation nevertheless the-duke of-the-city of-Edessa Baldwin
congregatis Francis quotcumque potuit, Edessenis scilicet et
gathered Franks as-many-as he-could of-Edessa namely and
Antiochenis, hostes praedictos, ubi eos esse audivit, quaerere
of-Antioch the-enemies aforesaid where them to-be he-heard to-seek
non distulit. Boamundus etiam, cincinno capitis sui absciso,
not he-delayed Bohemond also a-lock of-head his cut-off

mandavit hoc intersigno Balduino praedicto, ut ei citato
sent-word with-this token to-Baldwin aforesaid that to-him with-speedy
auxilio pro amore Dei succurreret. quod cum audisset
help for the-love of-God he-should-come-to-aid which when had-heard
Danisman, metuens horum animositatem, non est ausus ulterius
Danishmend fearing of-these the-spirit not has dared further
ante urbem Melitiniam morari, quam obsidione cinxerat, sed
before the-city Melitene to-stay which with-siege he-had-girded but
paulatim ante nos fugiendo, ad propria sua remeare curavit.
little-by-little before us by-fleeing to own-things his to-return he-took-care
unde multum doluimus, cum per III dies illos ultra urbem
whence much we-grieved since for three days them beyond the-city
praedictam persecuti sumus, qui libentissime contra eos
aforesaid we-pursued have who most-gladly against them
dimicassemus. cumque sic regrederemur, praedictus Gabriel
would-have-fought and-when so we-were-returning the-aforesaid Gabriel
urbem Melitiniam Balduino reddidit. quibus amicis effectis et
the-city Melitene to-Baldwin surrendered who friends made and
custodibus suis intromissis, Edessam urbem Balduinus rediit
guards his let-in to-Edessa the-city Baldwin returned
et Antiocheni de domino suo maesti ad sua regressi sunt.
and the-Antiochenes about lord their sorrowful to their-own returned have

De morte regis Godefridi

XXXVI · THE DEATH OF GODFREY

As Baldwin enjoys his good fortune, a messenger brings word that his brother Godfrey died at Jerusalem on July 18. Verses mourn that he dies a year after the city's capture, having held the kingdom the Lord gave him only briefly, and that he climbs to heaven with Michael lifting him.

Cum autem ipse Balduinus frueretur sua prosperitate, ecce
when moreover himself Baldwin enjoyed his prosperity behold
nuntius veniens ab Hierosolymis intulit ei, quia dux
a-messenger coming from Jerusalem brought to-him that the-duke
Godefridus, germanus eius, XV. Kal. Augusti
Godfrey brother his on-the-fifteenth-day-before the-Kalends of-August
diem clauserat extremum apud Hierosolymam.
the-day had-closed last at Jerusalem

Ad caput hoc anni post captam contigit urbem,
at the-head this year after the-taken it-happened city
Ad meriti cumulum Dominus tibi, dux Godefride,
to of-merit the-heap the-Lord to-you O-duke Godfrey
Contigit hoc regnum. sed tempore non diuturno
befell this kingdom but in-time not lasting
Tu perfunctus eo, natura dante, ruisti.
you having-discharged it nature giving fell
Orto sole semel sub fervescente Leone,
risen the-sun once under burning Leo
Aethera scandisti laetans, Michaele levante.
the-ether you-climbed rejoicing Michael lifting